This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

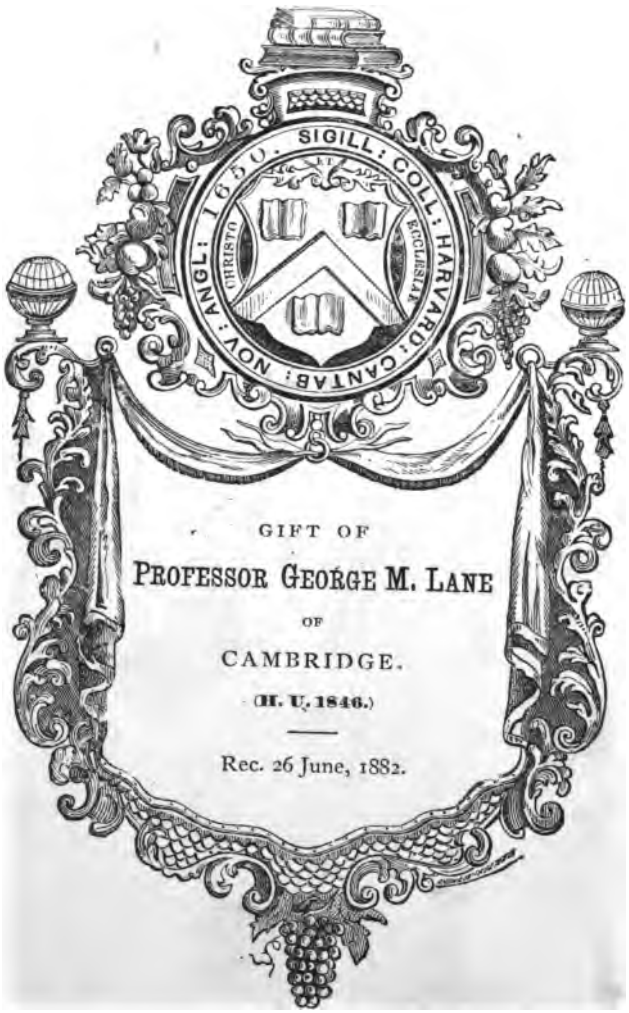
+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Digitized by Google

Educ T 918.67.425



GIFT OF
PROFESSOR GEORGE M. LANE
OF
CAMBRIDGE.
(H. U. 1846.)

Rec. 26 June, 1882.

Digitized by Google

3 2044 097 063 390

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

A

LATIN GRAMMAR.

BY

BASIL L. GILDERSLEEVE, PH. D.,

PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN THE UNIVERSITY OF VIRGINIA.

NEW YORK:

RICHARDSON AND COMPANY,

14 BOND STREET.

1867.

Digitized by Google

1:Educ T 918.67.425
~~Educ 918.67~~ ✓
~~5254.26~~

JUN 26 1882

Gift of
Prof. G. E. Lane,
of Cambridge.

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1867,
BY C. B. RICHARDSON & COMPANY,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States
for the Southern District of New York.

Digitized by Google

PART FIRST.

FORMS OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE,

CHIEFLY FROM THE

GERMAN OF LATTMAN AND MULLER.

EDITED BY

BASIL L. GILDERSLEEVE.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

PREFACE.

THE First Part of this Latin Grammar is essentially an adaptation of the German work of LATTMANN and MÜLLER to the use of American students. In order to gain time for the Syntax, which seemed to require a more independent treatment, I associated with myself in the preparation of the Inflections Mr. T. R. PRICE, Jr., of Richmond, a Master of Arts of the University of Virginia, who has enjoyed the advantage of a thorough training in the best German schools, and who, by his fine native intellect, varied culture, and accurate scholarship, is competent to undertake and carry out far higher tasks than that which his personal friendship for me has induced him to share. For the method of noting the quantity, and for various modifications of the original, I alone am responsible.

In the preparation of the Syntax, I have been under special obligations to the Grammar of KRITZ, and to the joint labors of LATTMANN and MÜLLER: to KRITZ, for the general disposition; to LATTMANN and MÜLLER, for numerous practical hints, and particularly for the treatment of the Cases and the Paradigms of Construction. On almost all the important points, in which the views adopted and the presentation of those views differ from the usual method, I have had the advantage

Digitized by Google

of repeated conferences with my friend and colleague, Professor PETERS, and the great support of a cordial concurrence on the part of a scholar of such distinguished merit.

This Grammar is intended for the earliest, as well as for the latest, stages of instruction in Latin. The beginner is expected to commit the Paradigms to memory, without troubling himself about the scientific arrangement, as explained in the text. The practical use of the Syntax will be facilitated by an exercise-book, now in course of preparation.

B. L. GILDERSLEEVE.

UNIVERSITY OF VIRGINIA,
September, 1867.

Digitized by Google

INFLECTIONS

OF THE

LATIN LANGUAGE.

Alphabet.

The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no W.

Remark.—K is used chiefly in abbreviations—*K.* (*Caeso*), *Kal.* (*Calendae*). Y and Z, occur in Greek words only. Originally, there was no difference in character between I and J, between V and U.

Vowels.

The vowels are a, e, i, o, u; and are divided:—

1. According to their *quality*, into

open, a, e, o.
close, i, u.

2. According to their *quantity*, into

long, ... —
short, ... ⏑
common, *i. e.*, sometimes *short*, and sometimes *long*, ⏓

☞ In this grammar, every long vowel sound is marked.

Sound of the Vowels.

ā	=	a	in	father.	ă nearly	=	a	in	pat.
ē	=	e	in	prey.	ĕ	=	e	in	pet.
ī	=	i	in	caprice.	ĭ	=	i	in	pit.
ō	=	o	in	bone.	ŏ	=	o	in	pot.
ū	=	oo	in	moon.	ŭ	=	u	in	put.
y	=	u	in	sûr (French)	y	=	u	in	sur (French).

Remark.—The short sounds are only less prolonged in pronunciation than the long sounds, and have no exact English equivalents.

Digitized by Google

Diphthongs.

There are but few *diphthongs* (*double sounds*) in Latin.

ae = ae in Graeme, or *a* in māde.
au = ou in *our*.
oe = oe in French *œil*.

In e͡i, e͡u, u͡i, both elements should be heard slightly.

Diæresis.

The sign ¨ (*Diærĕsis*—Greek = *separation*) over the second vowel shows that each sound is to be pronounced separately: āër, *air;* Menelāüs, aloë.

Consonants.

Consonants are divided:—

1. According to the principal *organs* by which they are pronounced, into

Labials (lip-sounds): b, p, (ph), f, v, m.
Dentals (tooth-sounds): d, t, (th), l, n, r, s.
Gutturals (throat-sounds): g, c, k, qu, (ch).

2. According to their *prolongation*, into

A. *Semi-vowels:* of which

l, m, n, r, are *liquids*.
h, and v, are *breathings*, and
s, is a *sibilant*.

B. *Mutes:* to which belong

The P-mutes,	p,	b,	(ph), f,	*labials*.
The T-mutes,	t,	d,	(th),	*dentals*.
The K-mutes,	k, c, qu,	g,	(ch),	*gutturals*.

Those on the same line are said to be of the *same organ*.

Mutes are further divided into

Tenuēs (thin): p, t, k, c, qu.
Mediae (middle): b, d, g.
[*Aspīrātae* (aspirate): ph, th, ch.]

The aspirates occur chiefly in Greek words.
Those on the same line are said to be of *the same order*.
Double consonants are: z = dz in a*dze*, j = dy, x = cs (ks).

Digitized by Google

Sound of the Consonants.

The consonants are sounded as in English, with the following exceptions:—

Ch, in Greek words, is aspirated (ch in German). In Latin words, *e. g.*, pulcher, *beautiful*, it is sounded as ch in archangel.

G is hard throughout, as in *get*, *give*.

J has the sound of a broad *y*.

N has a nasal sound before c, g, and q, as in anchor, anguish.

Qu = kw (nearly); before u, qu = c, quum = cum, *when*.

Remark.—In modern pronunciation, c is commonly hissed before e and i. Anciently, it was hard throughout.

Division of Syllables.

The syllable is the unit of pronunciation, and consists of a vowel, or a vowel and one or more consonants.

A consonant, between two vowels, belongs to the second: a-mo, *I love*.

Two or more consonants belong to the following vowel: a-sper, *rough;* fau-stus, *lucky;* li-brī, *books*.

Exceptions.—1. Liquids, l, m, n, r, join the preceding vowel: al-mus, *fostering;* am-bo, *both;* an-guis, *snake;* ar-bor, *tree*. mn follows the general rule: a-mnis, *river*.

2. When the consonant is doubled, the first belongs to the first, the second to the second syllable: cas-sis, *helmet;* al-lium, *garlic;* map-pa, *napkin;* an-nus, *year;* mit-to, *I send*.

3. Compounds are treated as if their parts were separate words: ab-igo, *I drive off;* rēs-pûblica, *commonwealth*.

The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima;* the next to the last, the *penult;* the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

Quantity of Syllables.

A syllable is said to be long *by nature*, when it contains a long vowel or diphthong; *by position*, when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or a double consonant: ars, *art;* collum, *neck;* abrumpo, *I break off;* per mare, *through the sea;* nex, *murder;* Troja, *Troy*.

Remarks.—1. J does not make position in the compounds of jugum, *yoke;* bi-jugus, *two-horse*.

2. In this grammar, the circumflex (^) is employed to designate vowels long by nature, when they stand before two consonants or a double consonant: âcris, *keen;* lûx, *light*.

Digitized by Google

A syllable with a short vowel before a mute, followed by l or r, is *common* (anceps): tenĕbrae, *darkness.*

Every diphthong, and every vowel derived from a diphthong, or contracted from other vowels, is long: saevus, *cruel;* conclūdo, *I shut up* (from claudo, *I shut*); cōgo (from co-igo), *I drive together.*

One simple vowel before another makes a short syllable: deus, *God;* puer, *boy.*

REMARKS.—1. h does not count: nĭhil, *nothing.*

2. Exceptions will be noted as they occur.

I final is always long.

M, R, T, final, make the preceding vowel short: amĕm, *I may love;* amĕr, *I may be loved;* amĕt, *he may love.*

ACCENTUATION.

Dissyllabic words have the accent or stress on the penult: équus, *horse.*

Polysyllabic words have the accent on the penult, when the penult is long; on the antepenult, when the penult is short or common: mandāre, *to commit;* mándĕre, *to chew;* íntĕgrum, *entire.*

REMARKS.—1. The little appendages (enclitics), que, ve, ne, add an accent to the ultimate of words accented on the antepenult: lūmináque, *and lights;* flūmináve, *or rivers;* vŏmeréne, *from a ploughshare?*

2. Other exceptions will be noted as they occur.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The parts of speech are:—

I. The *Noun*, embracing: 1. The *Substantive*, which gives a name: vir, *a man;* Cocles, *Cocles;* dōnum, *a gift.* 2. The *Adjective*, which adds a quality to the substantive. 3. The *Pronoun*, which points out the substantive.

II. The *Verb*, which says.

III. The *Particles*, which are mainly mutilated forms of the noun, and embrace: 1. The *Adverb*, which shows the *circumstances.* 2. The *Preposition*, which shows the *local relation.* 3. The *Conjunction*, which shows the *connection* of actions.

REMARK.—The Interjection is either an inarticulate cry: ah! *ah!* and does not belong to language, or falls under one of the above-mentioned classes.

Digitized by Google

Inflection is that *bending* or *change*, chiefly in the end of a word, which shows a change in the relations of that word. The noun and verb are inflected; the particles are not capable of further inflection.

The inflection of nouns is called *declension*, and nouns are said to be *declined*.

The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation*, and verbs are said to be *conjugated*.

Noun Substantive.

The noun substantive gives the name of a person or thing (concrete), or of a quality (abstract).

Concrete substantives are either *proper* or *common*. The *proper* noun is *proper*, or *peculiar*, to certain persons or things: Horātius, *Horace;* Neāpolis, *Naples;* Padus, *Po*. *Common* nouns are *common* to a whole class: dominus, *a lord;* urbs, *a city;* amnis, *a river*.

Gender.

For the names of animate beings, the gender is determined by the signification; for things and qualities, by the termination.

Males are masculine, Females, feminine. Masculine: Rōmulus; Jūpiter; vir, *man;* equus, *horse*. Feminine: Cornēlia; Jūno; fēmina, *woman;* equa, *mare*.

Some classes of words, without natural gender, have their gender determined by the signification:—

I. Names of *months* (mēnsēs, *masc.*), *winds* (ventī, *masc.*), *rivers* (fluviī, *masc.*), and *mountains* (montēs, *masc.*), are *masculine:* Aprīlis, *the opening month, April;* Aquilo, *the north wind;* Albis, *the River Elbe;* Athŏs, *Mt. Athos*.

Exceptions.—1. Feminine are the Rivers Allia; Albula; Matrŏna, *the Marne;* Styx; Lēthē.

2. Of the mountains, the Alps, Alpēs, are *feminine*, and sundry (Greek) names in a (Gen. ae), ē (Gen. ēs): Aetna, Cyllēnē. Sōracte and Pēlion are *neuter*, and so are names of mountains in a (Gen. ōrum): Maenala, Maenalōrum.

II. Names of *countries* (terrae, *fem.*), *islands* (īnsulae, *fem.*), *cities* (urbēs, *fem.*), *plants* (plantae, *fem.*), and *trees* (arborēs, *fem.*), are *feminine:* Aegyptus, *Egypt;* Rhodus, *Rhodes;* pīrus, *a pear-tree;* abiēs, *a fir-tree*.

The exceptions, which are numerous, are chiefly Greek, and follow the termination instead of the signification.

Digitized by Google

III. All indeclinable nouns, and all words and phrases treated as indeclinable nouns, are *neuter:* fās, *right;* ā longum, *ā long;* scīre tuum, *thy knowing;* triste valē, *a sad "farewell."*

Nouns which have but one form for masculine and feminine are said to be of *common* gender: cīvis, *citizen* (male or female); comĕs, *companion;* jūdex, *judge.*

Substantīva mōbilia are words of the same origin, whose different terminations designate difference of gender: magister, *master, teacher;* magistra, *mistress;* servus, serva, *slave* (m. and f.); victor, victrix, *conqueror* (m. and f.)

If the male and female of animals have but one designation (Epicene nouns), mas, *male,* and fēmina, *female,* are added, when it is necessary to be exact: pāvo mas (masculus) *peacock,* pāvo fēmina, *peahen.*

Cases.

The Latin noun has six cases: *Nominative* (the case of the subject); *Genitive* (case of the complement); *Dative* (case of the indirect object); *Accusative* (case of the direct object); *Vocative* (case of direct address); *Ablative* (case of adverbial relation).

Of these, Nominative and Vocative are called Cāsūs Rectī, or *independent cases;* the other four, Cāsūs Oblīquī, or *dependent cases.*

The cases arise from the combination of the ending with the stem.

The stem is that which is common to a class of formations.

Remark.—The stem is often so much altered by contact with the ending, that its original form does not appear.

Declensions.

There are five declensions in Latin, which are characterized by the final sound of their respective stems:—

	Stem characteristic.
The stems of the First Declension end in . . .	ă
The stems of the Second Declension end in . . .	ŏ
The stems of the Third Declension end in a consonant, or the close vowels	i and u
The stems of the Fourth Declension end in . . .	ŭ
The stems of the Fifth Declension end in . . .	ĕ

The First, Second, and Fifth Declensions are called Vowel Declensions; the Third and Fourth, which really form but one, the Consonant Declension.

Digitized by Google

First Declension.

The stem ends in ă, which disappears in the ending -īs of the Dative and Ablative plural.

Feminine.

Sing. N.	mēnsa,	*the*, or *a*, *table*.	Pl. N.	mēnsae,	*the tables*. or *tables*.
G.	mēnsae,	*of the*, or *a*, *table*.	G.	mēnsārum,	*of the tables*, or *tables*.
D.	mēnsae,	*to*, *for the*, or *a*, *table*.	D.	mēnsīs,	*to*, *for the tables*, or *tables*.
Ac.	mēnsa-m,	*the*, or *a*, *table*.	Ac.	mēnsās,	*the tables*, or *tables*.
V.	mēnsa,	*O table!* or *table!*	V.	mēnsae,	*O tables!*
Abl.	mēnsā,	*from*, *with*, *by*, *the*, or *a*, *table*.	Abl.	mēnsīs,	*from*, *with*, *by*, *the tables*, or *tables*.

Masculine.

Sing. N.	scrība,	*the clerk*.	Pl. N.	scrībae,	*the clerks*.
G.	scrībae,	*of the clerk*.	G.	scrībārum,	*of the clerks*.
D.	scrībae,	*to*, *for the clerk*.	D.	scrībīs,	*to*, *for the clerks*.
Ac.	scrība-m,	*the clerk*.	Ac.	scrībās,	*the clerks*.
V.	scrība,	*O clerk!*	V.	scrībae,	*O clerks!*
Abl.	scrībā,	*from*, *with*, *by*, *the clerk*.	Abl.	scrībīs,	*from*, *with*, *by*, *the clerks*.

Examples.

āla,	*wing*.	poena,	*punishment*.	rīpa,	*bank*.
aqua,	*water*.	poēta,	*poet*.	stella,	*star*.
aula,	*court*.	porta,	*gate*.	terra,	*earth*.
nauta,	*sailor*.	pugna,	*fight*.	ūva,	*grape*.

Remarks.—1. The Gen. -āī is found in poetry. The Gen. in -ās occurs in the word familia, *family*. when combined with pater. *father*, māter, *mother*, fīlius, *son*, fīlia, *daughter*, viz. :—paterfamiliās, māterfamiliās, fīlius familiās, fīlia familiās.

The Gen. Pl. sometimes takes the form -um instead of -ārum, chiefly in the Greek words amphora (amphora, *measure of tonnage*), and drachma, *franc—Greek coin*. The poets make frequent use of this form in patronymics and compounds of -cola (from colo, *I inhabit*) and -gena (from gen, *beget*).

2. Dea, *goddess*, fīlia, *daughter*, ambae, *both*, and duae, *two*, have the form -ābus in the Dative and Ablative Plural, viz. :—deābus, fīliābus, ambābus, duābus.

Rule of Gender.—The gender is feminine, except when males are meant.

Hadria, *the Adriatic*, is masculine.

Digitized by Google

Second Declension.

The stem ends in ŏ, which is changed into ō, ŭ, ĕ, or disappears wholly.

		MASCULINE.		NEUTER.	
Sing.	N.	hortus,	*the garden.*	bellum,	*war.*
	G.	hortī,	*of the garden.*	bellī,	*of war.*
	D.	hortō,	*to, for the garden.*	bellō,	*to, for war.*
	Ac.	hortum,	*the garden.*	bellum,	*war.*
	V.	horte,	*O garden!*	bellum,	*O war!*
	Abl.	hortō,	*from, with, by, the garden.*	bellō,	*from, with, by, war.*
Pl.	N.	hortī,	*the gardens.*	bella,	*wars.*
	G.	hortōrum,	*of the gardens.*	bellōrum,	*of wars.*
	D.	hortīs,	*to, for the gardens.*	bellīs,	*to, for wars.*
	Ac.	hortōs,	*the gardens.*	bella,	*wars.*
	V.	hortī,	*O gardens!*	bella,	*O wars!*
	Abl.	hortīs,	*from, with, by, the gardens.*	bellīs,	*from, with, by, wars.*

Examples.

animus,	*soul.*	equus,	*horse.*	arātrum,	*plough.*	ōvum,	*egg.*
annus,	*year.*	fluvius,	*river.*	damnum,	*loss.*	oppidum,	*town.*
asinus,	*ass.*	gladius,	*sword.*	exemplum,	*pattern,*	ostium,	*mouth of a river.*
campus,	*field.*	lūdus,	*game.*	ferrum,	*iron.*	praemium,	*reward.*
cervus,	*stag.*	morbus,	*disease.*	folium,	*leaf.*	prātum,	*meadow.*
cibus,	*food,*	nūntius,	*messenger.*	lignum,	*log.*	regnum,	*kingdom.*
corvus,	*raven.*	rivus,	*brook.*	membrum,	*limb.*	scamnum,	*bench.*
servus, *slave.*				verbum, *word.*			

Rule of Gender.—Nouns in -us are masculine; in -um, neuter.

Exceptions.—Feminine are: 1st. Cities and islands, *e. g.*, Corinthus, Salamis. 2d. Most trees, *e. g.*, fāgus, *beech;* quercus, *oak.* 3d. Many Greek nouns, *e. g.*, atomus, *atom;* paragraphus, *paragraph;* methodus, *method;* periodus, *period;* dialectus, *dialect.* 4th. Alvus, *belly;* colus, *distaff;* humus, *ground;* vannus, (*wheat*) *fan.*

Neuters are: vīrus, *venom;* pelagus, *sea;* vulgus, *the rabble* (sometimes masculine).

Some masculines in r drop -us in the Nominative and e in the Vocative Singular:—

Sing.	N.	puer,	*the boy.*	ager,	*the field.*
	G.	puerī,	*of the boy.*	agrī,	*of the field.*
	D.	puerō,	*to, for the boy.*	agrō,	*to, for, the field.*
	Ac.	puerum,	*the boy.*	agrum,	*the field.*
	V.	puer,	*O boy!*	ager,	*O field!*
	Abl.	puerō,	*from, with, by, the boy.*	agrō,	*from, with, by, the field.*
Pl.	N.	Puerī,	*the boys.*	agrī,	*the fields.*
		&c., &c.		&c., &c.	

The e belongs to the stem, and is retained through all the cases in adulter, *adulterer;* alter, *the other;* asper, *rough;* dexter, *on the right*

Digitized by Google

(which has either dextrī or dexterī); exter, *outside;* gener, *son-in-law;* gibber, *hump-backed;* lacer, *torn;* liber, *free;* Liber, *god of wine;* miser, *wretched;* prosper, *lucky;* puer, *boy;* socer, *father-in-law;* tener, *soft;* vesper, *evening;* and in words ending in -fer and -ger, from fero, *I bear*, and gero, *I carry*, *e. g.*, signi*fer*, *standardbearer*, armi*ger*, armorbearer.

Iber and Celtiber (names of nations) have in the Plural Ibērī and Celtibērī.

In other words, the e is inserted only in the Nominative and Vocative Singular.

Examples.

aper,	*wild boar.*	caper,	*he-goat.*	fiber,	*beaver.*	minister,	*servant.*
arbiter,	*umpire.*	culter,	*knife.*	lēvir,	*husband's brother.*	oleaster,	*wild olive.*
cancer,	*crab.*	faber,	*workman.*	magister,	*teacher.*	vir,	*man.*

Remarks.—1. In the Genitive Singular, ii is often contracted into ī, the accent remaining unchanged; *e. g.*, ingeniī. *of genius*, into ingenī.

2 In the Vocative Singular, ie (je) is commonly contracted into ī in proper names in -ius, -eius (ējus). -aius (ājus), the accent remaining unchanged; *e. g.*, Antōnī, Tullī, Gāī, Virgilī. Fīlius, *son*, and meus, *my*, form their Vocatives in like manner: fīlī, mī.

3. In the Genitive Plural, -um for -ōrum is found in words denoting coins and measures; *e. g.*, nummum, (*money*s)=sēstertium, *sesterces;* modium, *measures.* Faber, *workman*, has both fabrum and fabrōrum; liberī, *children*, both liberum and liberōrum; and vir, *man*, in compounds, has triumvirum, *of the triumvirs*, and the like.

4. Deus. *God*, is irregular. Singular Vocative, deus. Plural Nominative (deī), dīī, dī; Genitive, deōrum; Accusative, deōs; Dative and Ablative (deīs), dīīs, dīs.

Declension of Adjectives in -us, -a, -um.

Bonus, bona, bonum, *good.*

	M.	F.	N.			M.	F.	N.
Sing. N.	bōnus,	bona,	bonum,	*good.*	Pl. N.	bonī,	bonae,	bona.
G.	bonī,	bonae,	bonī,	*of the good.*		bonōrum,	bonārum,	bonōrum.
D.	bonō,	bonae,	bonō,	*to, for the good.*		bonīs,	bonīs,	bonīs.
Ac.	bonum,	bonam,	bonum,	*the good.*		bonōs,	bonās,	bona.
V.	bone,	bona,	bonum,	*O good!*		bonī,	bonae,	bona.
Abl.	bonō,	bonā,	bonō,	*from, with, by, the good.*		bonīs,	bonīs,	bonīs.

Miser, misera, miserum, *wretched.*

Sing. N.	miser,	misera,	miserum,	miserī,	miserae,	misera.
G.	miserī,	miserae,	miserī,	miserōrum,	miserārum,	miserōrum.
D.	miserō,	miserae,	miserō,	miserīs,	miserīs,	miserīs.
Ac.	miserum,	miseram,	miserum,	miserōs,	miserās,	misera.
V.	miser,	misera,	miserum,	miserī,	miserae,	misera.
Abl.	miserō,	miserā,	miserō,	miserīs,	miserīs.	miserīs.

Piger, pigra, pigrum, *slow.*

Sing. N.	piger,	pigra,	pigrum,	Pl. N.	pigrī,	pigrae,	pigra,
G.	pigrī,	pigrae,	pigrī,	G.	pigrōrum,	pigrārum,	pigrōrum,
	&c., &c.					&c., &c.	

Digitized by Google

The following have Genitive Singular in -īus, and Dative Singular in ī:—

ūnus,	ullus,	nullus,	*one,*	*any,*	*none.*
sōlus,	tōtus,	alius,	*sole,*	*whole,*	*other.*
uter,	alter,	neuter,	*which of the two,*	*one of the two,*	*neither.*

Remark.—In poetry, the ī of the Genitive ending -īus is often shortened, except in alīus.

Sing. N.	nullus,	nulla,	nullum,	*none.*	alius,	alia,	aliud,
G.	nullīus,	nullīus,	nullīus,		alīus,	alīus,	alīus,
D.	nullī,	nullī,	nullī,		aliī,	aliī,	aliī,
Ac.	nullum,	nullam,	nullum,		alium,	aliam,	aliud,
Abl.	nullō,	nullā,	nullō.		aliō,	aliā,	aliō.
Pl. N.	nullī,	nullae,	nulla,		aliī,	aliae,	alia,
G.	nullōrum,	nullārum, &c., &c.	nullōrum,		aliōrum,	aliārum, &c., &c.	aliōrum,

Third Declension.

The stem ends in a consonant, or the close vowels i and u.

The stems are divided according to their last letter, called the stem-characteristic, following the subdivisions of the letters of the alphabet:—

I.—*Consonant Stems.*	II.—*Vowel Stems.*
A. Liquid stems, ending in l, m, n, r.	1. Ending in i.
B. Sibilant stems, ending in s.	2. Ending in u.
C. Mute stems. { 1. Ending in a P-mute, b, p. 2. Ending in a K-mute, c, g. 3. Ending in a T-mute, d, t	(Compare the Fourth Declension.)

The sign of the Nominative Singular, masculine and feminine, is s, which, however, is dropped after l, n, r, s.

The Nominative Singular undergoes various changes.

The Vocative is like the Nominative. In the other cases, the endings are added to the unchanged stem.

Neuters always form { the Nominative without the case ending s.
the Accūsative and Vocative case in both numbers like the Nominative.
the Nominative Plural in ă.

Digitized by Google

I.—Consonant Stems.

A.—*Liquid Stems.*

1. Liquid stems in l. Nominative without s; *e. g.*, cônsul, *the consul.*

Sing. N.	cônsul,	*a consul.*	Pl. N.	cônsul-ēs,	*the consuls.*
G.	cônsul-is,		G.	cônsulum,	
D.	cônsul-I,		D.	cônsul-ibus,	
Ac.	cônsul-em,		Ac.	cônsul-ēs,	
V.	cônsul,		V.	cônsul-ēs,	
Abl.	cônsul-e,		Abl.	cônsul-ibus.	

Rule of Gender.—Stems in l are masculine: sōl, *the sun*, sōlis; sāl, *salt*, sălis.

Exceptions.—Neuters are: mel, *honey*, mellis; fel, *gall*, fellis.

2. Liquid stems in m. Nominative with s. One example only: hiem(p)s, *winter;* Genitive, hiem-is (fem.)

3. Liquid stems in n. The Nominative Singular of masculine and feminine stems is formed without s, drops the n of the stem, and ends in ŏ.

The Genitive Singular has, in some nouns, -ōnis; in others, -ĭnis.

The Nominative Singular of the neuter stems retains the n, and terminates in -ĕn.

The Genitive Singular of neuters ends in -ĭnis.

Sing. N.	leo,	*the lion.* (Masc.)	imāgo,	*a likeness.* (Fem.)	
G.	leōn-is,		imāgin-is,		
D.	leōn-I,		imāgin-I,		
Ac.	leōn-em,		imāgin-em,		
V.	leo,		imāgo,		
Abl.	leōn-e,		imāgine,		
Pl. N.	leōn-ēs,	*the lions.*	imāgin-ēs,	*likenesses.*	
G.	leōn-um,		imāgin-um,		
D.	leōn-ibus,		imāgin-ibus,		
Ac.	leōn-ēs,		imāgin-ēs,		
V.	leōn-ēs,		imāgin-ēs,		
Abl.	leōn-ibus.		imāgin-ibus.		

Like leo, decline ōrātio, *speech;* like imāgo, decline consuētūdo, *custom.*

Remarks.—*1.* Nouns in do and -go have in the Genitive -inis, whilst the rest in -o have -ōnis; *e. g.*, grando, *hail*, grandinis; virgo, *maid*, virginis.

Exceptions.—Praedo, *robber;* harpago, *grappling-hook;* ligo, *mattock*, have ōnis; homo, *man;* turbo *whirlwind*, have inis.

Digitized by Google

2. To the stems in n belong sanguis, *blood*, sanguin-is; pollis, *flour*, pollin-is. In these, n of the stem is dropped before s of the Nominative.

Nōmen, *name*.

Sing. N.	nōmen,	(Neuter.)	Pl. N.	nōmin-a,
G.	nōmin-is,			nōmin-um,
D.	nōmin-ī,			nōmin-ibus,
Ac.	nōmen,			nōmin-a,
V.	nōmen,			nōmin-a,
Abl.	nōmin-e.			nōmin-ibus.

3. Masculines in -en, Genitive inis, are: pecten, *comb*, and the personal designations: tībīcen, *flutter;* tubicen, *trumpeter;* cornicen, *horn-blower*, and flāmen, *priest*.

Masculines in -ēn, ēnis, are only: splēn and liēn, *spleen*, and the Plural rēnēs, *kidneys*.

Rule of Gender.

Masculine are nouns in -o,
Save those in -do, -go, and -io,
With caro, *flesh;* but ordo, cardo,
Are masculine, with ligo, margo;
Add harpago; and in -io,
All concrete nouns like pugio.

ordo, *rank;* cardo, *hinge;* ligo, *mattock;* margo, *border;* harpago, *grappling-hook;* pugio, *dagger;* vespertīlio, *bat;* titio, *firebrand*.

Nouns in -en (-men) are neuter. See exceptions under Remark 3.

4. Liquid stems in r. Nominative without s.

Remark.—In several words in -ŏr and -ŭr, the r has arisen from s. Hence, lābŏs, as well as labŏr, *toil;* rōbus and rōbŭr, *oak;* vōmis and vōmer, *plough-share*.

	MASCULINE.		NEUTER.
e.	passer, *sparrow.*	pater, *father.*	cadāver, *dead body.*
	passer-is.	patr-is,	cadāver-is.
o.	labor, *toil.*	ōrātor, *speaker.*	rōbur, *oak.*
	labōr-is.	ōrātōr-is.	rōbor-is.
u.	fūr, *thief.*	vultur, *vulture.*	fulgur, *lightning.*
	fūr-is.	vultur-is.	fulgur-is.

Words in -ter syncopate, *i. e.*, leave out the e, except later, *brick*, later-is.

Sing.	labor, *toil.*	Pl.	labōr-ēs,	Sing.	pater, *father.*	Pl.	patr-ēs,
G.	labōr-is,		labōr-um,		patr-is,		patr-um,
D.	labōr-ī,		labōr-ibus,		patr-ī,		patr-ibus,
Ac.	labōr-em,		labōr-ēs,		patr-em,		patr-ēs,
V.	labor,		labōr-ēs,		pater,		patr-ēs,
Abl.	labōr-e,		labōr-ibus.		patr-e,		patr-ibus.

Digitized by Google

Rules of Gender.—Words in -er and -or are masculines; those in -ur, neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.

The only feminine is arbor.
Neuters are: fār, nectar, marmor,
Aequor, iter, acer, piper,
Verber, ūber, vēr, cadāver,
Ador, tūber, and papāver.

acer. *maple;* arbor, *tree;* ador, *spelt;* aequor, *sea;* cadāver, *dead body;* fār, *spelt;* marmor, *marble;* nectar, *nectar;* piper, *pepper;* papāver, *poppy;* tūber, *tumor;* ūber, *teat;* vēr, *spring.*

Furfur, *bran*, is masculine.

B.—*Sibilant Stems in* s.

The Nominative has no additional s.

In the other cases, the s of the stem passes over, between two vowels, into r.

Instead of the final stem-vowel e, the Nominative of masculines has i.

Instead of the final stem-vowels e and o, the Nominative of neuters has u.

REMARK.—S is retained throughout in the neuter: vās, *dish*, vāsis. SS occurs in as, *a copper*. Genitive assis (masc.), and os, *bone*, ossis (neut.)

Sing. N.	genus, *kind.*	Pl. gener-a,	Sing. corpus, *body.*	Pl. corpor-a,
G.	gener-is,	gener-um,	corpor-is,	corpor-um,
D.	gener-ī,	gener-ibus,	corpor-ī,	corpor-ibus,
Ac.	genus,	gener-a,	corpus,	corpor-a,
V.	genus,	gener-a,	corpus,	corpor-a,
Abl.	gener-e,	gener-ibus.	corpor-e,	corpor-ibus.

Rule of Gender.—Masculine are nouns in -is (-eris), and -os, -ōris; except ōs, *mouth;* Genitive, ōris, neuter.

Neuter are nouns in -us, Genitive, -eris, -oris, and in -us, -ūris; except tellūs, *earth*, tellūris, which is feminine, and the masculines, lepus, *hare*, leporis; mūs *mouse*, mūris.

Digitized by Google

C.—*Mute Stems.*

All masculines and feminines of mute stems have s in the Nominative.

Most polysyllabic mute stems change their final vowel i into e in the Nominative.

A K-mute, combining with s, becomes x, *e. g.*, pac-s = pâx, *peace;* reg-s = rêx, *king.*

A T-mute before s is dropped, *e. g.*, aetat-s = aetās, *age;* ped-s = pēs, *foot.*

Stems in a P-*mute.*

A	E	I	O	U
trab-s, *beam.*	plēb-s, *commons.*	stip-s, *dole.*	princep-s, *chief.*	(op-s), *power.* ——
trab-is (fem.)	plēb-is (fem.)	stip-is (fem.)	princip-is (com.)	op-is (fem.) ——

With consonant preceding the stem-characteristic: urb-s, *city*, urb-is (fem.); stirp-s, *stock*, stirp-is (fem.).

Stems in a K-*mute.*

pâx,	*peace.*	rêx,	*king.*	rādix,	*root.*		vôx,	*voice.*	lûx,	*light.*
pāc-is	(fem.)	rēg-is	(mas.)	rādīc-is	(fem.)		vōc-is	(fem.)	lūc-is	(fem.)
fax,	*torch.*	grex,	*herd.*	salix,	*willow.*	jūdex,	*judge.*	——	dux,	*leader.*
fac-is	(fem.)	grĕg-is,	(mas.)	salic-is	(fem.)	jūdic-is		——	duc-is.	

With consonant preceding the stem-characteristic: arx, *citadel*, arc-is; falx, *sickle*, falc-is.

Sing. N.	princep-s, *chief.*	Pl.	princip-ēs,	Sing. N.	rêx, *king.*	Pl.	rēg-ēs,
G.	princip-is,		princip-um,		rēg-is,		rēg-um,
D.	princip-ī,		princip-ibus,		rēg-ī,		rēg-ibus,
Ac.	princip-em,		princip-ēs,		rēg-em,		rēg-ēs,
V.	princep-s,		princip-ēs,		rēx,		rēg ēs,
Abl.	princip-e,		princip-ibus.		rēg-e,		rēg-ibus.

REMARK.—All monocyllabic mute stems, with the characteristic preceded by a consonant, have the Genitive Plural in -ium, *e. g.*, urbium, *of cities;* arcium, *of citadels;* montium, *of mountains;* partium, *of parts;* noctium, *of the nights.* The polysyllabic stems also in -nt and -rt have more frequently -ium, *e. g.*, clientium, *of clients;* cohortium, *of companies.* Stems in -at have sometimes both -um and -ium, *e. g.*, cīvitātum and cīvitātium.

Stems in a T-*mute.*

A. Characteristic preceded by a vowel:—

	T.				D.	
a.	aetās,	*age.*	anas,	*duck.*	vas,	*bail.*
	aetāt-is,	(fem.)	anăt-is,	(fem.)	vădis,	(masc.)
e.	quiēs,	*rest.*	pariēs,	*wall.* hērēs, *heir.*	pēs,	*foot.*
	quiēt-is,	(fem.)	pariēt-is,	(masc.) hērēd-is. (masc.)	pĕd-is,	(masc.)
i.	lis,	*suit.*			lapis,	*stone.*
	lĭt-is,	(fem.) G. P., ium.			lapĭd-is,	(masc.)
			mīles,	*soldier.*		
			mīlĭt-is.			
o.	sacerdōs,	*priest.*		custōs, *keeper.*		
	sacerdōt-is.			custōd-is.		
u.	virtūs,	*manliness.*		palūs, *bog.*	laus, *praise.*	pĕcus, *sheep.*
	virtūt-is,	(fem.)		palūd-is, (fem.)	laudis, (fem.)	pecūd-is, (fem.)

Digitized by Google

B.—Characteristic preceded by a consonant:—

nt.	frōns, front-is,	*brow.* (fem.)				*nd.* frōns, frond-ĕs,	*leafy branch.* (fem.)
rt.	pars, part-is,	*part.* (fem.)	*lt.*	puls, pult-is,	*porridge.* (fem.)	*rd.* cor, cord-is,	*heart.* (neut.)
ct.	nox, noct-is,	*night.* (fem.)		lāc, lact-is,	*milk.* (neut.)		

Sing. N.	aetās,	*age.*	Pl. aetāt-ēs,	Sing.	pēs,	*foot.*	Pl. ped-ēs,
G.	aetāt-is,		aetāt-um,		ped-is,		ped-um,
D.	aetāt-I,		aetāt-ibus,		ped-I,		ped-ibus,
Ac.	aetāt-em,		aetāt-ēs,		ped-em,		ped-ēs
V.	aetās,		aetāt-ēs,		pēs,		ped-ēs,
Abl.	aetāt-e,		aetāt-ibus.		ped-e,		ped-ibus.

Rule of Gender.—All mute stems, with Nominative in s, are feminine.

Exceptions in a K-mute.

Masculines are -unx and -ex,
Saving forfex, forpex, nex,
Lĕx, faex, and all the forms of prex.

faex,	*dregs.*	lĕx,	*law.*
forfex,	*shears.*	nex,	*slaughter.*
forpex,	*tongs.*	prece,	*with prayer.*
deunx,	11/12 *as.*		

Calix, *cup*, and fornix, *arch*, are masculine. Calx, *heel*, and calx, *chalk*, vary.

Exceptions in a T-mute.—Nouns in -ĕs, -ĭtis, are masculine, *e. g.*, cĕspes, *turf*, cĕspitis; as are also pēs, *foot;* pariēs, *wall;* and, of the nouns in -is, lapis, *stone.*

Masculines in -ns are: mōns, *mountain;* pōns, *bridge;* fōns, *spring;* dĕns, *tooth;* torrĕns, *torrent;* rudĕns, *rope.*

Neuters are only: cor, *heart*, and lac, *milk*, which drop the characteristic t; and caput, *head*, capitis.

Digitized by Google

II.—Vowel Stems.

1.—*Vowel Stems in* i.

Masculines and feminines form their Nominative in s.

Some feminines change, in the Nominative, the stem-vowel i into e.

Neuters change, in the Nominative, the stem-vowel i into e. This e is generally dropped by polysyllabic neuters after l and r.

All stems in i have Genitive Plural in -ium.

All neuter stems in i have the Ablative Singular in ī, and Nominative Plural in -ia.

Remarks.—The stems of Nominatives in -is and -cs are easily distinguished.

Consonant stems in -is and -es increase in the Genitive; but vowel stems in i do not increase in the Genitive, *e. g.*,

Consonant: lapis, *stone;* Genitive, lapid-is. mīles, *soldier;* Genitive, mīlit-is.
Vowel: civis, *citizen,* civis. nūbēs, *cloud,* nūbis.

Sing. N.	colli-s, *hill.*	turri-s, *tower.*	vulpēs, *fox.*	mare, *sea.*	animal, *living being.*
G.	collis,	turris,	vulpis,	maris,	animālis,
D.	collī,	turrī,	vulpī,	marī,	animālī,
Ac.	collem,	turrem (turri-m),	vulpem,	mare,	animal,
V.	collis,	turris,	vulpes,	mare,	animal,
Abl.	colle.	turre (turrī),	vulpe,	marī,	animālī,
Pl. N.	collēs,	turrēs,	vulpēs,	mari-a,	animāli-a,
G.	colli-um,	turri-um,	vulpi-um,	mari-um,	animālī-um,
D.	colli-bus,	turri-bus,	vulpi-bus,	mari-bus,	animāli-bus,
Ac.	collēs,	turrēs,	vulpēs,	mari-a,	animāli-a,
V.	collēs,	turrēs,	vulpēs,	mari-a,	animāli-a,
Abl.	colli-bus.	turri-bus.	vulpi-bus.	mari-bus.	animāli-bus.

Remarks.—1. In Genitive Plural, -um instead of -ium.

Always in: juvenis, *young;* senex, *old;* canis, *dog;* vātēs, *bard;* struēs, *heap;* pānis, *bread.*

Usually in: apis, *bee;* sēdēs, *seat;* volucris, *bird.*

2. The Genitive Plural in -ium occurs in the apparently consonant stems: imber, *rain-storm;* ūter, *bottle;* venter, *belly;* linter, *skiff;* which form the Nominative without s, dropping the l, and inserting e. Genitive, imbris, ūtris, ventris, lintris, etc. All are masculine, except linter, which is feminine.

Observations.—Several stems in i, with Nominative in -is, have Accusative and Ablative Singular and Accusative Plural in -im, ī, īs, respectively:

1. The Accusative Plural in -īs occurs:

In all vowel-stems in i, which have Nominative Singular in -is;

In mute-stems, which have Genitive Plural in -ium.

Digitized by Google

2. The Accusative Singular in -ĭm is used:

a. Always in names of towns and rivers in ĭs, *e. g.*, Neāpŏlis, Accusative, Neāpolĭm; Tĭbĕris, Accusative, Tĭbĕrĭm; and in vīs, *force;* sitis, *thirst;* tussis, *cough.*

b. Usually in secūris, *axe;* febris, *fever;* puppis, *poop;* turris, *tower.*

3. The Ablative Singular in ī is used:

a. In all nouns which have Accusative Singular invariably in -ĭm, and in ignis, *fire*, in the phrases, ferrō ignīque, ăquā et ignī interdicĕre. Nouns which have Accusative in -ĭm or -ĕm have Ablative in -ī or -ĕ.

b. In the neuter vowel-stems, which have Nominative in ĕ, ăl, ăr. Names of cities in -ĕ have Ablative also in -e, *e. g.*, Praeneste, Genitive, Praenestis.

c. In the adjective vowel-stems of the Third Declension, *e. g.*, facilis, *easy;* Ablative, facilī; ācer, *sharp;* Ablative, ācrī.

REMARK.—So also the adjectives of this class, when used as substantives by ellipsis: annālis (sc. liber, *book*), *chronicle;* nātālis (sc. diēs, *day*), *birthday;* Aprīlis (sc. mensis, *month*), and all the other months of the Third Declension: Ablative, annālī, nātālī, Aprīlī, Septembrī, &c.

EXCEPTIONS.—Juvenis, *young man;* and aedīlis, *aedile;* Ablative, juvene, aedīle. Adjectives used as proper nouns have generally Ablative in -e, *e. g.*, Juvenālis; Ablative, Juvenāle.

Rule of Gender.—1. Of stems in i, Nominative in -is, some are masculine, some feminine.

Masculine are:

Amnis, axis, callis, crīnis,
Cassis, caulis, fascis, fīnis,
Fūnis, fustis, ignis, ĕnsis,
Orbis, pānis, piscis, mĕnsis,
Postis, scrobis, būris, collis,
Sentis, torquis, atque follis,
Torris, unguis et ānnālis,
Vectis, vermis et canālis.

axis,	*axle.*	collis,	*hill.*	fustis,	*cudgel.*	sentis,	*bramble.*
amnis,	*river.*	crīnis,	*hair.*	ignis,	*fire.*	scrobis,	*ditch.*
būris,	*plough-tail.*	ĕnsis,	*glaive.*	mĕnsis,	*month.*	torquis,	*necklace.*
callis,	*footpath.*	fascis,	*fagot.*	orbis,	*circle.*	torris,	*firebrand.*
canālis,	*canal.*	fīnis,	*end.*	pānis,	*bread.*	unguis,	*nail.*
cassĕs,	*pl. toils.*	follis,	*bellows.*	piscis,	*fish.*	vectis,	*lever.*
caulis,	*stalk.*	fūnis,	*rope.*	postis,	*door-post.*	vermis,	*worm.*

Callis, fīnis, scrobis, torquis, are used also as feminines.
Other nouns in -is, and all in -es, are feminine.

2. Vowel-stems, with Nominative in -e, -al, -ar, are neuter.

REMARK.—Of the names of animals in -is, some are masculine: tigris, *tiger;* canis, *dog;* piscis, *fish;* others feminine: apis, *bee;* avis, *bird;* ovis, *sheep;* fēlis, *cat* (usually fēles).

Digitized by Google

2.– *Vowel Stems in* u.

Of stems in u, only the *monosyllabic* belong to the Third Declension. Singular Nominative, sū-s, *swine*, usually feminine. Genitive, su-is; Dative Plural, usually subus, &c. Grū-s, *crane*, usually feminine; Genitive, gru-is, &c.

Table of Nominative and Genitive Endings of the Third Declension.

A * before the ending denotes that it occurs only in the one word cited.

A.—Nominatives ending with a liquid :—

	NOM.	GEN.	
I.	-al	-ālis	animal, *animal*, animālis.
		-ălis	Hannibal, Hannibalis—proper name.
	-āl	*-ălis	sāl, *salt*, salis.
II.	-el	-ellis	mel, *honey*, mellis.
III.	-il	-ilis	pugil, *boxer*, pugilis.
		-īlis	Tanaquil—proper name—Tanaquīlis.
IV.	-ōl	-ōlis	sōl, *the sun*, sōlis.
V.	-ul	-ulis	cônsul, *consul*, cônsulis.
VI.	-ēn	-ēnis	rēn, *kidney*, rēnis.
VII.	-en	-inis	nōmen, *name*, nōminis.
VIII.	-ar	-āris	calcar, *spur*, calcāris.
		-aris	nectar, nectaris.
		*-arris	fār, *spelt*, farris.
IX.	-er	-eris	anser, *goose*, anseris.
		-ris	pater, *father*, patris.
		-ineris	iter, *journey*, itineris.
X.	-ēr	*-ēris	vēr, *spring*, vēris.
XI.	-or	-ōris	color, *color*, colōris.
		-oris	aequor, *expanse*, aequoris.
		*-ordis	cor, *heart*, cordis.
XII.	-ur	-uris	fulgur, *lightning*, fulguris.
		-oris	rōbur, *oak*, rōboris.
XIII.	-ūr	-ūris	fūr, *thief*, fūris.

Digitized by Google

B.—Nominatives ending with s, or a compound of s (gs, cs), x:—

	NOM.	GEN.	
XIV.	-ās	-ātis	aetās, *age*, aetātis.
XV.	-as	*-adis	vas, *surety*, vadis.
		*-atis	anas, *duck*, anatis.
		*-aris	mas, *male*, maris.
		*-assis	as, *a copper*, assis.
XVI.	-aes	*-aedis	praes, *surety*, praedis.
		*-aeris	aes, *brass*, aeris.
XVII.	-ēs	-is	nūbēs, *cloud*, nūbis.
		-eris	Cerēs—proper name—Cereris.
		-edis	pēs, *foot*, pedis.
		-etis	abiēs, *fir*, abietis.
		-ētis	quiēs, *rest*, quiētis.
XVIII.	-es	-etis	seges, *crop*, segetis.
		-idis	obses, *hostage*, obsidis.
		-itis	mīles, *soldier*, mīlitis.
XIX.	-is	-is	amnis, *river*, amnis.
		-idis	lapis, *stone*, lapidis.
		-eris	cinis, *ashes*, cineris.
		-inis	sanguis, *blood*, sanguinis.
XX.	-īs	*-ītis	līs, *suit at law*, lītis. Gen. Pl. lītium.
		*-īris	glīs, *dormouse*, glīris. Gen. Pl. glīrium
XXI.	-ōs	*-ōdis	custōs, *keeper*, custōdis.
		-ōtis	cōs, *whetstone*, cōtis.
		-ōris	flōs, *flower*, flōris.
		*-ovis	bōs, *ox*, bovis.
XXII.	-os	-otis	compos, *possessed of*, compotis.
		*-ossis	os, *bone*, ossis.
XXIII.	-us	*-udis	pecus, *cattle, sheep*, pecudis.
		*-utis	intercus, *under the skin*, intercutis.
		*-uris	Ligus, *a Ligurian*, Liguris.
		-oris	corpus, *body*, corporis.
		-eris	scelus, *crime*, sceleris.
XXIV.	-ūs	-uis	sūs, *swine*, suis.
		-ūris	jūs, *right*, jūris.
		-ūdis	incūs, *anvil*, incūdis.
		-ūtis	salūs, *weal*, salūtis.

Digitized by Google

	NOM.	GEN.	
XXV.	-aus	-audis	fraus, *cheatery*, fraudis. Gen. Pl. fraud-[ium.
XXVI.	-ls	*-ltis	puls, *porridge*, pultis.
XXVII.	-m(p)s	*-mis	hiems, *winter*, hiemis.
XXVIII.	-ns	-ndis	frôns, *leafy branch*, frondis.
		-ntis	frôns, *forehead*, frontis.
XXIX.	-rs	-rdis	concors, *concordant*, concordis.
		-rtis	pars, *part*, partis.
XXX.	-bs	-bis	urbs, *city*, urbis.
XXXI.	-ps	-pis	stirps, *stalk*, stirpis.
		-ipis	prînceps, *chief*, prîncipis.
		*-upis	auceps, *fowler*, aucupis.
XXXII.	-ax	-ācis	pâx, *peace*, pācis.
		*-acis	fax, *torch*, facis.
XXXIII.	-ex	-icis	jūdex, *judge*, jūdicis.
		-ecis	nex, *death*, necis.
		-ēcis	ālêx, *pickle*, ālēcis.
		-īcis	vîbêx, *weal*, vîbīcis.
		*-igis	rēmex, *rower*, rēmigis.
		-egis	grex, *flock*, gregis.
		-ēgis	rêx, *king*, rēgis.
XXXIV.	-ix	-īcis	cervîx, *neck*, cervīcis.
		-icis	calix, *cup*, calicis.
		*-igis	strix, *screech-owl*, strigis.
		*-ivis	nix, *snow*, nivis. Gen. Pl. nivium.
XXXV.	-ox	-ōcis	vôx, *voice*, vōcis.
		*-ocis	praecox, *early-ripe*, praecocis.
		*-ogis	Allobrox—foreign name—Allobrogis.
		*-octis	nox, *night*, noctis.
XXXVI.	-ûx	-ucis	crux, *cross*, crucis.
		-ūcis	lûx, *light*, lūcis.
		-ugis	conjux, *spouse*, conjugis.
		-ūgis	frûx, *fruit*, frūgis.
XXXVII.	-aex	-aecis	faex, *dregs*, faecis.
XXXVIII.	-aux	-aucis	faux, *throat*, faucis. Gen. Pl. faucium.
XXXIX.	-lx	-lcis	falx, *sickle*, falcis.
	-nx	-ncis	lanx, *dish*, lancis.
	-rx	-rcis	arx, *citadel*, arcis.

Digitized by Google

C.—Nominatives ending with a mute:—

XL.	-āc	*-actis	lāc, *milk*, lactis.
XLI.	-ēc	*-ēcis	ālēc, *pickle*, ālēcis.
XLII.	-ut	*-itis	caput, *head*, capitis.

D.—Nominatives ending with a vowel:—

XLIII.	-e	-is	mare, *sea*, maris.
XLIV.	-o	-ōnis	pāvo, *peacock*, pāvōnis.
		-onis	Saxo, *Saxon*, Saxonis.
		-inis	homo, *man*, hominis.
		*-nis	caro, *flesh*, carnis.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

The Fourth Declension embraces only dissyllabic and polysyllabic stems in u.

The endings are those of the Third Declension.

In the Genitive and Ablative Singular, and the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural (sometimes, too, in the Dative Singular), the u of the stem absorbs the vowel of the ending, and becomes long, *e. g.*, fructu-is becomes fructūs, *of fruit;* fructu-e becomes fructū, *from fruit;* fructu-ēs becomes fructūs, *fruits.* This u, on the contrary, is lost before the ending -ibus in the Dative and Ablative Plural.

The Accusative Singular, as always in vowel-stems, has the ending m, without a connecting vowel (compare the Accusative in -im of the stems in i), hence u -m.

	MASCULINE.		NEUTER.	
Sing. N.	fructu-s, *fruit.*	Pl. fructūs,	cornū, *horn.*	Pl. cornu-a,
G.	fructūs,	fructu-um,	cornūs,	cornu-um,
D.	fructu-ī, (fructū),	fructibus,	cornū,	cornibus,
Ac.	fructu-m,	fructūs,	cornū,	cornu-a,
V.	fructus,	fructūs,	cornū,	cornu-a,
Abl.	fructū,	fructibus.	cornū,	cornibus.

REMARKS.—1. Dative and Ablative Plural in -ubus occur in nouns in -cus, and in tribus, *tribe:* artus, *joint;* partus, *childbirth;* portus, *harbor;* sinus, *fold.*

2. Domus, *house*, Ablative Singular, domō; Genitive Plural, domuum and domōrum; Accusative Plural, domūs and domōs. Domī (a locative form) means, *at home.*

Rule of Gender.—Nouns in -us are masculine; those in -ū are neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—Feminines are īdūs, pl., *the 15th day of the month*, tribus, *tribe*, porticus, *piazza*, acus, *needle*, manus, *hand*, domus, *house.*

Digitized by Google

Fifth Declension.

The stem ends in e. Nominative in s.

	MASCULINE.		FEMININE.	
Sing. N.	diē-s, *day*,	Pl. diēs,	rēs, *thing*,	Pl. rēs,
G.	diē-ī,	diē-rum,	re-ī,	rē-rum,
D.	diē-ī,	diē-bus,	re-ī,	rē-bus,
Ac.	die-m,	diēs,	rem,	rēs,
V.	diēs,	diēs,	rēs,	rēs,
Abl.	diē,	diē-bus.	rē,	rē-bus.

Remarks.—The Plural is used throughout in these words only, viz.: rēs, *thing;* diēs, *day;* speciēs, *appearance.* In some words, only Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural occur; others have no Plural at all.

The stem-characteristic e, in the Genitive and Dative Singular, is *long* after a vowel, and *short* after a consonant, *e. g.*, speciēs, Genitive speciēī; rēs, *thing*, reī; fidēs, *faith*, Genitive fideī, &c.

Some nouns of the Fifth Declension have a secondary form which follows the First Declension, *e. g.*, mollitiēs, *softness*, and mollitia. Where the double form exists, only Nominative, Accusative, and Ablative Singular commonly follow the Fifth Declension.

Rule of Gender.—Nouns of the Fifth Declension are feminine, except diēs (which in the Singular is of common gender, and in the Plural masculine) and the masculine merīdiēs, *mid-day*.

Declension of Greek Nouns.

Greek substantives, especially proper names, are commonly Latinized, and declined regularly according to their stem-characteristic. Many nouns, however, either retain their Greek form exclusively, or have the Greek and Latin forms side by side.

Paradigms of Greek Nouns of the First Declension.

	ἡ ἐπιτομή, ῆς, *abridgment.*		Λεωνίδας, ου,
Sing. N.	epitomē,	Pl. epitomae,	Leōnidās,
G.	epitomēs,	epitomārum,	Leōnidae,
D.	epitomae,	epitomīs,	Leōnidae,
Ac.	epitomēn,	epitomās,	Leōnidam, -ān,
V.	epitomē,	epitomae,	Leōnidās, -ā,
Abl.	epitomē,	epitomīs.	Leōnidā.

ὁ Πέρσης, ου, *the Persian.*

Sing. N.	Persēs and Persa,	Pl. Persae,
G.	Persae,	Persārum,
D.	Persae,	Persīs,
Ac.	Persēn and Persam,	Persās,
V.	Persē,	Persae,
Abl.	Persē and Persā,	Persīs.

Digitized by Google

Synopsis of the Changes in Greek Nouns.

Τροία, Troja, -ae, Ἰφιγένεια, Iphigenīa, -ae, Μενέλαος, Menelāus, -ī,
Ἀλέξανδρος, Alexander, -dri, ἡ παράγραφος, paragraphus, Δῆλος, Dēlus, Delos, -ī, *Delōs.*
Ἴλιον, Īlium, Ilion, -i, *Troy.* Ἄθως, -ω, Athŏs, Gen., Dat. Athō, Acc. Athō or Athōn, or Gen. Athōnis, *Athos.*
Ὀρφεύς, -έως, Orpheūs, Gen. Orpheī, Dat. Orpheō, Acc. Orpheum, Voc. Orpheū, Abl. Orpheō.

Σόλων, -ωνος,	Λάκων, -ωνος,	Μακεδών, -όνος,	Ξενοφῶν, -ῶντος,
Solōn, Solo, -ōnis,	Laco, -ōnis.	Macedo, -donis.	Xenophōn, -ōntis.
Ἕκτωρ, -ορος,	ὁ ῥήτωρ, -ορος,	Κύκλωψ, -ωπος,	
Hector, -oris.	rhētor, -oris.	Cyclōps, -ōpis.	
Πάρις, -ιδος,	Δημῶναξ, -ακτος,	Βίας, -αντος,	
Paris, -idis.	Dēmōnax, -actis.	Bĭās, -antis.	
Χρέμης, -ητος,	Οἰδίπους, -οδος,		
Chremēs, -ētis.	Oedipūs, -odis, or -ī,		
Ἀπόλλων, -ωνος,	Αἴας, -αντος,	Ὀδυσσεύς, -έως,	Ἀχιλλεύς, -έως,
Apollo, -inis.	Ajāx, -ācis.	Ulixēs, -is.	Achillēs, -is.
Ξέρξης, -ου,	Περικλῆς, -έους,	Ἡρακλῆς, -έους,	
Xerxēs, -is.	Periclēs, -is.	Hercules, -is.	

Remark.—Greek proper names in -es, Genitive -is, of the Third Declension, have in Latin, in the Genitive Singular, both -is and -ī, but in the Ablative only -e, and in the Accusative -em, and sometimes -en, e. g.:

Xerxēs. Genitive, Xerxis and Xerxī; Accusative, Xerxem and Xerxēn.

τὸ ἔπος, -ους,			ἡ ποίησις, -εως,
epos, only in Nom. and Acc. Plural, epē, *epic.*			poēsis, -is and cōs, *poesy.* acc. s. poēsin.
ὁ ἥρως, ωος,	Διδώ, -οῦς, -οῖ, -ώ,		
hērōs, -ōis, *hero.*	Dīdō. Gen. Dīdūs, Dat. Dīdō, Dīdōnis, Dīdōnī,		Acc. Dīdō, Dīdōnem.
ἡ μουσική,	ὁ κρατήρ,	ὁ ἐλέφας,	Σαλαμίς,
mūsicē, -es,	crāter, -ēris, m.	elephas, -antis,	Salamīs, -īnis,
mūsica, -ae, *music.*	crātēra, -ae, f., *bowl.*	elephantus, -i, *elephant.*	Salamīna, -ae.

Many words form the Accusative Singular in a, *e. g.*: āëra, *air*, aethera, Marathōna, Salamīna.

Irregular Nouns.

Nouns of Superabundant Forms.

baculus and baculum, *staff.*
clipeus and -um, *shield.*
māteria and māteriēs (fifth decl.), *stuff.*
dīluvium and dīluviēs, *flood.*
balteus and -um, *sword-belt.*
vesper, -ī, and vespera, -ae, *evening.*
dūritia and dūritiēs, *hardness.*
plēbs and plēbēs, *commons*, Gen. plēbis and plēbeī, and tribūnus plēbī, *tribune of the people.*

Digitized by Google

Nouns Defective in Number.

Nouns used in Singular only.

Most abstract nouns and names of materials: jûstitia, *justice*, aurum, *gold*.

Nouns used in Plural only.

valvae, *door-leaves, door.*
scālae, *stair-case.*
habēnae, *reins.*
dīvitiae, *riches.*
tenebrae, *darkness.*
epulae, epulum, *banquet.*
nuptiae, *wedding.*
indutiae, *armistice.*
minae, *threats.*
faucēs, -ium, faux, *gullet.*
compedēs, -ium, f., *fetters.*
bīgae, quadrīgae, *two-horse, four-horse chariot.*
angustiae, *straits.*
cūnae, cūnārum, cūnābula, -ōrum, *cradle.*
līberī, līberōrum, *children.*
arma, -ōrum, *arms.*
cervīcēs, G. -um, also cervix, *neck.*
castra, *camp.*
forēs, G. -um, f., *door.*
moenia, G. -ium, m., *town-wall.*
Kalendae, Nōnae, Idūs, *Calends, Nones, Ides.*
precēs, -ium (prex), *prayer.*
ambāgēs, -um, f., *circumlocution.*

The last four have Ablative Singular in -e: fauce, compede, prece, ambage.

Nouns Defective in Case.

Used only:—

In Ablative Singular: nātū, *by birth;* promptū, *in readiness;* monitū, *by admonition;* jussū, *by order;* sponte, *of free will*, &c.

In Nominative and Accusative Singular: fās, *right;* nefās, *wrong;* and the Greek neuters in -os.

In the oblique cases the forms of ops, *power;* daps, *feast;* frûx, *fruit;* vix, *change;* dicio, *sway;* verber, *scourge;* of which the Nominatives are not in use.

The Genitive Plural of many monosyllabic nouns does not occur, *e. g.:* cōs, *a whetstone;* lûx, *light;* ōs, *mouth.*

vīs, *force;* G. and D. are wanting; Ac. vim; Abl. vī. Pl. vīrēs, vīrium, vīribus.

nēmo, *nobody;* G. nullīus hominis; D. nēminī; Ac. nēminem; Abl. nullō homine.

Heteroclites.

(*Different Stems with the same Nominative.*)

pecus, udis, *one head of cattle, a sheep;* pecus, oris, *cattle collectively.*

domus, *house;* Abl. domō. Pl. G. domuum and domōrum; Ac. domūs and domōs.

Digitized by Google

fīcus, *fig-tree;* laurus, *bay-tree;* pīnus, *pine-tree*, are declined regularly according to the Second Declension, but have secondary forms in use from the Fourth Declension in the Ablative Singular, and in the Nominative and Accusative Plural.

senātus, *senate;* G. senatūs or senatī.

requiēs, -ētis, f.; Ac. requiētem and requiem, *rest.*

famēs, -is; Abl. famĕ and famē, *hunger.*

satrapēs, G. satrapae and satrapis; D. satrapae, &c., *Persian governor.*

Metaplasts.

(*Isolated Cases from another than the Nominative Stem.*)

locus, Pl. loca, *localities*, locī, *passages in books.*

jocus, *jest*, Pl. jocī and joca.

frēnum, *bridle*, Pl. frēna and frēnī.

rastrum, *mattock*, Pl. rāstrī, also rāstra.

vās, vāsis, n., *dish*, Pl. vāsa, vāsōrum, vāsīs (as if from vasum).

poēma, *poem*, poēmatis, n., Pl. poēmata, poēmatum, -ōrum, poēmatīs, -ibus. So all Greek words in -a, -atis.

Bacchānālia, -iorum, -ibus, *feast of Bacchus.* So several other names of feasts in -ia.

Peculiarities and Irregularities.

sanguis, *blood*, and pollis, *flour*, G. -inis.

caro, f., G. carnis (for carin-is); G. pl. carnium, *flesh.*

iter, itinĕris, n., *way*, *route.*

jecur, jecoris and jecinoris, n., *liver.* femur, -oris and feminis, n., *thigh.*

fel, fellis, n. *gall.* mel, mellis, n., *honey.* fār, farris, n., *meal.*

as, assis, m. assium. os, ossis, n., *bone*, ossium. ōs, ōris, n., *mouth.*

nix, nivis, f., *snow.* (from NIGVS. See vīvo, p. 86).

bōs, bovis, c.; G. Pl. boum; D. būbus, bōbus, *ox*, *bullock*, *cow.*

aucĕps, aucupis, *fowler.*

senex, senis, *old man.*

supellex, supellectilis, f., *furniture.*

caput, capitis, n., *head*, anceps, *double*, praeceps, *headlong*, G. -cipitis.

Anio, Aniēnis. Jūpiter, Jovis. Venus, Veneris. Cerēs, Cereris.

Adjectives of the Third Declension.

The declension of the adjectives of the Third Declension follows the rules given for the substantives.

Most of the adjectives of the Third Declension are vowel-stems in i. They form the masculine and feminine alike, with Nominative in s; but the neuter Nominative weakens the characteristic i into e. (Compare mare *sea.*)

Digitized by Google

Adjectives of Two Endings.

Several stems in i, preceded by r (cr, tr, br), form the Nominative masculine, not by affixing s, but by dropping the i and inserting e short before the r, *e. g.:* stem ācri, *sharp*, Nom. Masc. ācer, Nom. Fem. ācris. (Compare p. 23, *a.*)

The e belongs to the stem only in celer, celeris, celere, *swift*.

		Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
Sing.	N.	facili-s, *easy.*	facile,	ācer,	ācri-s,	ācre,
	G.	facilis,		ācris,		
	D.	facilī,		ācrī,		
	Ac.	facilem,	facile,	ācrem,		ācre,
	V.	facilis,	facile.	ācer,	ācris,	ācre.
	Abl.	facilī.		ācrī.		
Pl.	N.	facilēs,	facili-a,	ācrēs,		ācri-a,
	G.	facili-um,		ācri-um,		
	D.	facili-bus,		ācri-bus,		
	Ac.	facilēs,	facili-a,	ācrēs,		ācri-a,
	V.	facilēs,	facili-a.	ācrēs,		ācri-a.
	Abl.	facili-bus.		ācri-bus.		

The consonant-stems have the same forms in all the genders, except that in the Accusative Singular, and in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, the neuter is distinguished from the masculine and feminine.

		M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Sing.	N.	fēlix, *lucky*,	fēlix,	prūdēns, *wise*,	prūdēns,	vetus, *old*,	vetus,
	G.	fēlīc-is,		prūdent-is,		veter-is,	
	D.	fēlīc-ī,		prūdent-ī,		veter-ī,	
	Ac.	fēlīc-em,	fēlix,	prūdent-em,	prūdens,	veter-em,	vetus,
	V.	fēlix,		prūdens,		vetus,	
	Abl.	fēlīcī (and -e).		prūdentī and e,		veter-e or ī.	
		M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Pl.	N.	fēlīc-ēs,	fēlīcia,	prūdent-ēs,	prūdentia,	veter-ēs,	veter-a,
	G.	fēlīc-ium,		prūdent-ium,		veter-um,	
	D.	fēlīc-ibus,		prūdent-ibus,		veter-ibus,	
	Ac.	fēlīc-ēs,	fēlīcia,	prūdent-ēs,	prūdentia,	veter-ēs,	veter-a,
	V.	fēlīc-ēs,	fēlīcia,	prūdent-ēs,	prūdentia,	veter-ēs,	veter-a,
	Abl.	fēlīc-ibus.		prūdent-ibus.		veter-ibus.	

Digitized by Google

Adjectives of One Ending.

Adjective stems of one ending close with l, r, s, or a P, K, or T mute.

vigil, *alert*, vigil-is.	memor, *mindful*, memor-is, Abl. ī, e.	pauper, *poor*, pauper-is, Abl. e.	cicur, *tame*, cicur-is, Abl. e.	pūbēs, *adult*, pūber-is, Abl. e.	vetus, *old*, veter-is.
particep-s, *sharing*, particip-is, Abl. e.		caeleb-s, *unmarried*, caelib-is, Abl. e.		inop-s, *poor*. inop-is, Abl. ī (e).	
audāx, *bold*, audāc-is.	fēlix, *lucky*, felīc-is.	duplex, *double*, duplic-is.	ferōx, *fierce*, ferōc-is.	trux, *savage*, truc-is.	
dīves, *rich*, dīvit-is, Abl. e.	dēses, *slothful*, dēsidis, Abl. e.	compos, *possessed of*, compot-is, Abl. e.	prūdēns, *wise*, prūdent-is.	concors, *harmonious*, concord-is, Abl. e (ī).	

Remarks.

The adjectives of one ending, including the present participle, follow in part the declension of vowel stems:

1. In the neuter Plural they have -ia; only vetus, *old*, has vetera. Many have no neuter.

2. In the Ablative Singular they have ī and e—when used as adjectives commonly ī; when used as substantives, commonly e.

The participles, as such, have e; but used as nouns or adjectives, either e or ī, with tendency to ī.

3. In the Genitive Plural the consonant-stems have—
-ium, when the characteristic is preceded by a long vowel or a consonant;
-um, when the characteristic is preceded by a short vowel, *e. g.:*

audāx, *bold*, audācium.	prūdēns, *wise*, prūdentium.	Samnītēs, *Samnites*, Samnītium.
supplex, *suppliant*, supplicum.	dīves, *rich*, dīvitum or dītum.	
caelebs, *unmarried*, caelibum.	compos, *possessed of*, compotum.	memor, *mindful*, memorum.

Exceptions occur, *e. g.:*—

multiplex, *manifold*, multiplicium. Phoenīcēs, *Phoenicians*, Phoenīcum.

The participles have -ium, *e. g.*, amans, *loving*, amantium.
Used as nouns, they have sometimes -um, *e. g.:*

sapiēns, *a sage*, sapientum. parēns, *a parent*, parentum.

Digitized by Google

4. Compound adjectives follow the declension of the word from which they are formed, *e. g.*:

concors, *harmonious*, concordum.	anceps, *double*, ancipitum.	quadrupēs, *four-footed*, quadrupedum.

Even these, however, have the neuter plural commonly in -ia, *e. g.*: ancipitia, quadrupedia.

Comparison of Adjectives.

The Degrees of comparison are: Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.

The Comparative is formed by adding to the consonant-stems the endings -ior for the masculine and feminine, and -ius for the neuter.

The Superlative is formed by adding to the consonant-stems the endings -issimus, -a, -um.

Vowel-stems, before forming the Comparative and Superlative, drop their characteristic vowel.

Positive.	Comparative. M. and F.	Comparative. N.	Superlative.
altus, -a, -um, *high*,	alt-ior, *higher*,	alt-ius,	alt-issimus, a, um, *highest*.
fortis, -e, *brave*,	fort-ior,	fort-ius,	fort-issimus.
ūtilis, -e, *useful*,	ūtil-ior,	ūtil-ius,	ūtil-issimus.
audāx, *bold*,	audāc-ior,	audāc-ius,	audāc-issimus.
prūdēns, *wise*,	prūdent-ior,	prūdent-ius,	prūdent-issimus.

		M. and F.	N.
Sing.	N.	altior,	altius,
	G.	altiōris,	altiōris,
	D.	altiōrī,	altiōrī,
	Ac.	altiōrem,	altius,
	V.	altior,	altius,
	Abl.	altiōre and -ī.	altiōre and -ī.
Pl.	N.	altiōrēs,	altiōra,
	G.	altiōrum,	altiōrum,
	D.	altiōribus,	altiōribus,
	Ac.	altiōrēs,	altiōra,
	V.	altiōrēs,	altiōra,
	Abl.	altiōribus,	altiōribus.

Peculiarities.

1. Adjectives in -er add the Superlative-ending -rimus directly to the Nominative masculine.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
miser, -a, -um, *wretched*,	miser-ior, miser-ius,	miser-rimus.
celer, -is, -e, *swift*,	celer-ior, celer-ius,	celer-rimus.
ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp*,	ācr-ior, ācr-ius,	ācer-rimus.
vetus, *old*,	veterior, vetustior,	veter-rimus.

Digitized by Google

2. Six adjectives in -ilis add -limus to the stem, after dropping -i, to form the Superlative:

facilis, *easy;* difficilis, *hard;* similis, *like;* dissimilis, *unlike;* gracilis, *slender;* and humilis, *low.*

e. g. facilis, Comp. facil-ior, Sup. facil-limus.

3. The adjectives in dicus, ficus, volus, borrow the Comparative and Superlative from the participial forms in -dīcens, -ficens, and -volens.

e. g. benevolus, Comp. benevolentior, Sup. benevolentissimus.

In like manner:

egēnus, *needy,*	egentior,	egentissimus.
prōvidus, *far-sighted,*	prōvidentior,	prōvidentissimus.

4. Adjectives in -us, preceded by a vowel, form the Comparative and Superlative by means of magis and maximē, *more* and *most, e. g.:*

idōneus, *fit,* Comp. magis idōneus, Sup. maximē idōneus.

REMARK.—Adjectives in -quus and -uis are not included under this last rule.

antīquus, *old,*	Comp. antīqu-ior,	Sup. antīqu-issimus.
pinguis, *fat,*	pingu-ior,	pingu-issimus.
tenuis, *thin,*	tenu-ior,	tenu-issimus.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

bonus, *good,*	melior,	melius,	optimus.
malus, *bad,*	pejor,	pejus,	pessimus.
magnus, *great,*	major,	majus,	maximus.
parvus, *small,*	minor,	minus,	minimus.
multus, *much,*	S. ——	plūs,	plūrimus,
	Pl. plūrēs, complūrēs,	plūra, G. Pl. plūrium, complūra and -ia.	
nēquam, *worthless,*	nēquior,	nēquius,	nēquissimus.

REMARK.—Some Comparatives and Superlatives are in use, whilst the corresponding Positive is either lacking or rare.

dēterior, *worse,* dēterrimus, ōcior, *swifter,* ōcissimus.
potior, *better,* potissimus.
exterior, *outer,* extrēmus, extimus, from exterus, *on the outside,* and prep. extrā, *without.*
superior, *upper,* suprēmus, or summus, from superus, *on the top,* and prep. suprā, *above.*
inferior, *lower,* infimus, from inferus, *below,* prep. infrā, *below,*
posterior, *hinder, later,* postrēmus and postumus, from posterus, *coming after,* prep. post, *after.*

Again, the Positive stem of existing Comparatives is met with only in a preposition or an adverb, *e. g.*, ante, *before;* anterior, *that is before;* prope, *near;* propior, proximus; citerior, *on this side;* citimus, from citrā; ulterior, *further;* ultimus, from ultrā, *beyond;* interior, *inner;* intimus, from intus, *within;* prior, *former;* prīmus, *first,* from prae, *before.*

On the other hand, many adjectives lack one or both of the degrees of comparison, *e. g.:*

Diversus, *different,* novus, *new,* falsus, *untrue,* meritus, *deserved,* have no Comparative.

Longinquus, *afar,* propinquus, *near,* salūtāris, *healthful,* juvenis, *young* (Comparative jūnior), and senex, *old* (Comparative senior), have no superlative.

Digitized by Google

Adverbs.

Adverbs are either oblique cases or mutilated forms of oblique cases of the adjectives.

1. Adjectives in -us and -er form the adverb in ē (mutilated Ablative).

altus, *lofty*, altē. pulcher, *beautiful*, pulchrē. miser, *wretched*, miserē.

2. The adjectives of the Third Declension form their adverbs by adding -ter to the stem; stems in -nt dropping the t, and stems in a K-mute inserting the connecting vowel i before the ending.

fortis, *brave*, fortiter. ferōx, *wild*, ferōc-i-ter. prūdens, *foreseeing*, prūden-ter.

Exceptions:—

audāx, *bold*, audāc-ter. difficilis, *hard to do*, difficulter and difficiliter.
But instead of these, generally, nōn facile, vix, aegrē.

Remarks.—1. The Ablative of some adjectives serves as an adverb:—

tūtus, *safe*, tūtō; falsō, *falsely*; perpetuō, *ceaselessly*; continuō, *forthwith*; improvīsō, *unexpectedly*, prīmō, *at first*.

consultē and consultō, *purposely*; certē, *at least*, and certō, *certainly*.

rārē, *thinly*, and rārō, *seldom*; vērē, *in truth*, and vērō, *true but*.

rectē, *correctly*, and rectā, *straightway*; dexterā or dextrā, *to the right*, and dexterē, *skillfully*.

sinistrā and laevā, *to the left hand*.

2. The Accusative neuter of many adjectives is used as an adverb. *This is true of all Comparatives.*

Multum, *much*; paulum, *a little*; nimium, *too much*; cēterum, *for the rest*; prīmum, *first*; postrēmum, *finally*; potissimum, *chiefly*; facile, *easily*; dulce, *sweetly*; triste, *sadly*; impūne, *scot-free*.

Comparison of Adverbs.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
altē, *loftily*,	altius,	altissimē.
pulchrē, *beautifully*,	pulchrius,	pulcherrimē.
miserē, *poorly*,	miserius,	miserrimē.
fortiter, *bravely*,	fortius,	fortissimē.
audācter, *boldly*,	audācius,	audācissimē.
tūtō, *safely*,	tūtius,	tūtissimē.
facile, *easily*,	facilius,	facillimē.
bene, *well*,	melius,	optimē.
male, *ill*,	pejus,	pessimē.
[parvus], *small*,	minus, *less*,	minimē, *least*.
[magnus], *great*,	magis, *more*,	maximē, *most*.
multum, *much*,	plūs, *more*,	plūrimum,
cito, *quickly*,	citius,	citissimē.
diū, *long*,	diūtius,	diutissimē.
saepe, *often*,	saepius,	saepissimē.
nūper, *recently*,	—	nūperrimē.
satis, *enough*,	satius.	

Digitized by Google

Numeral Adjectives.

The Cardinal numerals are indeclinable, except: ūnus, *one*, duo, *two*, trēs, *three*, the hundreds beginning with ducenti, *two hundred*, and the plural mīlia, *thousands*, which forms mīlium and mīlibus.

N.	duo, *two*,	duae,	duo,	trēs, tria,
G.	duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,	trium,
D.	duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	tribus,
A.	duōs, duo,	duās,	duo,	trēs, tria,
Ab.	duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus.	tribus.

Like duo is declined ambo, -ae, -o, *both*.

		Cardinal Numerals.	Ordinal Numerals.
1	I	ūnus, ūna, ūnum (p. 16).	prīmus, -a, -um (prior)
2	II	duo, duae, duo	secundus (alter)
3	III	trēs, tria	tertius
4	IV	quattuor	quartus
5	V	quinque	quintus
6	VI	sex	sextus
7	VII	septem	septimus
8	VIII	octo	octāvus
9	IX	novem	nōnus
10	X	decem	decimus
11	XI	undecim	undecimus
12	XII	duodecim	duodecimus
13	XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus
14	XIV	quattuordecim	quartus decimus
15	XV	quindecim	quintus decimus
16	XVI	sēdecim	sextus decimus
17	XVII	septendecim	septimus decimus
18	XVIII	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus
19	XIX	undēvīgintī	undēvīcēsimus
20	XX	vīgintī	vīcēsimus
21	XXI	vīgintī ūnus	vīcēsimus prīmus
22	XXII	vīgintī duo	vīcēsimus secundus
23	XXIII	vīgintī trēs	vīcēsimus tertius
24	XXIV	vīgintī quattuor	vīcēsimus quartus
25	XXV	vīgintī quinque	vīcēsimus quintus
26	XXVI	vīgintī sex	vīcēsimus sextus
27	XXVII	vīgintī septem	vīcēsimus septimus
28	XXVIII	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsimus
29	XXIX	undētrīgintā	undētrīcēsimus
30	XXX	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
40	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50	L	quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsimus
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
70	LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
80	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsimus
90	XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
100	C	centum	centēsimus

Digitized by Google

	Cardinal Numerals.		Ordinal Numerals.
101	CI	centum et ūnus	centēsimus prīmus
115	CXV	centum et quindecim	centēsimus et quintus decimus
120	CXX	centum et vīgintī	centēsimus vīcēsimus
121	CXXI	centum et vīgintī ūnus	centēsimus vīcēsimus prīmus
200	CC	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
300	CCC	trecentī	trecentēsimus
400	CCCC	quadr*in*gentī	quadringentēsimus
500	D (IↃ)	*quin*gentī	quingentēsimus
600	DC	*sex*centī	sexcentēsimus
700	DCC	sept*in*gentī	septingentēsimus
800	DCCC	oct*in*gentī	octingentēsimus
900	DCCCC	*nōn*gentī	nōngentēsimus
1000	M (cIↃ)	mille	millēsimus
1001	MI	mille et ūnus	millēsimus prīmus
1101	MCI	mille centum ūnus	millēsimus centēsimus prīmus
1120	MCXX	mille centum vīgintī	millēsimus centēsimus vīcēsimus
1121	MCXXI	mille centum vīgintī ūnus	millēsimus centēsimus vīcēsimus prīmus
1200	MCC	mille ducentī	millēsimus ducentēsimus
2000	MM	duo mīlia (millia) bīna mīlia	bis millēsimus
2222		duo mīlia ducentī vīgintī duo	bis millēsimus ducentēsimus vīcēsimus secundus
5000	IↃↃ	quinque mīlia quīna mīlia	quinquiēs millēsimus
10,000	ccIↃↃ	decem mīlia dēna mīlia	deciēs millēsimus
21,000		ūnum et vīgintī mīlia	semel et viciēs millēsimus
100,000		centum mīlia centēna mīlia	centiēs millēsimus
1,000,000		deciēs centēna mīlia	deciēs centiēs millēsimus

The compound numerals can be expressed in two ways:

From 20 to 100, the compound numerals stand in the same order as the English: *twenty-one*, vīginti ūnus; or *one and twenty*, ūnus et vīginti.

From 100 on, et is inserted after the first numeral, or omitted altogether: mille et centum unus, or mille centum ūnus=1101.

Cardinals.

21–27	vīgintī ūnus	or ūnus et vīgintī
101	centum et ūnus	centum ūnus
120	centum et vīgintī	centum vīgintī
121	centum et vīgintī ūnus	centum vīgintī ūnus
1001	mille et ūnus	mille ūnus
1101	mille et centum ūnus	mille centum ūnus
1125	mille et centum vīgintī quinque	mille centum vīgintī quinque
2222	duo mīlia et ducentī vīgintī duo	duo mīlia ducentī vīgintī duo

Digitized by Google

Ordinals.

13–17	tertius decimus	or decimus et tertius
18	duodēvīcēsimus	octāvus decimus
19	undēvīcēsimus	nōnus decimus
21	vīcēsimus prīmus	ūnus et vīcēsimus
22	vīcēsimus secundus	alter et vīcēsimus
23	vīcēsimus tertius	tertius et vīcēsimus

Distributive Numerals.

1	singulī, -ae, -a, *one each.*	29	undētrīcēnī
2	bīnī, -ae, -a, *two each.*	30	trīcēnī
*3	ternī	40	quadrāgēnī
4	quaternī	50	quinquāgēnī
5	quīnī	60	sexāgēnī
6	sēnī	70	septuāgēnī
7	septēnī	80	octōgēnī
8	octōnī	90	nōnāgēnī
9	novēnī	100	cēntēnī
10	dēnī	200	ducēnī
11	undēnī	300	trecēnī
12	duodēnī	400	quadringēnī
13	ternī dēnī	500	quingēnī
14	quaternī dēnī	600	sexcēnī
15	quīnī dēnī	700	septingēnī
16	sēnī dēnī	800	octingēnī
17	septēnī dēnī	900	nongēnī
18	octōnī dēnī, duodēvīcēnī	1000	singula mīlia
19	novēnī dēnī, undēvīcēnī	2000	bīna mīlia
20	vīcēnī	3000	trīna mīlia
21	vīcēnī singulī	10,000	dēna mīlia
22	vīcēnī bīnī, bīnī et vīcēnī	100,000	centēna mīlia
28	duodētrīcēnī		

Multiplicative Numerals.

1	simplex, *single,*	1	simplus, -a, -um, *single,*
2	duplex, *double,*	2	duplus, *double,*
3	triplex, *triple,*	3	triplus,
4	quadruplex,	4	quadruplus,
5	quincuplex,	7	septuplus,
7	septemplex,	8	octuplus.
10	decemplex,		
100	centuplex.		

---

* The distributive numerals are used instead of cardinals with nouns which have a singular meaning in the plural (p. 28): bīnae litterae, *two letters.* Instead of ternī, the form trīnī is employed in such combinations: trīnae litterae, *three letters;* trīna castra, *three camps.* Exception: Unī — ae — a is used with this class and not singulī: unae litterae, *one letter.*

Digitized by Google

Numeral Adverbs.

1 semel, *once*,	22 bis et vīcĭēs, vīcĭēs et bis, vīcĭēs bis,*
2 bis, *twice*,	30 trīcĭēs,
3 ter,	40 quadrāgĭēs,
4 quater,	50 quinquāgĭēs,
5 quinquiēs, quinquiēns,	60 sexāgĭēs,
6 sexiēs,	70 septuāgĭēs,
7 septiēs,	80 octōgĭēs,
8 octiēs,	90 nōnāgĭēs,
9 noviēs,	100 centiēs,
10 deciēs,	200 ducentiēs,
11 undeciēs,	300 trecentiēs,
12 duodeciēs,	400 quadringentiēs,
13 ter deciēs, tredeciēs,	500 quingentiēs,
14 quater deciēs, quattuordeciēs,	600 sēxcentiēs,
15 quinquiēs deciēs, quindeciēs,	700 septingentiēs,
16 sexiēs deciēs, sēdeciēs,	800 octingentiēs,
17 septiēs deciēs,	900 nongentiēs,
18 duodēvīcĭēs, octiēs deciēs,	1,000 milliēs,
19 undēvīcĭēs, noviēs deciēs,	2,000 bis milliēs,
20 vīcĭēs,	100,000 centiēs milliēs,
21 semel et vīcĭēs, vīcĭēs et semel, vīcĭēs semel,*	1,000,000 milliēs milliēs, deciēs centiēs milliēs.

Pronouns.

Pronouns designate without describing.

I.—*Personal Pronouns of the First Person.*

		Substantive.	Possessive.
Sing.	N.	ego, *I*,	
	G.	meī, *of me*,	
	D.	mihĭ, *to, for me*,	meus, -a, -um, *mine* or *my*.
	Ac.	mē, *me*,	
	Abl.	mē, *from, with, by me*.	
Pl.	N.	nōs, *we*,	
	G.	nōstrī, *of us*,	
		nōstrum,	nōster, nōstra, nōstrum, *our* or *ours*.
	D.	nōbīs, *to, for us*,	
	Ac.	nōs, *us*,	
	Abl.	nōbīs, *from, with, by us*.	

* Not semel vīcĭēs, bis vīcĭēs, &c., because that would be, once twenty times—20 times; twice twenty times—40 times.

Digitized by Google

II.—*Personal Pronouns of the Second Person.*

		Substantive.	Possessive.
Sing.	N.	tū, *thou*,	
	G.	tuī, *of thee*,	
	D.	tibĭ, *to, for thee*,	tuus, a, um, *thy* or *thine*.
	Ac.	tē, *thee*,	
	Abl.	tē, *from, with, by thee*,	
Pl.	N.	vōs, *ye* or *you*,	
	G.	vestrī, *of you*,	
		vestrum,	vester, vestra, vestrum, *your* or *yours*.
	D.	vōbīs, *to, for you*,	
	Ac.	vōs, *you*,	
	Abl.	vōbīs, *from, with, by you*.	

Remark.—The forms of the Genitive Plural, nostrum and vestrum, are used as partitive genitives in reference to number.

III.—*Personal Pronouns of the Third Person.*

A. The personal pronoun of the third person varies in the Nominative, and is represented by the determinative in the oblique cases, with special forms for the reflexive.

Determinative.

		Substantive.				Possessive.
Sing.	N.	[is,	ea,	id],	*he, she, it*,	(supplied by the genitive.)
	G.	ējus,			*of him, &c.*	
	D.	eī,			*to, for him*,	
	Ac.	eum,	eam,	id,	*him, her, it*,	ejus, *his, hers, its.*
	Abl.	eō,	eā,	eo,	*from, with, by him*, &c.	
Pl.	N.	[eī, or iī,		eae,	ea], *they*,	
	G.	eōrum,		eārum,	eōrum, *of them*,	eōrum, eārum, eōrum, *their*,
	D.	eīs, or iīs,			*to, for, them*,	or *theirs.*
	Ac.	eōs,		eās,	ea, *them*,	
	Abl.	eīs, or iīs,			*from, with, by them.*	

Reflexive.

		Substantive.		Possessive.
Sing.	N.	——		
	G.	suī,	*of him, her, it(self)*,	suus, -a, -um, *his, her(s), its*
	D.	sibĭ,	*to, for, him(self), her(self)*,	(*own*).
	Ac.	sē (sēsē),	*him(self), her(self)*,	
	Abl.	sē (sēsē),	*from, with, by him(self)*.	
Pl.	N.	——		
	G.	suī,	*of them(selves)*,	suus, -a, -um, *their* (*own*),
	D.	sibĭ,	*to, for them(selves)*,	*theirs.*
	Ac.	sē (sēsē),	*them(selves)*,	
	Abl.	sē (sēsē),	*from, with, by them(selves)*.	

Digitized by Google

B. Determinative Pronouns.

1.—is, *he, that, &c.*

Sing. N.	is,	ea,	id,	Pl. N.	eī, or iī,	eae,	ea,
G.	ējus,				eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum,
D.	eī,				eīs, or iīs,		
Ac.	eum,	eam,	id,		eōs,	eās,	ea,
Abl.	eō,	eā,	eō.		eīs, or iīs.		

2.—Īdĕm, *the same.*

Sing. N.	Īdem,	eadem,	idem,	Pl. N.	eīdem, or iīdem,	eaedem,	eadem,
G.	ējusdem,				eōrundem,	eārundem,	eōrundem,
D.	eīdem,				eīsdem, or iīsdem,		
Ac.	eundem,	eandem,	idem,		eōsdem,	eāsdem,	eadem,
Abl.	eōdem,	eādem,	eōdem.		eīsdem, or iīsdem.		

3.—ipsĕ, *he, self.*

Sing. N.	ipse,	ipsa,	ipsum,	Pl. N.	ipsī,	ipsae,	ipsa,
G.	ipsīus,				ipsōrum,	ipsārum,	ipsōrum,
D.	ipsī,				ipsīs,		
Ac.	ipsum,	ipsam,	ipsum,		ipsōs,	ipsās,	ipsa,
Abl.	ipsō,	ipsā,	ipsō.		ipsīs.		

C. Demonstrative Pronouns.

I.—*Demonstrative Pronoun for the First Person.*

hĭc, *this.*

Sing. N.	hĭc,	haec,	hŏc,	Pl. N.	hī,	hae,	haec, *these, &c.*
G.	hūjus,				hōrum,	hārum,	hōrum,
D.	huīc,				hīs,		
Ac.	hunc,	hanc,	hŏc,		hōs,	hās,	haec,
Abl.	hōc,	hāc,	hōc.		hīs.		

II.—*Demonstrative Pronoun for the Second Person.*

istĕ, *that.*

Sing. N.	iste,	ista,	istud,	Pl. N.	istī,	istae,	ista,
G.	istīus,				istōrum,	istārum,	istōrum,
D.	istī,				istīs,		
Ac.	istum,	istam,	istud,		istōs,	istās,	ista,
Abl.	istō,	istā,	istō.		istīs.		

III.—*Demonstrative Pronoun for the Third Person.*

Sing. N.	ille,	illa,	illud,	Pl. N.	illī,	illae,	illa,
G.	illīus,				illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum,
D.	illī,				illīs,		
Ac.	illum,	illam,	illud,		illōs,	illās,	illa,
Abl.	illō,	illā,	illō.		illīs.		

Digitized by Google

D. Relative Pronouns.

quī, *who.*

Sing. N.	quī,	quae,	quod,	Pl. N.	quī,	quae,	quae,
G.	cŭjus,				quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum,
D.	cuī,				quibus,		
Ac.	quem,	quam,	quod,		quōs,	quās,	quae,
Abl.	quō,	quā,	quō.		quibus.		

General Relatives are:

Substantive.	quisquis,	quidquid,	*whoever, whatever.*
Adjective.	quīquī,	quaequae,	quodquod, *whosoever.*
	quīcunque,	quaecunque,	quodcunque, *whichever.*

E. Interrogative Pronouns.

Substantive.	quis? *who?*	quid? *what?*	
Adjective.	quī?	quae?	quod? *which?*
Subst. & Adj.	uter?	utra?	utrum? *who, which of two?*

Sing. N.	quis?	quid?	*who? what?*
G.	cujus?	—	*whose?*
D.	cuī?	—	*to, for whom?*
Ac.	quem?	quid?	*whom? what?*
Abl.	quō?		*from, with, by whom* or *what?*

Remark.—The plural of the substantive interrogative pronoun and both numbers of the adjective interrogative pronoun coincide with the forms of the relative quī, quae, quod, *who, which.*

Strengthened Interrogatives.

Substantive.	quisnam? *who pray?*		quidnam? *what pray?*
Adjective.	quīnam?	quaenam?	quodnam? *which pray?*

F. Indefinite Pronouns.

1. *Substantive.* aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, / quis, qua, quid, } *somebody, some one or other.*
   Adjective. aliquī, aliquae (or aliqua*), aliquod, / quī, quae (or qua*), quod, } *some, any.*
2. quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (and quoddam), *a certain, certain one.*
3. quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam (and quodpiam), *some one, some.*
4. quisquam, ——— quidquam, *any one.*
5. quīvis, quaevis, quidvis (and quodvis), / quīlibet, quaelibet, quidlibet (and quodlibet), } *any one you please.*
6. quisque, quaeque, quidque and quodque, / ūnusquisque, ūnaquaeque, ūnumquidque and ūnumquodque, } *each one, every one.*

The distinction between the substantive and adjective form is observed rigorously only in the neuter.

---

* In neuter plural, aliquae or aliqua, quae or qua.

Digitized by Google

Quisquam is used only as a substantive: the corresponding adjective is ullus, -a, -um, *any*.

ullus, -a, -um, *any*, nullus, -a, -um, *no one, not one*. The corresponding substantive is nēmĭo: see p. 30.

nōnnullus, -a, -um, *some, many a*.

alius, -a, -ud, *another;* alter, -era, -erum, *the other, one* (*of two*), neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither of two*.

alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum, *the one or the other of the two*. Gen. alterutrĭus.
(or alter uter, altera utra, alterum utrum. Gen. alterĭus utrĭus.)

uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each of two, either*. ambo, -ae, -o, *both*.

utervīs, utravīs, utrumvīs,
uterlĭbet, utralĭbet, utrumlĭbet, } *whichever you please of the two.*

Correlative Pronominal Adjectives.

Interrogatives.	Demonstratives.	Relatives.
quis? *who?*	is, *that,*	quī, *who,*
quālis? *of what kind?*	tālis, *such* (*of that kind*),	quālis, *as* (*of which kind*),
quantus? *how much?*	tantus, *so much,*	quantus, *as much,*
quot? *how many?*	tot, *so many.*	quot, *as many.*

Correlative Pronominal Adverbs.

1. Pronominal adverbs of *place.*

ubĭ? *where?*	ībĭ, *there,*	ubĭ, *where.*
quā? *where? which way?*	hīc, hāc, *here, this way,*	quā, *where, which way.*
	istīc, istāc, *there, that way,*	
	illīc, illāc, *there, yonder way.*	
unde? *whence?*	inde, *thence,*	unde, *whence.*
	hinc, *hence.*	
	istinc, *thence.*	
	illinc, *thence, from yonder*	
quō? *whither?*	eō, *thither,*	quō, *whither.*
	hūc, *hither.*	
	istūc, *thither.*	
	illūc, *thither, yonder.*	

2. Pronominal adverbs of *time.*

quandŏ? *when?*	tum, *then,*	quandŏ,
	tunc, *at that time,*	quum.
	nunc, *now.*	
quotiēs? *how often?*	totiēs, *so often.*	quotiēs, *as often as.*

3. Pronominal adverbs of *manner.*

quōmodŏ? *how?*	ita, sīc, *so, thus,*	ut, utĭ, *as.*
quam? *how much?*	tam, *so much,*	quam, *as.*

The relative pronouns become indefinite by prefixing ali-:—

aliquantus, *somewhat great;* aliquot, *several, some;* alicubī, *somewhere;* alicunde, *from somewhere;* aliquandō, *at some time.*

Digitized by Google

The simple relatives become general by doubling themselves, or by suffixing -cunque:—

quantuscunque, *however great;* qualiscunque, *of whatever kind;* quotquot, *however many.* ubīcunque, *wherēsoever;* quandōcunque, *whenever;* quotiēscunque, *however often.* utut, *in whatever way;* utcunque, *howsoever;* quamquam, *however, although.*

Many of the relatives are further compounded with -vis or -libet:—

quantuslibet, quantusvis, *as great as you please;* ubivis, *where you will;* quamvis, *as you please, though.*

THE VERB.

Conjugation.

The Inflection given to the verbal stem expresses:—

1. Person and Number;
2. Voice—Active or Passive;
3. Tense—Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect;
4. Mood—Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative.

These forms belong to the Finite Verb. Outside of the Finite Verb, and akin to the noun, are the verbal forms called:—

Infinitive, Supine, Participle, Gerund.

The Inflection of the Verb (Conjugation) is effected by means of—

1. Personal endings,
2. Connecting vowels,
3. Tense-signs.

e. g., in amā-b-i-t, *he will love*, t is the personal ending, i the connecting vowel, and b the tense-sign. M is the characteristic letter of the First Person (but often lost), S of the Second Person (from T, which reappears in the Plural), T of the Third.

Several parts of the verb are formed with the verb esse, *to be.*

The Verb esse, *to be.*

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	Present.	
Sing. 1.	sum, *I am,*	sim, *I be,*
2.	es, *thou art,*	sīs, *thou be,*
3.	est, *he, she, it is.*	sit, *he, she, it be.*
Pl. 1.	sumus, *we are,*	sīmus, *we be,*
2.	estis, *you are,*	sītis, *you be,*
3.	sunt, *they are.*	sint, *they be.*

Digitized by Google

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	Imperfect.	
Sing. 1.	eram, *I was,*	essem, *I were* (forem),
2.	erās, *thou wast,*	essēs, *thou wert* (forēs),
3.	erat, *he was.*	esset, *he were* (foret).
Pl. 1.	erāmus, *we were,*	essēmus, *we were,*
2.	erātis, *you were,*	essētis, *you were,*
3.	erant, *they were.*	essent, *they were* (forent)
	Future.	
Sing. 1.	erŏ, *I shall be,*	
2.	eris, *thou wilt be,*	
3.	erit, *he will be.*	
Pl. 1.	erimus, *we shall be,*	
2.	eritis, *you will be,*	
3.	erunt, *they will be.*	
	Perfect.	
Sing. 1.	fuī, *I have been, I was,*	fuerim, *I have, may have, been,*
2.	fuistī, *thou hast been, thou wast,*	fueris, *thou have, mayst have, been,*
3.	fuit, *he has been, he was.*	fuerit, *he have, may have, been.*
Pl. 1.	fuimus, *we have been, we were,*	fuerĭmus, *we have, may have, been,*
2.	fuistis, *you have been, you were,*	fuerĭtis, *you have, may have, been,*
3.	fuērunt, *they have been, they were.*	fuerint, *they have, may have, been.*
	Pluperfect.	
Sing. 1.	fueram, *I had been,*	fuissem, *I had, might have, been,*
2.	fuerās, *thou hadst been,*	fuissēs, *thou hadst, mightst have, been,*
3.	fuerat, *he had been.*	fuisset, *he had, might have, been.*
Pl. 1.	fuerāmus, *we had been,*	fuissēmus, *we had, might have, been,*
2.	fuerātis, *you had been,*	fuissētis, *you had, might have, been,*
3.	fuerant, *they had been.*	fuissent, *they had, might have, been.*
	Future Perfect.	
Sing. 1.	fuerŏ, *I shall have been,*	
2.	fueris, *thou wilt have been,*	
3.	fuerit, *he shall have been.*	
Pl. 1.	fuerĭmus, *we shall have been,*	
2.	fuerĭtis, *you will have been,*	
3.	fuerint, *they will have been.*	

	Imperative.	Infinitive.
Sing. 1.	—,	*Pres.* esse, *to be,*
2.	es, *be thou,* estŏ, *thou shalt be,*	*Perf.* fuisse, *to have been,*
3.	estŏ, *he shall be.*	*Fut.* futūrum (-am, -um), esse (fore), *to be about to be.*
Pl. 1.	—,	
2.	este, *be ye,* estōte, *you shall be,*	Participle.
3.	suntŏ, *they shall be.*	*Fut.* futūrus, -a, -um, *about to be.*

Digitized by Google

Compounds of sum, *I am.*

ab-sum, *I am away, absent.*
Perf. abfuī, āfuī.
dē-sum, *I am wanting.*
ad-sum, *I am present.*
Perf. affuī.
in-sum, *I am in.*
inter-sum, *I am between.*
ob-sum, *I am against, I hurt.*
Perf. obfuī *or* offuī.
prō-sum, *I am for, I profit.*
prae-sum, *I am over, I superintend.*
sub-sum, *I am under.*
super-sum, *I am, or remain, over.*

Only absum and praesum form present participles, viz.: absens, *absent*, and praesens, *present*.

In the forms of prōsum, prōd is used before vowels.

PRESENT,	*Ind.*	prō-sum, prōd-es, prōd-est, prō-sumus, prōd-estis, prō-sunt,	
	Subj.	prō-sim, prō-sīs, prō-sit, etc.	*Inf.* prōd-esse,
IMPERFECT,	*Ind.*	prōd-eram,	*Subj.* prōd-essem,
FUTURE,	"	prōd-ero,	
PERFECT,	"	prō-fuī,	" prō-fuerim,
PLUPERFECT,	"	prō-fueram,	" pro-fuissem,
FUT. PERF.,	"	prō-fuerŏ.	

Possum, *I am able, I can.*

Possum is compounded of pot and sum. T becomes s before s.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	Present.	
Sing. 1.	pos-sum, *I am able, can,*	pos-sim, *I be able,*
2.	pot-es, *thou art able, canst,*	pos-sīs, *thou be able,*
3.	pot-est, *he is able, can.*	pos-sit, *he be able.*
Pl. 1.	pos-sumus, *we are able, can,*	pos-sīmus, *we be able,*
2.	pot-estis, *you are able, can,*	pos-sītis, *you be able,*
3.	pos-sunt, *they are able, can.*	pos-sint, *they be able.*
	Imperfect.	
Sing. 1.	pot-eram, *I was able, could,*	pos-sem, *I were, might be, able,*
2.	pot-erās, *thou wast able, couldst,*	pos-sēs, *thou wert, mightst be, able,*
3.	pot-erat, *he was able, could.*	pos-set, *he were, might be, able.*
Pl. 1.	pot-erāmus, *we were able, could,*	pos-sēmus, *we were, might be, able,*
2.	pot-erātis, *you were able, could,*	pos-sētis, *you were, might be, able,*
3.	pot-erant, *they were able, could.*	pos-sent, *they were, might be, able.*

Future.

Sing. 1. pot-erŏ, *I shall be able,*
2. pot-eris, *thou wilt be able,*
3. pot-erit, *he will be able.*

Pl. 1. pot-erimus, *we shall be able,*
2. pot-eritis, *you will be able,*
3. pot-erunt, *they will be able.*

Digitized by Google

		INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
		Perfect.	
Sing.	1.	pot-uī, *I have been able,*	pot-uerim, *I have, may have, been able,*
	2.	pot-uistī, *thou hast been able,*	pot-ueris, *thou have, mayst have, been able,*
	3.	pot-uit, *he has been able.*	pot-uerit, *he have, may have, been able.*
Pl.	1.	pot-uimus, *we have been able,*	pot-uerīmus, *we have, may have, been able,*
	2.	pot-uistis, *you have been able,*	pot-uerītis, *you have, may have, been able,*
	3.	pot-uērunt, *they have been able.*	pot-uerint, *they have, may have, been able.*
		Pluperfect.	
Sing.	1.	pot-ueram, *I had been able,*	pot-uissem, *I had, might have, been able,*
	2.	pot-ueras, *thou hadst been able,*	pot-uissēs, *thou hadst, mightst have, been able,*
	3.	pot-uerat, *he had been able.*	pot-uisset, *he had, might have, been able.*
Pl.	1.	pot-uerāmus, *we had been able,*	pot-uissēmus, *we had, might have, been able,*
	2.	pot-uerātis, *you had been able,*	pot-uissētis, *you had, might have, been able,*
	3.	pot-uerant, *they had been able.*	pot-uissent, *they had, might have, been able.*
		Future Perfect.	
Sing.	1.	pot-uerŏ, *I shall have been able,*	
	2.	pot-ueris, *thou wilt have been able,*	
	3.	pot-uerit, *he will have been able.*	
Pl.	1.	pot-uerīmus, *we shall have been able,*	
	2.	pot-uerītis, *you will have been able,*	
	3.	pot-uerint, *they will have been able.*	

SYSTEMS OF CONJUGATION.

There are two Systems of Conjugation, distinguished by the stem-characteristic, viz., the Vowel-Conjugation, and the Consonant Conjugation.

Vowel verbal stems end in ā, ē, ī (First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations).

Consonant verbal stems end in one of the consonants (Third Conjugation).

Stems in U follow the Consonant-Conjugation.

The Stem-Forms.

	Present.	*Infinitive.*	*Perfect.*	*Supine.*	
I.	amŏ,	amār-e,	amā-vī,	amā-tum,	*to love.*
II.	dēle-ŏ,	dēlē-re,	dēlē-vī,	dēlē-tum,	*to blot out.*
	mone-ŏ,	monē-re,	mon-uī,	mon-ī-tum,	*to remind.*
III.	em-ŏ,	em-e re,	ēm-ī,	em-tum,	*to buy.*
	statu-ŏ,	statu-e-re,	statu-ī,	statū-tum,	*to settle.*
	scrīb-ŏ,	scrīb-e-re,	scrip-sī,	scrip-tum,	*to write.*
IV.	audī-ŏ,	audī-re,	audī-vī,	audī-tum,	*to hear.*

Digitized by Google

First Conjugation.

Active.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	Present.	
Sing. 1.	amŏ, *I am loving, do love, love,*	ame-m, *I be loving, I may love,*
2.	amā-s, *thou art loving, dost love, lovest,*	amē-s, *thou be loving, thou mayst love,*
3.	ama-t, *he is loving, does love, loves.*	ame-t, *he be loving, he may love.*
Pl. 1.	amā-mus, *we are loving, do love, love,*	amē-mus, *we be loving, we may love,*
2.	amā-tis, *you are loving, do love, love,*	amē-tis, *you be loving, you may love,*
3.	ama-nt, *they are loving, do love, love.*	ame-nt, *they be loving, they may love.*
	Imperfect.	
Sing. 1.	amā-ba-m, *I was loving, I loved,*	amā-re-m, *I were loving, I might love,*
2.	amā-bā-s, *thou wast loving, thou lovedst,*	amā-rē-s, *thou wert loving, thou mightest love.*
3.	amā-ba-t, *he was loving, he loved.*	amā-re-t, *he were loving, he might love.*
Pl. 1.	amā-bā-mus, *we were loving, we loved,*	amā-rē-mus, *we were loving, we might love,*
2.	amā-bā-tis, *you were loving, you loved,*	amā-rē-tis, *you were loving, you might love,*
3.	amā-ba-nt, *they were loving, they loved.*	amā-re-nt, *they were loving, they might love.*

Future.

Sing. 1. amā-bŏ, *I shall be loving, I shall love,*
2. amā-bi-s, *thou wilt be loving, thou wilt love,*
3. amā-bi-t, *he will be loving, he will love.*

Pl. 1. amā-bi-mus, *we shall be loving, we shall love,*
2. amā-bi-tis, *you will be loving, you will love.*
3. amā-bu-nt, *they will be loving, they will love.*

Imperative.

Sing. 1.	—	
2.	amā, *love thou,*	amā-tŏ, *thou shalt love,*
3.		amā-tŏ, *he shall love.*
Pl. 1.	—	
2.	amā-te, *love ye,*	amā-tōte, *ye shall love,*
3.		ama-ntŏ, *they shall love.*

Participle.

Present: N. amā-n-s, G. ama-nt-is, *loving.*
Future: amā-tūrus, -a, -um, *being about to love.*

Digitized by Google

First Conjugation.

Active.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	Perfect.	
Sing. 1.	amā-vī, *I have loved, I did love,*	amā-ve-rim, *I have, may have, loved,*
2.	amā-vi-stī, *thou hast loved, thou didst love,*	amā-ve-ris, *thou have, mayst have, loved,*
3.	amā-vi-t, *he has loved, he did love.*	amā-ve-rit, *he have, may have, loved.*
Pl. 1.	amā-vi-mus, *we have loved, we did love,*	amā-ve-rĭmus, *we have, may have, loved,*
2.	amā-vi-stis, *you have loved, you did love,*	amā-ve-rĭtis, *you have, may have, loved,*
3.	amā-vē-runt, *they have loved, they did love.*	amā-ve-rint, *they have, may have, loved.*
	Pluperfect.	
Sing. 1.	amā-ve-ram, *I had loved,*	amā-vi-ssem, *I had, might have, loved,*
2.	amā-ve-rās, *thou hadst loved,*	amā-vi-ssēs, *thou hadst, mightest have, loved.*
3.	amā-ve-rat, *he had loved.*	amā-vi-sset, *he had, might have, loved.*
Pl. 1.	amā-ve-rāmus, *we had loved,*	amā-vi-ssēmus, *we had, might have, loved,*
2.	amā-ve-rātis, *you had loved,*	amā-vi-ssētis, *you had, might have, loved,*
3.	amā-ve-rant, *they had loved.*	amā-vi-ssent, *they had, might have, loved.*

Future Perfect.

Sing. 1. amā-ve-rŏ, *I shall have loved,*
2. amā-ve-ris, *thou wilt have loved,*
3. amā-ve-rit, *he will have loved.*

Pl. 1. amā-ve-rĭmus, *we shall have loved,*
2. amā-ve-rĭtis, *you will have loved,*
3. amā-ve-rint, *they will have loved.*

Infinitive.

Pres. amā-re, *to love.*
Perf. amā-vi-sse, *to have loved.*
Fut. amā-tūrum, -am, -um, esse, *to be about to love.*

Gerund.	*Supine.*
N. [amāre], *loving.*	
G. amandī, *of loving.*	
D. amandō, *to loving.*	
Ac. [amare], (ad) amandum, *loving, to love.*	1. amā-tum, *to love.*
Abl. amandō, *by loving.*	2. amā-tū, *to love, in the loving.*

Digitized by Google

First Conjugation.

Passive.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	Present.	
Sing. 1.	amo-r, *I am loved,*	ame-r, *I be, may be, loved,*
2.	amā-ris, *thou art loved,*	amē-ris, *thou be, mayst be, loved,*
3.	amā-tur, *he is loved.*	amē-tur, *he be, may be, loved,*
Pl. 1.	amā-mur, *we are loved,*	amē-mur, *we be, may be, loved,*
2.	amā-minī, *you are loved,*	amē-minī, *you be, may be, loved,*
3.	ama-ntur, *they are loved.*	ame-ntur, *they be, may be, loved.*
	Imperfect.	
Sing. 1.	amā-ba-r, *I was loved,*	amā-re-r, *I were, might be, loved,*
2.	amā-bā-ris, *thou wast loved,*	amā-rē-ris, *thou wert, mightest be, loved,*
3.	amā-bā-tur, *he was loved.*	amā-rē-tur, *he were, might be, loved.*
Pl. 1.	amā-bā-mur, *we were loved,*	amā-rē-mur, *we were, might be, loved,*
2.	amā-bā-minī, *you were loved,*	amā-rē-minī, *you were, might be, loved,*
3.	amā-ba-ntur, *they were loved.*	amā-re-ntur, *they were, might be, loved.*

Future.

Sing. 1. amā-bo-r, *I shall be loved,*
2. amā-be-ris, *thou wilt be loved,*
3. amā-bi-tur, *he will be loved.*

Pl. 1. amā-bi-mur, *we shall be loved,*
2. amā-bi-minī, *you will be loved,*
3. amā-bu-ntur, *they will be loved.*

Imperative.

Sing. 1.	——	
2.	amā-re, *be thou loved.*	amā-tor, *thou shalt be loved,*
3.		amā-tor, *he shall be loved.*
Pl. 1.	——	
2.	amā-minī, *be ye loved.*	
3.		ama-ntor, *they shall be loved.*

Digitized by Google

First Conjugation.

Passive.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Perfect.	
Sing. 1. amātus, -a, -um, sum, *I have been loved, etc.*	amātus, -a, -um, sim, *I have, may have, been loved, etc.*
Pl. 1. amātī, -ae, -a, sumus, *We have been loved.*	amātī, -ae, -a, simus, *We have, may have, been loved, etc.*
Pluperfect.	
Sing. 1. amātus, -a, -um, eram, *I had been loved, etc.*	amātus, -a, -um, essem, *I had, might have, been loved, etc.*
Pl. 1. amātī, -ae, -a, erāmus, *We had been loved.*	amātī, -ae, -a, essēmus, *We had, might have, been loved.*

Future Perfect.

Sing. 1. amātus, -a, -um, erŏ, *I shall have been loved.*

Pl. 1. amātī, -ae, -a, erimus, *we shall have been loved.*

Infinitive.

Pres. amā-rī, *to be loved.*

Perf. amā-tum, -am, -um, esse, *to have been loved.*

Fut. amātum, īrī, *to be about to be loved.*

Participle.

Perfect: amā-tus, -a, -um, *loved.*

Gerund: ama-ndus -a, -um, (*one*) *to be loved.*

Digitized by Google

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Active.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	Present.	
Sing. 1.	dēle-ŏ, *I destroy.*	dēle-a-m, *I be destroying, I may destroy.*
2.	dēlē-s,	dēle-ā-s,
3.	dēle-t.	dēle-a-t.
Pl. 1.	dēlē-mus,	dēle-ā-mus,
2.	dēlē-tis,	dēle-ā-tis,
3.	dēle-nt.	dēle-a-nt.
	Imperfect.	
Sing. 1.	dēlē-ba-m, *I was destroying.*	dēlē-re-m, *I were destroying, I might destroy.*
2.	dēlē-bā-s,	dēlē-rē-s,
3.	dēlē-ba-t.	dēlē-re-t.
Pl. 1.	dēlē-bā-mus,	dēlē-rē-mus,
2.	dēlē-bā-tis,	dēlē-rē-tis,
3.	dēlē-ba-nt.	dēlē-re-nt.

Future.

Sing. 1. dēlē-bŏ, *I shall destroy,*
2. dēlē-bi-s, *thou wilt destroy,*
3. dēlē-bi-t, *he will destroy.*

Pl. 1. dēlē-bi-mus, *we shall destroy,*
2. dēlē-bi-tis, *you will destroy,*
3. dēlē-bu-nt, *they will destroy.*

IMPERATIVE.

Sing. 1. ——
2. dēlē, *destroy thou,* dēlē-tŏ, *thou shalt destroy,*
dēlē-tŏ, *he shall destroy.*

Pl. 1. ——
2. dēlē-te, *destroy ye,* dēlē-tōte, *ye shall destroy,*
dēle-ntŏ, *they shall destroy.*

PARTICIPLE.

Present: N. dēlē-n-s, G. dele-nt-is, *destroying.*

Future: dēlē-tūrus, -a, -um, *about to destroy.*

Digitized by Google

Second Conjugation.

Active.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	Perfect.	
Sing. 1.	dēlē-vī, *I have destroyed, I destroyed.*	dēlē-ve-rim, *I have, may have, destroyed.*
2.	dēlē-vi-stī,	dēlē-ve-ris,
3.	dēlē-vi-t.	dēlē-ve-rit.
Pl. 1.	dēlē-vi-mus,	dēlē-ve-rĭmus,
2.	dēlē-vi-stis,	dēlē-ve-rĭtis,
3.	dēlē-vē-runt.	dēlē-ve-rint.
	Pluperfect.	
Sing. 1.	dēlē-ve-ram, *I had destroyed.*	dēlē-vi-ssem, *I had, might have, destroyed.*
2.	dēlē-ve-rās,	dēlē-vi-ssēs,
3.	dēlē-ve-rat.	dēlē-vi-sset.
Pl. 1.	dēlē-ve-rāmus,	dēlē-vi-ssēmus,
2.	dēlē-ve-rātis,	dēlē-vi-ssētis,
3.	dēlē-ve-rant.	dēlē-vi-ssent.

Future Perfect.

Sing. 1. dēlē-ve-rŏ, *I shall have destroyed,*
2. dēlē-ve-ris, *thou wilt have destroyed,*
3. dēlē-ve-rit, *he will have destroyed.*

Pl. 1. dēlē-ve-rĭmus, *we shall have destroyed,*
2. dēlē-ve-rĭtis, *you will have destroyed,*
3. dēlē-ve-rint, *they will have destroyed.*

Infinitive.

Present. dēlē-re, *to destroy.*
Perfect. dēlē-vi-sse, *to have destroyed.*
Future. dēlē-tū-rum, -am, -um, esse, *to be about to destroy.*

Gerund.	Supine.
N. [dēlēre], *destroying, to destroy.*	
G. dēlendī, *of destroying.*	
D. dēlendō, *to, for destroying.*	
Ac. [dēlēre] (ad) dēlendum, *destroying, to destroy.*	1. dēlē-tum, *to destroy.*
Abl. dēlendō, *by destroying.*	2. dēlē-tū, *to destroy, in the destroying.*

Digitized by Google

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Passive.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	Present.	
Sing. 1.	dēle-o-r, *I am destroyed.*	dēle-a-r, *I be, may be, destroyed.*
2.	dēlē-ris,	dēle-ā-ris,
3.	dēlē-tur.	dēle-ā-tur.
Pl. 1.	dēlē-mur,	dēle-ā-mur,
2.	dēlē-minī,	dēle-ā-minī,
3.	dēle-ntur.	dēle-a-ntur.
	Imperfect.	
Sing. 1.	dēlē-bā-r, *I was destroyed.*	dēlē-re-r, *I were destroyed.*
2.	dēlē-bā-ris,	dēlē-rē-ris,
3.	dēlē-bā-tur.	dēlē-rē-tur.
Pl. 1.	dēlē-bā-mur,	dēlē-rē-mur,
2.	dēlē-bā-minī,	dēlē-rē-minī,
3.	dēlē-ba-ntur.	dēlē-re-ntur.
	Future.	
Sing. 1.	dēlē-bo-r, *I shall be destroyed,*	
2.	dēlē-be-ris, *thou wilt be destroyed,*	
3.	dēlē-bi-tur, *he will be destroyed.*	
Pl. 1.	dēlē-bi-mur, *we shall be destroyed,*	
2.	dēlē-bi-minī, *you will be destroyed,*	
3.	dēlē-bu-ntur, *they will be destroyed.*	

	IMPERATIVE.	
Sing. 1.	——	
2.	dēlē-re, *be thou destroyed,*	dēlē-tor, *thou shalt be destroyed.*
3.		dēlē-tor, *he shall be destroyed.*
Pl. 1.	——	
2.	dēlē-minī, *be ye destroyed,*	
3.		dēle-ntor, *they shall be destroyed.*

Digitized by Google

Second Conjugation.

Passive.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Perfect.	
Sing. 1. dēlētus, -a, -um, sum,	dēlētus, -a, -um, sim,
I have been destroyed, was destroyed.	*I have, may have, been destroyed.*
Pl. 1. dēlētī, -ae, -a, sumus,	dēlētī, -ae, -a, sīmus,
we have been destroyed, were destroyed.	*we have, may have, been destroyed.*
Pluperfect.	
Sing. 1. dēlētus, -a, -um, eram,	dēlētus, -a, -um, essem,
I had been destroyed.	*I had, might have, been destroyed.*
Pl. 1. dēlētī, -ae, -a, erāmus,	dēlētī, -ae, -a, essēmus,
we had been destroyed.	*we had, might have, been destroyed.*

Future Perfect.

Sing. 1. dēlētus, -a, -um, erŏ, *I shall have been destroyed.*

Pl. 1. dēlētī, -ae, -a, erimus, *we shall have been destroyed.*

Infinitive.

Pres. dēlĕ-rī, *to be destroyed.*

Perf. dēlĕ-tum, -am, -um, esse, *to have been destroyed.*

Fut. dēlē-tum īrī, *to be about to be destroyed.*

Participles.

Perfect: dēlē-tus, -a, -um, *destroyed.*

Gerundive: dēle-ndus, -a, -um, *one to be destroyed.*

Digitized by Google

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Like dēlēre, *to destroy*, are conjugated only, nēre, *to spin*, flēre, *to weep*, and the compounds of -plēre, *fill*, and olēre (-olescere), *grow*.

All other verbs of the Second Conjugation retain the characteristic E in the forms of the Present Stem, and drop it in the rest of the verbal forms.

In the Perfect, the ending vi becomes ui.

In the Supine, the connecting vowel I is used.

Active.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	Present.	
Sing. 1.	mone-ŏ, *I am reminding, do remind, remind.*	mone-a-m, *I be reminding, I may remind.*
	Imperfect.	
Sing. 1.	monē-ba-m, *I was reminding, I reminded.*	monē-re-m, *I were reminding, might remind.*
	Future.	
Sing. 1.	monē-bŏ, *I shall be reminding, shall remind.*	

IMPERATIVE. Sing. 2. monē, *remind thou*, monē-tŏ, *thou shalt remind.*
INFINITIVE. *Present:* monē-re, *to remind.*
PARTICIPLE. *Present:* monē-n-s, mone-nt-is, *reminding.*
Future: mon-i-tūrus, *about to remind.*

	Perfect.	
Sing. 1.	mon-uī, *I have reminded, did remind,*	mon-ue-rim *I have, may have, reminded,*
2.	mon-ui-stī, *thou hast reminded, didst remind,*	mon-ue-ris, *thou hast, mayst have, reminded.*
3.	mon-ui-t, *he has reminded, did remind.*	mon-ue-rit, *he have, may have, reminded.*
Pl. 1.	mon-ui-mus, *we have reminded, did remind,*	mon-ue-rĭmus, *we have, may have, reminded.*
2.	mon-ui-stis, *you have reminded, did remind,*	mon-ue-rĭtis, *you have, may have, reminded.*
3.	mon-uē-runt, *they have reminded, did remind.*	mon-ue-rint, *they have, may have, reminded.*
	Pluperfect.	
Sing. 1.	mon-ue-ram, *I had reminded, etc., etc., etc.*	mon-u-issem, *I had, might have, reminded, etc., etc., etc.*
	Future Perfect.	
Sing. 1.	mon-ue-rŏ, *I shall have reminded.*	

INFINITIVE. *Perfect:* mon-ui-sse, *to have reminded.*
SUPINE. 1. mon-i-tum, *to remind.* 2. mon-i-tū, *to remind, in the reminding.*
GERUND. mone-ndī, *of reminding, etc.*

Digitized by Google

Second Conjugation.

Five verbs of the Second Conjugation form their Supine without a connecting vowel, viz.:

docĕō,	docēre,	docuī,	doctum,	*to teach.*
teneo,	tenēre,	tenuī,	(tentum),	*to hold.*
cēnseo,	cēnsēre,	cēnsuī,	cēnsum,	*to think.*
misceo,	miscēre,	miscuī,	mixtum (mistum),	*to mix.*
torreo,	torrēre,	torruī,	tostum,	*to parch.*

Passive.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Present.	
Sing. 1. mone-o-r, *I am reminded, etc.*	mone-a-r, *I be, may be, reminded, etc.*
Imperfect.	
Sing. 1. monē-ba-r, *I was reminded.*	monē-re-r, *I might be reminded.*
Future.	
Sing. 1. monē-bo-r, *I shall be reminded.*	

Imperative. Sing. monē-re, *be thou reminded,* monē-tor, *thou shalt be reminded.*

Infinitive. *Present.* monē-rī, *to be reminded.*

Participle. *Perfect.* mon-i-tus, -a, -um, *reminded.*

Gerundive. mone-ndus, -a, -um, *to be reminded.*

Perfect.

Sing. 1. monitus, -a, -um, sum, *I have been, was, reminded.* monitus, -a, -um, sim, *I have, may have, been reminded.*

Pluperfect.

Sing. 1. monitus, -a, -um, eram, *I had been reminded.* monitus, -a, -um, essem, *I had, should have, been reminded.*

Future Perfect.

Sing. 1. monitus, -a, -um, erŏ, *I shall have been reminded.*

Infinitive. *Perfect:* monitum, -am, -um, esse, *to have been reminded.*

Future: monitum īrī, *to be about to be reminded.*

Digitized by Google

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Active.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	Present.	
Sing. 1.	em-o, *I buy.*	em-a-m, *I be buying, I may buy.*
2.	em-i-s,	em-ā-s,
3.	em-i-t.	em-a-t.
Pl. 1.	em-i-mus,	em-ā-mus,
2.	em-i-tis,	em-ā-tis,
3.	em-u-nt.	em-a-nt.
	Imperfect.	
Sing. 1.	em-ē-ba-m, *I was buying.*	em-e-re-m, *I were buying, I might buy.*
2.	em-ē-bā-s,	em-e-rē-s,
3.	em-ē-ba-t.	em-e-re-t.
Pl. 1.	em-ē-bā-mus,	em-e-rē-mus,
2.	em-ē-bā-tis,	em-e-rē-tis,
3.	em-ē-ba-nt.	em-e-re-nt.
	Future.	
Sing. 1.	em-a-m, *I shall be buying, I shall buy,*	
2.	em-ē-s, *thou wilt be buying, thou wilt buy,*	
3.	em-e-t, *he will be buying, he will buy.*	
Pl. 1.	em-ē-mus, *we shall be buying, we shall buy,*	
2.	em-ē-tis, *you will be buying, you will buy,*	
3.	em-e-nt, *they will be buying, they will buy.*	

	IMPERATIVE.	
Sing. 1.	——	
2.	em-e, *buy thou,*	em-i-tŏ, *thou shalt buy,*
3.		em-i-tŏ, *he shall buy.*
Pl. 1.	——	
2.	em-i-te, *buy ye,*	em-i-tōte, *ye shall buy,*
3.		em-u-ntŏ, *they shall buy.*

PARTICIPLE.

Present: N. em-ē-n-s, G. em-e-nt-is, *buying.*
Future: em-tūrus, -a, -um, *about to buy.*

Digitized by Google

Third Conjugation.

Active.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	Perfect.	
Sing. 1.	ĕm-ī, *I have bought, I bought.*	ĕm-e-rim, *I have, may have, bought.*
2.	ĕm-ī-stī,	ĕm-e-ris,
3.	ĕm-ī-t.	ĕm-e-rit.
Pl. 1.	ĕm-ī-mus,	ĕm-e-rĭmus,
2.	ĕm-ī-stis,	ĕm-e-rĭtis,
3.	ĕm-ĕ-runt.	ĕm-e-rint.
	Pluperfect.	
Sing. 1.	ĕm-e-ram, *I had bought.*	ĕm-ī-ssem, *I had, might have, bought.*
2.	ĕm-e-rās,	ĕm-ī-ssēs,
3.	ĕm-e-rat.	ĕm-ī-sset.
Pl. 1.	ĕm-e-rāmus,	ĕm-ī-ssēmus,
2.	ĕm-e-rātis,	ĕm-ī-ssētis,
3.	ĕm-e-rant.	ĕm-ī-ssent.

Future Perfect.

Sing. 1. ĕm-e-ro, *I shall have bought,*
2. ĕm-e-ris, *thou wilt have bought,*
3. ĕm-e-rit, *he will have bought.*

Pl. 1. ĕm-e-rĭmus, *we shall have bought,*
2. ĕm-e-rĭtis, *you will have bought,*
3. ĕm-e-rint, *they will have bought.*

Infinitive.

Pres. em-e-re, *to buy.*
Perf. ĕm-ī-sse, *to have bought.*
Fut. em-tūrum, -am, -um, esse, *to be about to buy.*

Gerund.		Supine.
N.	[emere], *to buy, buying.*	
G.	emendī, *of buying.*	
D.	emendō, *to, for buying.*	
Ac.	[emere] (ad) emendum, *to buy.*	1. em-tum, *to buy.*
Abl.	emendō, *by buying.*	2. em-tū, *to buy, in the buying.*

Digitized by Google

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Passive.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	Present.	
Sing. 1.	em-o-r, *I am bought.*	em-a-r, *I be, may be, bought.*
2.	em-e-ris,	em-ā-ris,
3.	em-i-tur.	em-ā-tur.
Pl. 1.	em-i-mur,	em-ā-mur,
2.	em-i-minī,	em-ā-minī,
3.	em-u-ntur.	em-a-ntur.
	Imperfect.	
Sing. 1.	em-ē-ba-r, *I was bought.*	em-e-re-r, *I were, might be, bought.*
2.	em-ē-bā-ris,	em-e-rē-ris,
3.	em-ē-bā-tur.	em-e-rē-tur.
Pl. 1.	em-ē-bā-mur,	em-e-rē-mur,
2.	em-ē-bā-minī,	em-e-rē-minī,
3.	em-ē-ba-ntur.	em-e-re-ntur.

Future.

Sing. 1. em-a-r, *I shall be bought,*
2. em-ē-ris, *thou wilt be bought,*
3. em-ē-tur, *he will be bought.*
Pl. 1. em-ē-mur, *we shall be bought,*
2. em-ē-minī, *you will be bought,*
3. em-e-ntur, *they will be bought.*

	IMPERATIVE.	
Sing. 1.		
2.	em-ere, *be thou bought,*	em-i-tor, *thou shalt be bought*
3.		em-i-tor, *he shall be bought.*
Pl. 1.		
2.	em-i-minī, *be ye bought.*	
3.		em-u-ntor, *they shall be bought.*

Digitized by Google

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Passive.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Perfect.	
Sing. 1. emtus, -a, -um, sum, *I have been bought, was bought.*	emtus, -a, -um, sim, *I have, may have, been bought.*
Pl. 1. emtī, -ae, -a, sumus, *we have been bought, were bought.*	emtī, -ae, -a, sīmus, *we have, may have, been bought.*
Pluperfect.	
Sing. 1. emtus, -a, -um, eram, *I had been bought.*	emtus, -a, -um, essem, *I had, might have, been bought.*
Pl. 1. emtī, -ae, -a, erāmus, *we had been bought.*	emtī, -ae, -a, essēmus, *we had, might have, been bought.*

Future Perfect.

Sing. 1. emtus, -a, -um, erŏ, *I shall have been bought.*

Pl. 1. emtī, -ae, -a, erimus, *we shall have been bought.*

INFINITIVE.

res. em-ī, *to be bought.*
Perf. emtum, -am, -um, esse, *to have been bought.*
Fut. em-tum īrī, *to be about to be bought.*

PARTICIPLE.

Perfect: emtus, -a, -um, *bought.*
Gerundive: em-e-ndus, -a, -um, *to be bought.*

Digitized by Google

Fourth Conjugation.

The stems in i follow in several forms the Third Conjugation, and take the same connecting vowels.

Active.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	Present.	
Sing. 1.	audi-ŏ, *I hear.*	audi-*a*-m, *I be hearing, I may hear.*
2.	audī-s,	audi-*ā*-s,
3.	audi-t.	audi-*a*-t.
Pl. 1.	audī-mus,	audi-*ā*-mus,
2.	audī-tis,	audi-*ā*-tis,
3.	audi-*u*-nt.	audi-*a*-nt.
	Imperfect.	
Sing. 1.	audi-*ē*-ba-m, *I was hearing.*	audī-re-m, *I were hearing, I might hear.*
2.	audi-*ē*-bā-s,	audī-rē-s,
3.	audi-*ē*-ba-t.	audī-re-t.
Pl. 1.	audi-*ē*-bā-mus,	audī-rē-mus,
2.	audi-*ē*-bā-tis,	audī-rē-tis,
3.	audi-*ē*-ba-nt.	audī-re-nt.

Future.

Sing. 1. audi-*a*-m, *I shall hear,*
2. audi-*ē*-s, *thou wilt hear,*
3. audi-*e*-t, *he will hear.*

Pl. 1. audi-*ē*-mus, *we shall hear,*
2. audi-*ē*-tis, *ye will hear,*
3. audi-*e*-nt, *they will hear.*

Imperative.

Sing. 1.	—	
2.	audī, *hear thou,*	audī-tŏ, *thou shalt hear,*
3.		audī-tŏ, *he shall hear.*
Pl. 1.	—	
2.	audī-te, *hear ye,*	audī-tōte, *ye shall hear.*
3.		audi-*u*-ntŏ, *they shall hear.*

Participle.

Present: N. audi-*ē*-n-s, G. audi-*e*-nt-is, *hearing.*

Future: audī-tū-rus, -a, -um, *about to hear.*

Digitized by Google

Fourth Conjugation.

Active.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	Perfect.	
Sing. 1.	audī-vī, *I have heard, I heard.*	audī-ve-rim, *I have, may have, heard.*
2.	audī-vi-stī,	audī-ve-ris,
3.	audī-vi-t.	audī-ve-rit.
Pl. 1.	audī-vi-mus,	audī-ve-rĭmus,
2.	audī-vi-stis,	audī-ve-rĭtis,
3.	audī-vē-runt.	audī-ve-rint.
	Pluperfect.	
Sing. 1.	audī-ve-ram, *I had heard.*	audī-vi-ssem, *I had, might have, heard.*
2.	audī-ve-rās,	audī-vi-sses,
3.	audī-ve-rat.	audī-vi-sset.
Pl. 1.	audī-ve-rāmus,	audī-vi-ssēmus,
2.	audī-ve-rātis,	audī-vi-ssētis,
3.	audī-ve-rant.	audī-vi-ssent.

Future Perfect.

Sing. 1. audī-ve-rŏ, *I shall have heard,*
2. audī-ve-ris, *thou wilt have heard,*
3. audī-ve-rit, *he will have heard.*

Pl. 1. audī-ve-rĭmus, *we shall have heard,*
2. audī-ve-rĭtis, *you will have heard,*
3. audī-ve-rint, *they will have heard.*

Infinitive.

Present: audī-re, *to hear.*

Perfect: audī-vi-sse, *to have heard.*

Future: audī-tūrum, -am, -um, esse, *to be about to hear.*

	Gerund.	Supine.
N.	[audīre], *hearing, to hear.*	
G.	audiendī, *of hearing.*	
D.	audiendō, *to, for hearing.*	
Ac.	[audīrē] (ad) audiendum, *hearing, to hear.*	1. audī-tum, *to hear.*
Abl.	audiendō, *by hearing.*	2. audī-tū, *to hear, in the hearing.*

Digitized by Google

Fourth Conjugation.

Passive.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	Present.	
Sing. 1.	audi-o-r, *I am heard.*	audi-*a*-r, *I be, may be, heard.*
2.	audī-ris,	audi-*ā*-ris,
3.	audī-tur.	audi-*ā*-tur.
Pl. 1.	audī-mur,	audi-*ā*-mur,
2.	audī-minī,	audi-*ā*-minī,
3.	audi-*u*-ntur.	audi-*a*-ntur.
	Imperfect.	
Sing. 1.	audi-*ē*-ba-r, *I was heard.*	audī-re-r, *I were, might be, heard.*
2.	audi-*ē*-bā-ris,	audī-rē-ris,
3.	audi-*ē*-bā-tur.	audī-rē-tur.
Pl. 1.	audi-*ē*-bā-mur,	audī-rē-mur,
2.	audi-*ē*-bā-minī,	audī-rē-minī,
3.	audi-*ē*-ba-ntur.	audī-re-ntur.

Future.

Sing. 1. audi-*a*-r, *I shall be heard,*
2. audi-*ē*-ris, *thou will be heard,*
3. audi-*ē*-tur, *he will be heard.*

Pl. 1. audi-*ē*-mur, *we shall be heard,*
2. audī-*ē*-minī, *you will be heard,*
3. audi-*e*-ntur, *they will be heard.*

Imperative.

Sing. 1. ——
2. audī-re, *be thou heard,* audī-tor, *thou shalt be heard,*
3. audī-tor, *he shall be heard.*

Pl. 1. ——
2. audī-minī, *be ye heard,*
3. audi-u-ntor, *they shall be heard.*

Digitized by Google

Fourth Conjugation.

Passive.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Perfect.	
Sing. 1. audītus, -a, -um, sum, *I have been heard, was heard.*	audītus, -a, -um, sim, *I have, may have, been heard.*
Pl. 1. audītī, -ae, -a, sumus, *we have been heard, were heard.*	audītī, -ae, -a, sīmus, *we have, may have, been heard.*
Pluperfect.	
Sing. 1. audī-tus, -a, -um, eram, *I had been heard.*	audītus, -a, -um, essem, *I had, might have, been heard.*
Pl. 1. audītī, -ae, -a, erāmus, *we had been heard.*	audītī, -ae, -a, essēmus, *we had, might have, been heard.*

Future Perfect.

Sing. 1. audītus, -a, -um, erŏ, *I shall have been heard.*

Pl. 1. audītī, -ae, -a, erimus, *we shall have been heard.*

Infinitive.

Present: audī-rī, *to be heard.*

Perfect: audī-tum, -am, -um, esse, *to have been heard.*

Future: audī-tum īrī, *to be about to be heard.*

Participle.

Perfect: audī-tus, -a, -um, *heard.*

Gerundive: audi-e-ndus, -a, -um, *about to be heard.*

Digitized by Google

Appendix to the Third Conjugation.

Several verbs of the Third Conjugation in the Present-stem add i to the stem before a, o, u, or ĕ, and before ĕm, ĕn, and ĕt.

Active.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	Present.	
Sing. 1.	capi-ŏ, *I take.*	capi-am, *I be taking, I may take.*
2.	cap-is,	capi-ās,
3.	cap-it.	capi-at.
Pl. 1.	cap-imus,	capi-āmus,
2.	cap-itis,	capi-ātis,
3.	capi-unt.	capi-ant.
	Imperfect.	
Sing. 1.	capi-ēbam, *I was taking.*	cap-erem, *I were taking, I might take.*
2.	capi-ēbās,	cap-erēs,
3.	capi-ēbat.	cap-eret.
Pl. 1.	capi-ēbāmus,	cap-erēmus,
2.	capi-ēbātis,	cap-erētis,
3.	capi-ēbant.	cap-erent.
	Future.	
Sing. 1.	capi-em, *I shall take, etc.*	
2.	capi-ēs, *thou wilt take,*	
3.	capi-et, *he will take.*	
Pl. 1.	capi-ēmus, *we shall take,*	
2.	capi-ētis, *you will take,*	
3.	capi-ent, *they will take.*	

Imperative.	Infinitive.
Sing. 2. cap-e, *take thou,*	*Pres.* cap-ere, *to take.*
cap-itŏ, *thou shalt take,*	Participle.
3. cap-itŏ, *he shall take.*	*Pres.* capi-ĕns, *taking.*
Pl. 2. cap-i-te, *take ye,*	Gerund.
cap-itōte, *ye shall take,*	G. capi-endi, *of taking, etc.*
3. capi-untŏ, *they shall take.*	

Digitized by Google

Passive.

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	Present.	
Sing. 1.	capĭ-or, *I am taken.*	capĭ-ar, *I be, may be, taken.*
2.	cap-eris,	capĭ-āris,
3.	cap-itur.	capĭ-ātur.
Pl. 1.	cap-imur,	capĭ-āmur,
2.	cap-iminĭ,	capĭ-āminĭ,
3.	capĭ-untur.	capĭ-antur.
	Imperfect.	
Sing. 1.	capĭ-ēbar, *I was taken.*	cap-erer, *I were, might be, taken.*
2.	capĭ-ēbāris,	cap-erēris,
3.	capĭ-ēbātur.	cap-erētur.
Pl. 1.	capĭ-ēbāmur,	cap-erēmur,
2.	capĭ-ēbāminĭ,	cap-erēminĭ,
3.	capĭ-ēbantur.	cap-erentur.

Future.

Sing. 1. capĭ-ar, *I shall be taken,*
2. capĭ-ēris, *thou wilt be taken,*
3. capĭ-ētur, *he will be taken.*

Pl. 1. capĭ-ēmur, *we shall be taken,*
2. capĭ-ēminĭ, *you will be taken,*
3. capĭ-entur, *they will be taken.*

IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.
Sing. 2. cap-ere, *be thou taken,*	*Pres.* cap-ī, *to be taken.*
cap-itor, *thou shalt be taken,*	
3. cap-itor, *he shall be taken.*	
Pl. 2. cap-iminĭ, *be ye taken, ye shall be taken,*	GERUND.
3. capĭ-untor, *they shall be taken.*	capĭ-endus, -a, -um, *to be taken.*

Digitized by Google

Deponent of the First Conjugation.

Active.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	Present.	
Sing. 1.	horto-r, *I exhort.*	horte-r, *I be exhorting, I may exhort.*
2.	hortā-ris,	hortē-ris,
3.	hortā-tur.	hortē-tur.
Pl. 1.	hortā-mur,	hortē-mur,
2.	hortā-minī,	hortē-minī,
3.	horta-ntur.	horte-ntur.
	Imperfect.	
Sing. 1.	hortā-ba-r, *I was exhorting.*	hortā-re-r, *I were exhorting, I might exhort.*
2.	hortā-bā-ris,	hortā-rē-ris,
3.	hortā-bā-tur.	hortā-rē-tur.
Pl. 1.	hortā-bā-mur,	hortā-rē-mur,
2.	hortā-bā-minī,	hortā-rē-minī,
3.	hortā-ba-ntur.	hortā-re-ntur.

Future.

Sing. 1. hortā-bo-r, *I shall exhort,*
2. hortā-be-ris, *thou wilt exhort,*
3. hortā-bi-tur, *he will exhort.*

Pl. 1. hortā-bi-mur, *we shall exhort,*
2. hortā-bi-minī, *you will exhort,*
3. hortā-bu-ntur, *they will exhort.*

	Imperative.	Active Forms.
Sing. 2.	hortāre, *exhort thou,*	Part. *Pres.* hortā-ns, *exhorting.*
	hortā-tor, *thou shalt exhort,*	*Fut.* hortātūrus, -a, -um, *about to exhort.*
3.	hortā-tor, *he shall exhort.*	Inf. *Fut.* hortātūrum, -am, -um, esse, *to be about to exhort.*
Pl. 2.	hortā-minī, *exhort ye, ye shall exhort,*	Passive in Meaning.
3.	horta-ntor, *they shall exhort.*	Gerund. hortandus, -a, -um, *one to be exhorted.*

Digitized by Google

Deponent of the First Conjugation.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	Perfect.	
Sing. 1.	hortātus, -a, -um, sum, *I have exhorted, I exhorted.*	hortātus, -a, -um, sim, *I have, may have, exhorted.*
2.	hortātus es,	
3.	hortātus est.	
Pl. 1.	hortātī, -ae, -a, sumus,	hortātī, -ae, -a, sīmus.
2.	hortātī estis,	
3.	hortātī sunt.	
	Pluperfect.	
Sing. 1.	hortātus, -a, -um, eram, *I had exhorted.*	hortātus, -a, -um, essem, *I had, might have, exhorted.*
Pl. 1.	hortātī, -ae, -a, erāmus.	hortātī, -ae, -a, essēmus.
	Future Perfect.	
Sing. 1.	hortātus, -a, -um, erŏ, *I shall have exhorted.*	
Pl. 1.	hortātī, -ae, -a, erimus, *we shall have exhorted.*	

Infinitive.	Participle.
Pres. hortā-rī, *to exhort.*	*Perfect:* hortātus, -a -um, *having exhorted.*
Perf. hortātum, -am, -um, esse, *to have exhorted.*	

Supine. 1. hortātum, *to exhort, for exhorting.* 2. hortātū, *to exhort, in the exhorting.*

Gerund. [hortārī], *to exhort, exhorting.* G. hortandī, *of exhorting, etc., etc.*

Digitized by Google

Deponent of the Second Conjugation.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	Present.	
Sing. 1.	vere-o-r, *I fear.*	vere-a-r, *I be fearing, I may fear.*
2.	verē-ris,	vere-ā-ris,
3.	verē-tur.	vere-ā-tur.
Pl. 1.	verē-mur,	vere-ā-mur,
2.	verē-minī,	vere-ā-minī,
3.	vere-ntur.	vere-a-ntur.
	Imperfect.	
Sing. 1.	verē-ba-r, *I was fearing.*	verē-re-r, *I were fearing, I might fear.*
2.	verē-bā-ris,	verē-rē-ris,
3.	verē-bā-tur.	verē-rē-tur.
Pl. 1.	verē-bā-mur,	verē-rē-mur,
2.	verē-bā-minī,	verē-rē-minī
3.	verē-ba-ntur.	verē-re-ntur.
	Future.	
Sing. 1.	verē-bo-r, *I shall fear,*	
2.	verē-be-ris, *thou wilt fear,*	
3.	verē-bi-tur, *he will fear.*	
Pl. 1.	verē-bi-mur, *we shall fear,*	
2.	verē-bi-minī, *you will fear,*	
3.	verē-bu-ntur, *they will fear.*	

	Imperative.	Active Forms.
Sing. 2.	verē-re, *fear thou,*	Part. *Pres.* verē-ns, *fearing.*
	verē-tor, *thou shalt fear,*	*Fut.* ver-i-tūrus, -a, -um, *about to fear.*
3.	verē-tor, *he shall fear.*	Inf. *Fut.* veritūrum, -am, -um, esse, *to be about to fear.*
Pl. 2.	verē-minī, *fear ye, ye shall fear,*	Passive in Meaning.
3.	vere-ntor, *they shall fear.*	Gerund. vere-ndus, -a, -um, *one to be feared.*

Digitized by Google

Deponent of the Second Conjugation.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Perfect.	
Sing. 1. ver-ĭ-tus, -a, -um, sum, *I have feared, I feared.*	veritus, -a, -um, sim, *I have, may have, feared.*
Pl. 1. veritī, -ae, -a, sumus.	veritī, -ae, -a, sīmus.
Pluperfect.	
Sing. 1. veritus, -a, -um, eram, *I had feared.*	veritus, -a, -um, essem, *I had, might have, feared.*
Pl. 1. veritī, -ae, -a, erāmus.	veritī, -ae, -a, essēmus.
Future Perfect.	
Sing. 1. veritus, -a, -um, erŏ, *I shall have feared.*	
Pl. 1. veritī, -ae, -a, erimus.	

Infinitive.	Participle.
Pres. verē-rī, *to fear.*	*Perfect:* ver-ĭ-tus, -a, -um.
Perf. veritum, -am, -um, esse, *to have feared.*	

Supine. 1. ver-ĭ-tum, *to fear, for fearing.* 2. ver-ĭ-tū, *to fear, in fearing.*

Gerund. [vereri], *to fear, fearing.* G. vere-ndī, *of fearing, etc.*

Digitized by Google

Deponent of the Third Conjugation.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	Present.	
Sing. 1.	loqu-o-r, *I speak.*	loqu-a-r, *I be speaking, I may speak.*
2.	loqu-e-ris,	loqu-ā-ris,
3.	loqu-i-tur.	loqu-ā-tur.
Pl. 1.	loqu-i-mur,	loqu-ā-mur,
2.	loqu-i-minĭ,	loqu-ā-minĭ,
3.	loqu-u-ntur.	loqu-a-ntur.
	Imperfect.	
Sing. 1.	loqu-ē-ba-r, *I was speaking.*	loqu-e-re-r, *I were speaking, I might speak.*
2.	loqu-ē-bā-ris,	loqu-e-rē-ris,
3.	loqu-ē-bātur.	loqu-e-rē-tur.
Pl. 1.	loqu-ē-bā-mur,	loqu-e-rē-mur,
2.	loqu-ē-bā-minĭ,	loqu-e-rē-minĭ,
3.	loqu-ē-ba-ntur.	loqu-e-re-ntur.
	Future.	
Sing. 1.	loqu-a-r, *I shall speak,*	
2.	loqu-ē-ris, *thou wilt speak,*	
3.	loqu-ē-tur, *he will speak.*	
Pl. 1.	loqu-ē-mur, *we shall speak,*	
2.	loqu-ē-minĭ, *you will speak,*	
3.	loqu-e-ntur, *they will speak.*	

	Imperative.	Active Forms.
Sing. 2.	loqu-e-re, *speak thou,*	Part. *Pres.* loqu-ē-ns, *speaking.*
	loqu-i-tor, *thou shalt speak,*	*Fut.* locū-tūrus, -a, -um, *about to speak.*
3.	loqu-i-tor, *he shall speak.*	Inf. *Fut.* locūtūrum, -am, -um, esse, *to be about to speak.*
Pl. 2.	loqu-i-minĭ, *speak ye,*	Passive in Meaning.
3.	loqu-u-ntor, *they shall speak.*	Gerund. loqu-e-ndus, -a, -um, *to be spoken.*

Digitized by Google

Deponent of the Third Conjugation.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	Perfect.	
Sing. 1.	locū-tus, -a, -um, sum, *I have spoken, I spoke.*	locūtus, -a, -um, sim, *I have, may have, spoken.*
Pl. 1.	locūtī, -ae, -a, sumus.	locūtī, -ae, -a, sīmus.
	Pluperfect.	
Sing. 1.	locūtus, -a, -um, eram, *I had spoken.*	locūtus, -a, -um, essem, *I had, might have, spoken.*
Pl. 1.	locūtī, -ae, -a, erāmus.	locūtī, -ae, -a, essĕmus.
	Future Perfect.	
Sing. 1.	locūtus, -a, -um, erŏ, *I shall have spoken.*	
Pl. 1.	locūtī, -ae, -a, erimus, *we shall have spoken.*	

Infinitive.	Participle.
Pres. loquī, *to speak.*	*Perfect.* locū-tus, -a, -um, *having spoken.*
Perf. locūtum, -am, -um, esse, *to have spoken.*	

Supine. 1. locū-tum, *to speak, for speaking.* 2. locū-tū, *to speak, in speaking,* ·ī], *to speak, speaking.* G. loqu-e-ndī, *of speaking etc.*

Gerund. [loqu-

Digitized by Google

Deponent of the Fourth Conjugation.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	Present.	
Sing. 1.	menti-o-r, *I lie.*	menti-**a**-r, *I be lying, I may lie.*
2.	mentī-ris,	menti-**ā**-ris,
3.	menti-tur.	menti-**ā**-tur.
Pl. 1.	mentī-mur,	menti-**ā**-mur,
2.	mentī-minī,	menti-**ā**-minī,
3.	menti-**u**-ntur.	menti-**ā**-ntur.
	Imperfect.	
Sing. 1.	menti-**ē**-ba-r, *I was lying.*	mentī-re-r, *I were lying, I might lie.*
2.	menti-**ē**-bā-ris,	mentī-rē-ris,
3.	menti-**ē**-bā-tur.	mentī-rē-tur.
Pl. 1.	menti-**ē**-bā-mur,	mentī-rē-mur,
2.	menti-**ē**-bā-minī,	mentī-rē-minī,
3.	menti-**ē**-bā-ntur.	mentī-re-ntur.
	Future.	
Sing. 1.	menti-a-r, *I shall lie.*	
2.	menti-ē-ris,	
3.	menti-ē-tur.	
Pl. 1.	menti-ē-mur,	
2.	menti-ē-minī,	
3.	menti-e-ntur.	

	Imperative.	Active Forms.
Sing. 2.	mentī-re, *lie thou,*	Part. *Pres.* menti-**ē**-ns, *lying.*
	mentī-tor, *thou shalt lie,*	*Perf.* mentī-tūrus, -a, -um, *about to lie.*
3.	mentī-tor, *he shall lie.*	Inf. *Fut.* mentītūrum, -am, -um, esse, *to be about to lie.*
Pl. 2.	mentī-minī, *lie ye,*	Passive.
3.	menti-**u**-ntor, *they shall lie.*	Gerund. menti-**ē**-ndus, -a, -um.

Digitized by Google

Deponent of the Fourth Conjugation.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	Perfect.	
Sing. 1.	mentī-tus, -a, -um, sum, *I have lied, I lied.*	mentītus, -a, -um, sim, *I have, may have, lied.*
Pl. 1.	mentītī, -ae, -a, sumus.	mentītī, -ae, -a, sīmus.
	Pluperfect.	
Sing. 1.	mentītus, -a, -um, eram, *I had lied.*	mentītus, -a, -um, essem, *I had, might have, lied.*
Pl. 1.	mentītī, -ae, -a, erāmus.	mentītī, -ae, -a, essēmus.
	Future Perfect.	
Sing. 1.	mentītus, -a, -um, erŏ, *I shall have lied.*	
Pl. 1.	mentītī, -ae, -a, erimus, *we shall have lied.*	

Infinitive.	Participle.
Pres. mentī-rī, *to lie.*	*Perfect:* mentī-tus, -a, -um, *having lied.*

Perf. mentītum, -am, -um, esse, *to have lied.*

Supine. 1. mentī-tum, *to lie, for lying.* 2. mentī-tū, *to lie, in lying.*

Gerund. [mentīrī], *to lie, lying.* G. menti-ē-ndī, *of lying, etc.*

Digitized by Google

Periphrastic Conjugation.

Active.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Pres.	amātūrus, -a, -um, sum, *I am about to love.*	amātūrus, -a, -um, sim, *I be about to love.*
Imperf.	amātūrus eram, *I was about to love.*	amātūrus essem, *I were about to love.*
Fut.	amātūrus erŏ, *I shall be about to love.*	
Perf.	amātūrus fuī, *I have been, was, about to love.*	amaturus fuerim, *I have, may have, been about to love.*
Pluperf.	amātūrus fueram, *I had been about to love.*	amātūrus fuissem, *I had, might have, been about to love.*

Fut. Perf. amātūrus fuero.

Infinitive *Present:* amātūrum, -am, -um, esse, *to be about to love.*
Perfect: amātūrum fuisse, *to have been about to love.*

Passive.

Pres.	amandus, -a, -um, sum, *I have to be loved.*	amandus, -a, -um, sim, *I have to be loved.*
Imperf.	amandus eram, *I had to be loved.*	amandus essem, forem, *I had to be loved.*
Fut.	amandus erŏ, *I shall have to be loved.*	
Perf.	amandus fuī, *I have had to be loved.*	amandus fuerim, *I have had to be loved.*
Pluperf.	amandus fueram, *I had had to be loved.*	amandus fuissem, *I should have had to be loved.*

Infinitive *Present:* amandum, -am, -um, esse, *to have to be loved.*
Perfect: amandum fuisse, *to have had to be loved.*

Digitized by Google

Abbreviations occurring in certain Forms of the Verb.

1. The Perfects in -āvī, -ēvī, -īvī, drop the V before S or R, and contract the vowels throughout, except those in -īvī, which admit the contraction only before S.

		Perfect.		
Sing.	1.	—	—	—
	2.	amāvistī, amâstī, *thou hast loved, etc.*	dēlēvistī, dēlêstī, *thou hast destroyed, etc.*	audīvistī, audistī, *thou hast heard, etc.*
	3.	—	—	—
Pl.	1.	—	—	—
	2.	amāvistis, amâstis,	dēlēvistis, dēlêstis,	audīvistis, audistis.
	3.	amāvērunt, amârunt.	dēlēvērunt, dēlêrunt.	audīvērunt, audierunt.
Subj.		amāverim, amârim.	dēlēverim, dēlêrim.	audīverim, audierim.
			Pluperfect.	
Ind.		amāveram, amâram.	dēlēveram, dēlêram.	audīveram, audieram.
Subj.		amāvissem, amâssem.	dēlēvissem, dēlêssem.	audīvissem, audissem.
			Future Perfect.	
		amāvero, amâro.	dēlēvero, dēlêro.	audīvero, audiero.
			Infinitive Perfect.	
		amāvisse, amâsse.	dēlēvisse, dēlêsse,	audīvisse, audisse.

In like manner, nōvi, *I know*, and mōvi, *I have moved*, are, in their compounds especially, contracted:

Sing. 2. nôstī. Pl. 2. nôstis, 3. nôrunt. Subj. nôrim, etc.

Pluperfect. nôram. Subj. nôssem, etc. Inf. nôsse. But the Future is nōvero, uncontracted.

Remark.—In petere, *to fall upon*, dēsinere, *to give over*, and in the compounds of īre, *to go*, the V of the Perfect is dropped in 1 and 2 Pers. Sing., and in 1 Pers. Pl., but no contraction ensues, *e. g.*:

petīvi, petiī; petīvit, petiit. So dēsīvī, dēsiī; dēsīvit, dēsiit, etc.
And rediī, rediit, from redīre, *to go back*.

2. In 3 Pl. Perf. Act., instead of the ending -ērunt, -ēre is often found, but never in the contracted Perfects mentioned above: amāvēre, *they have loved;* dēlēvēre, *they have destroyed;* ēmēre, *they have bought;* audīvēre, *they have heard.* But amāre, for amârunt, is not admissible.

3. Instead of -ris in 2 Sing. Pass. we find often -re:

amābāre, *thou wast loved;* amārēre, *thou mightest be loved;* amābere, *thou wilt be loved.*

This is rare, however, in Present Indicative.

4. The Imperatives of dīcere, *to say*, dūcere, *to lead*, facere, *to make*, and ferre, *to bear*, are dīc, dūc, fac, fer. These shortened forms occur in their respective compounds, except in those compounds of facio which change a into i, *e. g.:* perfice, *achieve thou* (p. 100).

5. The Gerund and Gerundive of the 3d and 4th Conjugations, instead of -endi, -endus, etc., may, especially after I, end in -undī and -undus, *e.g.:*

faciundus, *to be done;* gerundus, *to be carried.*

Digitized by Google

The Stem.

I. *In the Present.*

The stem of many verbs appears in the Present, not in the pure, but in a strengthened form.

1. The Liquids L and R may be doubled: PEL, pello, *I drive;* CUR, curro, *I run.*

So T is doubled in MIT, mitto, *I send.*

2. The stem may be strengthened by N:

a. in vowel-stems: SI, sino, *I let;* LI, lino, *I besmear.*

b. after the characteristic R or M: CER, cerno, *I sift, separate;* TEM, temno, *I scorn.*

c. before the characteristic mute: VIN, vinco, *I conquer;* FRAG, frango, *I break;* FUD, fundo, *I pour.*

Before a P-mute N becomes M: RUP, rumpo, *I rend;* CUM, cumbo, *I lie down.*

3. The stem strengthened by T: FLEC, flecto, *I bend.*

4. The stem strengthened by SC or ISC:

IRA, īrascor,	CRE, crē-sco,	DORMI, obdormī-scor,
I am in a rage.	*I groan.*	*I fall asleep.*
AP, ap-iscor,	FAC, profic-iscor,	NAC, nanc-iscor,
I reach.	*I set out.*	*I get.*

5. Reduplication in the Present stem: GEN, gi-gno, *I beget* (for GIGENO); STA, si-sto, sistere, *to set, stand.* Compare stāre, *to stand.*

6. U suffixed to the stem: TING, tinguo, *I soak.*

7. I suffixed to the stem: CAP, capio, *I take.* See pp. 67, 68.

8. Many consonant-stems assume in the Present the characteristic of one of the three vowel-conjugations:

VID, vide-o, *I see,* vidēre. VEN, veni-o, *I come,* venīre.

II. *In the Perfect.*

The Perfect is formed from the pure stem. For exceptions see change of conjugation.

1. The vowel-stems take -vī: amā-vī, *I have loved;* dēlē-vī, *I have destroyed;* audī-vī, *I have heard.*

However, most verbs of the 2d Conjugation drop the vowel-characteristic, and change -vī into -uī. See p. 57.

Digitized by Google

2. Consonant-stems with *short* stem-syllable take ī in the Perfect, before which the stem-syllable becomes long, and ă is changed into ē.

lego, *I read*, lēg-ī. vĭd-eo, *I see*, vīd-ī. fod-io, *I dig*, fōd-ī. fug-io, *I flee*, fūg-ī. ag-o, *I do*, ēgī.

3. Consonant-stems with *long* stem-syllable take sī in the Perfect:

rēp-o, *I creep*, rēp-sī. scrībo, *I write*, scrīp-sī. dīc-o, *I say*, dīxī=dīc-sī.
aug-eo, *I increase*, auxī=aug-sī. rād-o, *I scrape*, rāsī=radsī.

Even when the stem-syllable is *long by position* only:

carp-o, *I pluck*, carp-sī. ping-o, *I paint*, pinxī=ping-sī.

Exceptions are stems in -nd, which take ī in the Perfect: dēfend-o, *I strike (ward) off*, dēfend-ī; perhaps because the stems in -nd formed originally a *reduplicated perfect*, *e. g.:*

mand-o, *I chew*, mandīdī; so fefendī, *I have struck.*

4. The stems in U have i in the Perfect: acu-o, *I sharpen*, acu-ī.

5. Several verbs reduplicate in the Perfect, *i. e.*, repeat the initial consonant of the stem with the vowel following it:

pend-o, *I weigh*, pe-pend-ī. posc-o, *I demand*, po-posc-ī. curr-o, *I run*, cu-curr-ī.

When a change of vowel occurs in the stem, e is always found in the syllable of reduplication:

cad-o, *I fall*, ce-cid-ī. caed-o, *I fell*, ce-cīd-ī.
parc-o, *I spare*, pe-perc-ī. pel-lo, *I push*, pe-pul-ī.

These reduplicated Perfects are always formed in -i. They do not lengthen the stem-vowel, but change a into i, ae into ī, a before two consonants into e, and e and o into u before l.

III. The Supine.

The Supine is formed from the *pure stem.*

1. Vowel-stems and stems in U take -tum in the Supine:

am-o, *I love*, amā-tum. dēle-o, *I destroy*, dēlē-tum.
audi-o, *I hear*, audī-tum. tribu-o, *I allot*, tribū-tum.

Most verbs of the Second Conjugation drop, however, their own characteristic vowel before -tum, and insert the connecting-vowel I: mone-o, *I remind*, moni-tum. Some have no connecting-vowel. See p. 58.

2. Consonant-stems in a P- or K-mute take -tum in the Supine:

cap-io, *I take*, cap-tum. rēp-o, *I creep*, rēp-tum.
fac-io, *I do*, fac-tum. dīc-o, *I say*, dīc-tum.

Exceptions.—Among the P-stems, only lābor, *I slip*, lāp-sus.

Among the K-stems the Supine in -sum occurs:

a. In verbs whose Present-stem is strengthened by T, *e. g.:*

flect-o, *I bend*, flexum. plect-o, *I plait*, plexum.
pect-o, *I comb*, pexum. nect-o, *knot, bind*, nexum.

Digitized by Google

b. Some, whose characteristic is preceded by a Liquid: merg-o, *I dip*, mer-sum; terg-o, *I wipe*, ter-sum; parc-o, *I spare*, parsum; sparg-o, *I sow, scatter*, spar-sum; mulce-o, *I stroke*, mul-sum.

c. In some the ending -sum prevents confusion with other words: fingo, *I shape*, makes fic-tum; but fīgo, *I fasten*, fix-um. So mulsum, from mulc-eo, *I stroke*, distinguishes it from multum, *much*.

REMARK.—The K-mutes are dropped in the Perfect and Supine between L-S, L-T, R-S, R-T: fulc-io, *I prop*, ful(c)-si, ful(c)-tum; torqu-eo, *I twist*, tor(qu)-si, tor(qu)-tum. See p. 85.

3. Consonant-stems in a T-mute take -sum in the Supine:

ed-o, *I eat*, ē-sum (for ed-sum); lūd-o, *I play*, lū-sum; dēfend-o, *I ward off*, dēfēnsum.

4. Liquid-stems have partly -tum, partly -sum. Stems in **m** and **n** take -tum; stems in **l** and **r** take -sum:

em-o, *I buy*, em-tum; veni-o, *I come*, ventum; can-o, *I sing*, can-tum.
versum, from verro, *I sweep;* falsum, from fall-o, *cheat;* vulsum, from vell-o, *I pluck*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*a.* Liquid-stems which in the Perfect pass over to the 2d Conjugation have -tum, with or without connecting-vowels: alo, *I nourish*, alitum *or* altum.

b. To be distinguished from other forms: par-tum, from pario, *I bring forth;* but parsum, from parcere, *to spare;* saltum, from sal-io, *I leap;* and salsum, from salio, *I salt*.

c. Mansum, from man-eo, *I remain*.

REMARK.—*The Future Active Participle* is formed regularly from the Supine; in some verbs, however, from the Present-stem: juvātūrus, *about to help*, from juvāre; secātūrus, from secāre, *to cut;* sonātūrus, from sonāre, *to sound;* lavātūrus, from lavāre, *to wash;* but adjūtūrus, from adjuvāre, *to help;* moritūrus, from morior, *I die;* oritūrus, from orior, *I rise;* paritūrus, from pario, *I bring forth;* agnōtūrus, from agnosco, *I recognize;* nascitūrus, from nascor, *I am born*.

In some Ū-stems it is formed by means of the connecting-vowel I: arguitūrus, from arguo, *I accuse;* abnuitūrus, from abnuo, *I refuse;* luitūrus, from lu-o, *wash off;* ruitūrus, from ruo, *I rush;* fruitūrus, from fruor, *I enjoy*.

EUPHONIC LAWS

IN THE CONVERSION OF THE CONSONANT-CHARACTERISTIC.

Characteristic **b** before **s** and **t** becomes **p**:

scrībo, *I write*, scrīpsī, scrīptum.

Characteristic **g** and **qu** before **t** become **c**:

lego, *I read*, lectum; coqu-o, *I bake*, coc-tum.

Characteristic **c, g** and **qu** with **s** become **x**:

dīc-o, *I say*, dīxī (= dic-si).
jung-o, *I join*, junxī (= jung-si).
coqu-o, *I cook*, coxī (= coqu-si).
stingu-o, *I poke (out)*, stinxī.

Characteristic **t** and **d** before **s** are dropped, or become by assimilation **ss**:

ed-o, I *eat*, ē-sum (= ed-sum); cēd-o, *I go*, cēs-sī (= ced-si).
mitto, *I send*, mīsī (= mit-si), missum (= mit-sum).

Digitized by Google

Change of Conjugation.

A change of Conjugation arises when a vowel (e, i, a), or one of the strengthening suffixes of the Present is added to the pure stem. The following instances occur:

1. Consonant-stems, regular in the Perfect and Supine, pass over in the Present-stem into one of the vowel-conjugations.

sēpio,	sēpīre,	sēp-sī,	sēp-tum,	*to hedge in.*
augeo,	augēre,	auxī,	auc-tum,	*to increase.*
vincio,	vincīre,	vinxī,	vinc-tum,	*to bind.*
video,	vidēre,	vīd-ī,	vī-sum,	*to see.*
sentio,	sentīre,	sēn-sī,	sēn-sum,	*to feel.*
venio,	venīre,	vēn-ī,	ven-tum,	*to come.*

N. B.—As these verbs form Perfect and Supine from the pure stem regularly, like the others of the 3d or Consonant-Conjugation, they are placed among the verbs of the 3d Conjugation in the *list below.*

2. Vowel-stems, in consequence of a strengthened Present, pass over into the 3d Conjugation, but form Perfect and Supine from the vowel-stem.

li-n-o,	linere,	lī-vī (lĕ-vī),	li-tum,	*to besmear.*
crē-sc-o,	crēscere,	crē-vi,	crē-tum,	*to grow.*

3. Consonant-stems form the Present regularly according to the 3d Conjugation, but pass in the Perfect and Supine into the 2d or 4th Conjugation.

fremo,	fremere,	frem-uī,	frem-itum,	*to growl.*
peto,	petere,	petī-vī,	petī-tum,	*to fall upon.*

4. Vowel-stems vary among the Vowel-Conjugations.

crepo, I.	crepāre, I.	crepuī, II.	crepitum, II.	*to crackle.*
aperio, IV.	aperīre, IV.	aperuī, II.	apertum,	*to uncover.*

5. dare, *to give*, and stāre, *to stand*, in the Perfect, in consequence of reduplication, pass over to the 3d Conjugation.

N. B.—Verbs mentioned under 2, 3, 4, and 5 as suffering change of Conjugation, are specially marked in pp. 92–4.

Digitized by Google

Stems in a P-mute.

Supine: -tum.

Perfect.—1. After a short stem-syllable, Perfect in -I.

capio (cap),	capere,	cēp-I,	cap-tum,	*to take.*
accipio,	accipere,	accēpI,	acceptum,	*to receive.*
rumpo (rup),	rumpere,	rūp-I,	rup-tum,	*to break.*

2. After a long stem-syllable, Perfect in -sI.

rēpo,	repere,	rēp-sI,	rēp-tum,	*to creep.*
carpo,	carpere,	carp-sI,	carp-tum,	*to pluck.*
serpo,	serpere,	serp-sI,	serp-tum,	*to creep.*
scalpo,	scalpere,	scalp-sI,	scalp-tum,	*to scrape.*
sculpo,	sculpere,	sculp-sI,	sculp-tum,	*to chisel.*
scrībo,	scribere,	scrīp-sI,	scrīp-tum,	*to write.*
nūbo,	nūbere,	nūp-sI,	nūp-tum,	*to marry (of the woman).*

With change of Conjugation.

sorbeo,	sorbēre,	(sorp-sI) sorbuI,	sorp-tum,	*to sup up.*
sēpio (saepio),	sēpīre,	sēp-sI,	sēp-tum,	*to hedge in.*

Exceptions.

I. clepo,	clepere,	clep-sI (clēp-I),	clep-tum,	*to filch.*
II. lambo,	lambere,	lamb-I,	(lamb-i-tum),	*to lick.*

Stems in a K-mute.

Supine: -tum.

Perfect.—1. After a short stem-syllable, Perfect in -I.

***a.* Pure stem.**

lego,	legere,	lēg-I,	lec-tum,	*to read.*
colligo (ēligo),	colligere.	collēg-I,	collec-tum.	*to gather.*

Except dīligo, intelligo, nēgligo, below, p. 85.

ago,	agere,	ēg-I,	ac-tum,	*to do.*
red-igo,	redigere,	redēg-I,	redac-tum,	*to bring back.*
cōgo	cōgere,	coēg-I,	coac-tum,	*to compel.*
dēgo	dēgere,	dēg-I,	——	*to pass (time).*
jacio,	jacere,	jēc-I,	jac-tum,	*to cast.*
con-jicio,	conjicere,	conjēc-I,	conjec-tum,	*to gather.*
facio,	facere,	fēc-I,	fac-tum,	*to make.*
perficio,	perficere,	perfēc-I,	perfec-tum,	*to achieve.*
calefacio (calf.),	calefacere,	calefēc-I,	calefac-tum,	*to make warm.*
fugio,	fugere,	fūg-I,	fug-i-tum,	*to flee.*

Digitized by Google

b. Stem strengthened by N.

vinco (vic),	vincere,	vīc-ī,	vic-tum,	*to conquer.*
frango,	frangere,	frēg-ī,	frac-tum,	*to break.*
perfringo,	perfringere,	perfrēgī,	perfractum,	*to shiver.*
(pango),	(pangere),	(pĕg-ī),	(pac-tum),	comp. 2 b & 3, *to drive in.*
compingo,	compingere,	compēgī,	compactum,	*to drive tight.*
re-linquo,	relinquere,	relīqu-ī,	relic-tum,	*to leave behind.*

2. After long stem-syllable, Perfect in -sī.

a. Pure stem.

dīco,	dīcere,	dīxī (dic-sī),	dic-tum,	*to say.*
dūco,	dūcere,	dūxī,	dūc-tum,	*to lead.*
sūgo,	sūgere,	sūxī,	sūc-tum,	*to suck.*
frīgo,	frīgere,	frīxī,	frīc-tum,	*to parch.*
-flīgo (con-, af-, in-),	-flīgere,	-flīxī,	-flīc-tum,	*to strike.*
fīgo,	fīgere,	fīxī	fīxum,*	*to fasten.*

With change of Conjugation.

augeo,	augēre,	auxī,	auc-tum,	*to make grow.*
lūceo,	lūcēre,	lūxī,	——	*to give light.*
lūgeo,	lūgēre,	lūxī,	——	*to be in mourning.*
frīgeo,	frīgēre,	(frīxī),	——	*to be chilled.*

b. Stem strengthened by N, which is retained in Perfect and generally in Supine; the stem-syllable is therefore long by position.

Supine without N.

fingo,	fingere,	finxī,	fic-tum,	*to form.*
pingo,	pingere,	pinxī,	pic-tum,	*to paint.*
stringo,	stringere,	strinxī,	stric-tum,	*to draw tight.*

Supine with N.

plango,	plangere,	planxī,	planc-tum,	*to smite.*
pango,	pangere,	panxī,	panc-tum,	*to drive in.*
ango,	angere,	anxī,	——	*to anguish.*
cingo,	cingere,	cinxī,	cinc-tum,	*to gird.*
jungo,	jungere,	junxī,	junc-tum,	*to join.*
mungo,	mungere,	munxī,	munc-tum,	*to blow the nose.*
ningo,	ningere,	ninxī,	——	*to snow.*
tingo (tinguo),	ting(u)ere,	tinxī,	tinc-tum,	*to wet, dye.*
lingo,	lingere,	linxī,	linc-tum,	*to lick.*
-stinguo (ex-, re-, dis-),	-stinguere,	-stinxī,	-stinc-tum,	*to poke out.*
ungo (unguo),	ung(u)ere,	unxī,	unc-tum,	*to anoint.*

With change of Conjugation.

vincio,	vincīre,	vinxī,	vinc-tum,	*to bind.*
sancio,	sancīre,	sanxī,	sanc-tum and sancītum,	*to hallow.*

* The exceptions mentioned on pp. 80 and 81 are marked with*.

Digitized by Google

c. Stem strengthened by T (Supine: -sum).

flecto,	flectere,	flexī,	flexum,*	*to bend.*
plecto,	plectere,	(plexī),	(plexum),*	*to plait.*
pecto,	pectere,	pexī,	pexum,*	*to comb.*
necto,	nectere,	nexī (nexui),	nexum,*	*to knot.*

d. The K-mute dropped after L or R, and before S or T.

mergo,	mergere,	mer-sī,	mer-sum,*	*to dip in.*
tergo (eo),	tergere (ĕre),	ter-sī,	ter-sum,*	*to wipe.*
spargo,	spargere,	spar-sī,	spar-sum,*	*to strew.*

With change of Conjugation.

algeo,	algēre,	al-sī,	——	*to freeze.*
fulgeo,	fulgēre,	ful-sī,	——	*to glow.*
indulgeo,	indulgēre,	indul-sī,	indul-tum,	*to give way.*
mulceo,	mulcēre,	mul-sī,	mul-sum,*	*to stroke.*
mulgeo,	mulgēre,	mul-sī,	mul-sum (ctum),*	*to milk.*
urgeo,	urgēre,	ur-sī,	——	*to press.*
turgeo,	turgēre,	tur-sī,	——	*to swell.*
torqueo,	torquēre,	tor-sī,	tor-tum,	*to twist.*
fulcio,	fulcīre,	ful-sī,	ful-tum,	*to prop.*
farcio, (-fercio),	farcīre,	far-sī,	far-tum,	*to stuff.*
sarcio,	sarcīre,	sar-sī,	sar-tum,	*to patch.*

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Stem-syllable short, but Perfect in -sī.

rego,	regere,	rexī,	rec-tum,	*to keep right.*
dīrigo,	dīrigere,	dīrexī,	direc-tum,	*to guide.*
pergo,	pergere,	perrexī,	perrec-tum,	*to go on.*
surgo,	surgere,	surrexī,	surrec-tum,	*to rise up.*
tego,	tegere,	texī,	tec-tum,	*to cover.*
coquo,	coquere,	coxī,	coc-tum,	*to cook.*
[-ligo (leg),	-ligere,	-lexī,	-lec-tum,]	
dīligo,	dīligere,	dīlexī,	dīlec-tum,	*to love.*
intelligo *or* intellego,	intelligere,	intellexī,	intellec-tum,	*to understand.*
nĕgligo *or* nĕglego,	negligere,	neglexī,	neglec-tum,	*to neglect.*

(col-ligere, ēligere, p. 83.)

[-licio (lac),	-licere,	-lexī,	-lectum,]	*lure.*
(al-, il-) pel-licio,	pellicere,	pel-lexī,	pellectum,	*to allure.*
ēlicio,	ēlicere,	ēlicuī,	ēlic-i-tum,	*to lure forth.*
[-spicio (spec),	-spicere,	-spexī,	-spec-tum,]	*to peer.*
(ad-, con-, de-, in-) per-spicio,	perspicere,	per-spexī,	perspectum,	*to see through.*

2. Stem-syllable long, but Perfect in -ī.

Ico (defective),	Icere,	Ic-ī,	ic-tum,	*to strike.*

Digitized by Google

3. With reduplicated Perfect.

posco,	poscere,	po-posc-I,	——	*to claim.*
disco,	discere,	di-dic-I,	(discĭtūrus),	*to learn.*
parco,	parcere,	pe-perc-I (parsi),	par-sum,*	*to spare.*
tango (TAG),	tangere,	te-tig-I,	tactum,	*to touch.*
at-tingo,	attingere,	attigI,	attactum,	
(pango, p. 80),	(pangere),	pe-pig-I,	pac-tum,	*to drive a bargain.*
pungo,	pungere,	pu-pug-I,	punc-tum,	*to prick.*
interpungo,	interpungere,	interpunxI,	interpunc-tum,	*to place points between.*

Aspirate Stems in H and V.

The stems in H, and some in V, follow the Conjugation of the K-mute stems. (H is hardened into C. In the V-stems an original K-mute reappears, *e. g.:* vīvo for VI(G)VO; vixī = VIG(V)sī.)

Perfect, -sī. *Supine:* -tum.

traho,	trahere,	traxI,	trac-tum,	*to drag.*
veho,	vehere,	vexI,	vec-tum,	*to carry.*
vīvo,	vīvere,	vixI,	vic-tum,	*to live.*
fluo,	fluere,	fluxI,	(fluxum),	*to flow.*
struo,	struere,	struxI,	struc-tum,	*to build.*

With change of Conjugation.

connīveo,	connīvēre,	connixI and īvI,	——	*to close the eyes.*

Stems in a T-mute.

Supine: -sum.

Perfect.—1. The stems in D with short stem-syllable and all stems in -nd, have Perfect in -I.

(Many stems in -nd, with reduplicated Perfect, see 4 below.)

edo,	edere,	ĕd-I,	ē-sum,	*to eat.*
fundo (FUD),	fundere,	fūd-I,	fū-sum,	*to pour.*
mando,	mandere,	mand-I,	mân-sum,	*to chew.*
scando,	scandere,	scand-I,	scân-sum,	*to climb.*
ad-, dē-scendo,	dēscendere,	dēscend-I,	dēscēn-sum,	*to climb down.*
ac-cendo,	accendere,	accend-I,	accēn-sum,	*to kindle.*
de-fendo,	defendere,	defend-I,	defēn-sum,	*to strike away, defend.*
prehendo,	prehendere,	prehend-I,	prehēn-sum,	*to seize.*

With change of Conjugation.

video,	vidēre,	vId-I,	vI-sum,	*to see.*
prandeo,	prandēre,	prand-I,	prān-sum,	*to breakfast.*

Digitized by Google

2. Stems in D and T, with long stem-syllable, have Perfect in -sī.

rādo,	rādere,	rā-sī,	rā-sum,	*to scratch.*
rōdo,	rōdere,	rō-sī,	rō-sum,	*to gnaw.*
vādo (in-, e-),	-vādere,	-vā-sī,	-vā-sum,	*to go.*
lūdo,	lūdere,	lū-sī,	lū-sum,	*to play.*
trūdo,	trūdere,	trū-sī,	trū-sum,	*to push.*
laedo,	laedere,	lae-sī,	lae-sum,	*to harm.*
collīdo,	collīdere,	collī-sī,	collī-sum,	*to strike together.*
plaudo,	plaudere,	plausī,	plau-sum,	*to clap.*
claudo,	claudere,	clausī,	clau-sum,	*to shut.*
con-, ex-clūdo,	exclūdere,	exclū-sī,	exclū-sum,	*to shut up, out.*

With change of Conjugation.

suādeo,	suadēre,	suā-sī,	suā-sum,	*to counsel.*
rīdeo,	rīdēre,	rī-sī,	rī-sum,	*to laugh (at).*
ardeo,	ardēre,	ar-sī,	ar-sum,	*to burn.*
sentio,	sentīre,	sēn-sī,	sēn-sum,	*to feel.*

3. With assimilation.

a. In the Supine.

sedeo,	sedēre,	sēd-ī,	ses-sum,	*to sit.*
fodio,	fodere,	fōd-ī,	fos-sum,	*to dig.*
pando,	pandere,	pand-ī,	pas-sum (pānsum),	*to spread.*
mitto,	mittere,	mī-sī,	mis-sum,	*to send.*

b. In the Perfect and the Supine.

cēdo,	cēdere,	cēs-sī,	cēs-sum,	*to yield.*
quatio,	quatere,	quas-sī,	quas-sum,	*to shake.*
concutio (per-, ex-),	concutere,	concus-sī,	concus-sum,	*to shatter.*

EXCEPTIONS.

1. With short stem-syllable, but Perfect in -sī.

dīvido,	dīvidere,	dīvī-sī,	dīvī-sum,	*to part.*
quatio,	quatere,	quas-sī,	quas-sum,	*to shake.*

2. With long stem-syllable, but Perfect in -ī.

cūdo,	cūdere,	cūd-ī,	cū-sum,	*to hammer.*
sīdo,	sīdere,	sīd-ī,		*to sit down.*
	In composition sēdī, sessum, *from* sedeo.			
consīdo,	considere,	consēd-ī,	conses-sum,	*to settle down.*
strīdeo (do),	strīdēre (ere),	strī-dī,	—	*to whistle.*
verto,	vertere,	vert-ī,	ver-sum,	*to turn.*
revertor,	revertī,	revert-ī (active),	rever-sum,	*to turn back.*

Digitized by Google

4. With reduplicated Perfect.

N. B.—The reduplication of the Perfect is dropped in compound verbs.

cado,	cadere,	cecid-ī,	cā-sum,	*to fall.*
occido,	occidere,	occid-ī,	occā-sum,	*to perish.*
caedo,	caedere,	cecīd-ī,	cae-sum,	*to fell.*
occīdo,	occīdere,	occīd-ī,	occī-sum,	*to kill.*
tendo,	tendere,	tetend-ī,	ten-sum and -tum,	*to stretch.*
extendo,	extendere,	extend-ī,	exten-sum and -tum,	*to stretch out.*
ostendo,	ostendere,	ostend-ī,	osten-sum,	*to stretch at, shew* (obs-t-)
pendo,	pendere,	pepend-ī,	pen-sum,	*to hang* (transit.)

With change of Conjugation.

pendeo,	pendēre,	pepend-ī,	——	*to hang* (intr.)
tondeo,	tondēre,	totond-ī,	ton-sum,	*to shear.*
spondeo,	spondēre,	spopond-ī,	spon-sum,	*to vow.*
mordeo,	mordēre,	momord-ī,	mor-sum,	*to bite.*

In some verbs the strengthening N of the Present has been dropped. In two verbs even the reduplicated syllable has been dropped.

tundo,	tundere,	tutud-ī,	tūn-sum and tū-sum,	*to pound.*
findo,	findere,	fid-ī,	fis-sum,	*to cleave.*
scindo,	scindere,	scid-ī,	scis-sum,	*to split.*

Liquid-Stems.

All liquid-stems have the stem-syllable short.

(The exceptions arise from contraction: *e. g.*, pōno, *I place*, from po-sino).

Most liquid-stems, by means of the suffix **e**, pass over into the 2d Conjugation, or in the Perfect, at least, suffer change of Conjugation. (See pp. 92, 93.)

Those which follow the 3d Conjugation throughout take **ī** in the Perfect, and in the Supine either **-sum** or **-tum.** They lengthen the stem-syllable in the Perfect, or retain the double letter (RR, LL). Some form the reduplicated Perfect.

emo,	emere,	ēm-ī,	em-tum,	*to take, to buy.*

So, too, co-emo, *I buy up.* But the compounds with ad-, ex-, inter-, red-, take -imo.

inter-imo,	interimere,	interēmī,	interemtum,	*to make way with.*

The other compounds of emo contract: cōmo, sūmo, dēmo, prōmo, and have **-sī** in the Perfect, generally with an inserted P, viz.:

cōmo,	cōmere,	cōmp-sī,	cōmp-tum,	*to adorn.*
sūmo,	sūmere,	sūmp-sī (sūmsī),	sūmp-tum (sūmtum),	*to take.*
dēmo,	dēmere,	dēmp-sī,	dēmp-tum,	*to take away.*
prōmo,	prōmere,	prōmp-sī (prōmsī),	prōmp-tum (prōmtum,	*to take out.*

The same formation occurs in the stem TEM. Present, temno, *I scorn.*

contemno,	-temnere,	-temp-sī (msī),	-temptum (mtum),	*to despise.*

Digitized by Google

With the characteristic doubled.

verro,	verrere,	verr-ī,	ver-sum,	*to sweep.*
sallo,	sallere,	sall-ī,	sal-sum,	*to salt.*
vello,	vellere,	vell-ī (vul-**sī**),	**vul**-sum,	*to pluck.*
psallo,	psallere,	psall-ī,	——	*to play on the cithern.*

With change of Conjugation in the Present.

venio,	venīre,	vēn-ī,	ven-tum,	*to come.*

With reduplicated Perfect.

cano,	canere,	cecin-ī,	can-tum,	*to sing.*
fallo,	fallere,	fefe**ll**-ī,	fal-sum,	*to cheat.*
pello,	pellere,	pepul-ī,	**pul**-sum,	*to drive.*
percello,	percellere,	percul-ī,	perc**ul**-sum,	*to smite down.*
curro,	currere,	cucu**rr**-ī,	cur-sum,	*to run.*
pario,	parere,	peper-ī,	par-**tum**,*	*to bring forth.*
comperio,	comperīre,	comper-ī,	comper-tum,	*to find out.*
reperio,	reperīre,	rēper-ī,	reper-tum,	*to find.*
tollo,	tollere,	sus-tul-ī,	sub-lātum,	*to raise.*

In the liquid-stems in R with long stem-syllable, the R has arisen from S. The original S reappears in the Perfect and Supine, hence the endings **-sī** in the Perfect (or by assimilation **-ssī**), and **-stum** (sum) in the Supine.

haurio,	haurīre,	hausī,	haus-tum,	*to draw (fluid).*
haereo,	haerēre,	haesī,	haesum,	*to stick (to).*
ūro,	ūrēre,	ūssī,	ūs-tum,	*to burn.*
combūro,	combūrere,	combūssī,	combūs-tum,	*to burn up.*

With short stem-syllable.

gero,	gerere,	gessī,	gestum (see to **-tum**, p. 85),	*to carry.*

STEMS IN S.

The stems in S preceded by a *vowel* have in general changed it to **R**. Unchanged appears only :

vīs-o,	vīsere,	vīsī,	vīsum,	*to visit.*

Stems in S preceded by a *consonant* are:

pins-o,	pīnsere,	pīns-ui, -ī,	pīns-ī-tum (pistum, pinsum)	*to pound.*
deps-o,	depsere,	deps-uī,	deps-tum,	*to knead.*
tex-o,	texere,	tex-uī,	tex-tum,	*to weave.*

These have undergone change of Conjugation in the Perfect. (See p. 92.)

Digitized by Google

Stems in U.

Perfect in -ī. Supine in -tum.

1. With characteristic preceded by a consonant.

acuo,	acuere,	acu-ī,	acū-tum,	*to sharpen.*
arguo,	arguere,	argu-ī,	argū-tum,	*to accuse.*
induo,	induere,	indu-ī,	indū-tum,	*to put on, don.*
exuo,	exuere,	exu-ī,	exū-tum,	*to put off, doff.*
imbuo,	imbuere,	imbu-ī,	imbū-tum,	*to dip, dye.*
minuo,	minuere,	minu-ī,	minū-tum,	*to lessen.*
tribuo,	tribuere,	tribu-ī,	tribū-tum,	*to allot.*
statuo,	statuere,	statu-ī,	statū-tum,	*to settle.*
suo,	suere,	su-ī,	sū-tum,	*to sew.*
spuo,	spuere,	spu-ī,	spū-tum,	*to spew.*
ad-nuo (annuo),	ad-nuere,	ad-nu-ī,	(ad-nū-tum),	*to assent.*
ab-luo,	ab-luere,	ab-lu-ī,	ab-lū-tum,	*to wash off.*
luo,	luere,	lu-ī,	lū-tum,	*to atone for*
congruo,	congruere,	congru-ī,	—	*to agree.*
metuo,	metuere,	metu-ī,	—	*to fear.*
sternuo,	sternuere,	sternu-ī,	—	*to sneeze.*
(pluo,	pluere,	pluī),	—	*to rain.*
ruo,	ruere,	ru-ī,	ru-tum,	*to rush down.*

2. With characteristic preceded by a vowel.

After a vowel, U appears as V, but in the Supine it suffers, as a vowel, contraction with the vowel preceding it (generally with change of conjugation).

(lavo,)	(lavere,)	lāv-ī,	lautum, or lōtum	*to wash.*
lavo,	lavāre,	(lavā-vī,)	lavā-tum,	*to wash.*
juvo,	juvāre,	jūv-ī,	jū-tum,	*to help.*
caveo,	cavēre,	cāv-ī,	cau-tum,	*to take heed.*
faveo,	favēre,	fāv-ī,	fau-tum,	*to be well-disposed.*
paveo,	pavē-re,	pāv-ī,	—	*to be frightened,*
moveo,	movē-re,	mōv-ī,	mō-tum,	*to move.*
foveo,	fovēre,	fōv-ī,	fō-tum,	*to keep warm.*
voveo,	vovēre,	vōv-ī,	vō-tum,	*to vow.*

The same reappearance, of V occurs in

solvo,	solvere,	solv-ī,	solū-tum,	*to loose.*
volvo,	volvere,	volv-ī,	volū-tum,	*to roll.*
ferveo,	fervēre,	ferv-ī, (ferbuī,)	—	*to seethe.*

Digitized by Google

Deponents.

The stems strengthened by sc or isc have generally an inchoative meaning.

Stems in a P-mute.

1. adip-isc-or,	adipiscī,	adep-tus sum,	*to attain.*
2. lăbor,	lāpsī,	lāp-sus sum,	*to glide.*

Stems in a K-mute.

1, a. profic-isc-or,	proficiscī,	profec-tus sum,	*to set out.*
2, b. fungor,	fungī,	func-tus sum,	*to discharge.*
nanc-isc-or,	nanciscī,	nac-tus (nanctus) s,	*to get.*
c. amplect-or,	amplectī,	amplexus sum,	*to embrace.*
d. ulc-isc-or,	ulciscī,	ul-tus sum,	*to avenge.*
Ex. experg-isc-or,	expergiscī,	experrec-tus sum,	*to awake.*
4. paciscor,	paciscī,	pactus sum (pepigī),	*to drive (a bargain).*

Stems in H and V.

vehor,	vehī	vec-tus sum,	*to ride.*
fruor,	fruī,	fruc-tus, fruitus sum,	*to enjoy.*

Stems in a T-mute.

2. nītor,	nītī,	nī-sus (nīxus) sum,	*to be stayed on.*
ūtor,	ūtī,	ū-sus sum,	*to use.*
ordior,	ordīrī,	or-sus sum,	*to begin.*
assentior,	assentīrī,	assēn-sus sum,	*to assent.*
3. gradior,	gradī,	gressus sum,	*to step.*
aggredior,	aggredī,	aggressus sum,	*to attack.*
patior,	patī,	pas-sus sum,	*to suffer.*
fateor,	fatērī,	fas-sus sum,	——
cōnfiteor,	cōnfitērī,	cōnfessus sum,	*to confess.*

Stems in a Liquid.

commin-isc-or,	comminiscī,	commentus sum,	*to think out.*
experior,	experīrī,	exper-tus sum,	*to try.*

Stems in R for S.

queror,	querī,	ques-tus sum,	*to complain.*

Stems in U.

1. loquor,	loquī,	locū-tus sum,	*to speak.*
sequor,	sequī,	secū-tus sum,	*to follow.*
2. oblīv-isc-or,	oblīviscī,	oblī-tus sum,	*to forget.*

Digitized by Google

CHANGE OF CONJUGATION.

(Compare p. 82. Nos. 2, 3, 4, 5.)

A.

1. Verbs of the 1st Conjugation which pass over into the 2d in the Perfect and the Supine.

WITH CONNECTING-VOWEL.

crepo,	crepāre,	crepuī,	crepitum,	*to creak.*
cubo,	cubāre,	cubuī,	cubitum,	*to lie.*
domo,	domāre,	domuī,	domitum,	*to tame.*
sono,	sonāre,	sonuī,	sonitum,	*to sound.*
tono,	tonāre,	tonuī,	——	*to thunder.*
veto,	vetāre,	vetuī,	vetitum,	*to forbid.*
mico,	micāre,	micuī,	——	*to glitter.*
dīmico,	dīmicāre,	dīmicāvī,	dīmicātum,	*to fight.*
plico (explico),	plicāre,	plicuī (plicāvī),	plicitum (plicātum),	*to fold.*

WITHOUT CONNECTING-VOWEL.

seco,	secāre,	secuī,	sectum,	*to cut.*
frico,	fricāre,	fricuī,	frictum, fricātum,	*to rub.*
[neco,	necāre,	necāvī,	necātum,	*to kill.*
ēneco,	ēnecāre,	ēnecuī and ēnecāvī,	ēnectum,	*to kill off.*

2. Verbs of the 3d Conjugation which pass over into the 2d in the Perfect and the Supine.

WITH CONNECTING-VOWEL.

fremo,	fremere,	fremuī,	fremitum,	*to growl.*
gemo,	gemere,	gemuī,	gemitum,	*to groan.*
vomo,	vomere,	vomuī,	vomitum,	*to vomit.*
gigno (GEN),	gignere,	genuī,	genitum,	*to beget.*
molo,	molere,	moluī,	molitum,	*to grind.*
strepo,	strepere,	strepuī,	strepitum,	*to roar.*
ac-cumbo,	ac-cumbere,	ac-cubuī,	ac-cubitum,	*to lie down.*

WITHOUT CONNECTING-VOWEL.

alo,	alere,	aluī,	altum, alitum,	*to nourish.*
colo,	colere,	coluī,	cultum,	*to cultivate.*
cōnsulo,	cōnsulere,	cōnsuluī,	cōnsultum,	*to advise.*
occulo,	occulere,	occuluī,	occultum,	*to conceal.*
sero,	serere,	——	——	*to string (out.)*
dē-sero,	dē-serere,	dē-seruī,	dē-sertum,	*to abandon.*
rapio,	rapere,	rapuī,	raptum,	*to snatch.*
corripio,	corripere,	corripuī,	correptum,	*to seize.*
frendo (eo),	frendere,	(frenduī),	frēsum, fressum,	*to gnash.*

So, too, depso, *I knead*, texo, *I weave*, and pinso, *I pound.* See p. 89.

WITHOUT SUPINE.

tremo,	tremere,	tremuī,	*to tremble.*
sterto,	stertere,	stertuī,	*to snore.*
excello, ante-, prae-,	ex-cellere,	ex-cellui. excelsus,	*to surpass.*
compesco,	compescere,	compescuī,	*to curb in.*
con-cino, oc-, prae-,	concinere,	concinuī,	*to sing together.*

Digitized by Google

3. Verbs of the 4th Conjugation which pass over into the 2d in the Perfect and the Supine.

amicio,	amicīre,	(amicuī, amixī,)	amictum,	*to cloths.*
aperio,	aperīre,	aperuī,	apertum,	*to open.*
operio,	operīre,	operuī,	opertum,	*to cover up.*
salio,	salīre,	saluī,	saltum,	*to leap.*
dēsilio,	dēsilīre,	dēsiluī,	dēsultum,	*to leap down.*

4 Verbs of the 3d Conjugation which pass over into the 4th in the Perfect and Supine.

peto,	petere,	petīvī,	petītum,	*to seek.*
rudo,	rudere,	rudīvī,	rudītum,	*to roar.*
cupio,	cupere,	cupīvī,	cupītum,	*to desire.*
sapio,	sapere,	sapīvī, sapuī,	—	*to taste.*
quaero, quaeso,	quaerere,	quaesīvī,	quaesītum,	*to seek.*
conquīro,	conquīrere,	conquīsīvī,	conquīsītum,	*to hunt up.*
arcesso,	arcessere,	arcessīvī,	arcessītum,	*to send for.*

So, too, lacesso, *I tease*, capesso, *I lay hold of.*

incesso,	incessīvī, incessī,		*to attack.*

5. Verbs which vary between the 2d and the 4th Conjugation.

cieo, *or* cio,	cīēre, cīre,	cī-vī,	cītum, cī-tum,	*to arouse.*
concītus,	percītus,	excītus, *or* excītus,	*but* accītus.	

6. Verbs which pass over into the 3d Conjugation in the Supine.

sepelio,	sepelīre,	sepelīvī,	sepultum,	*to bury.*
pōto,	pōtāre,	pōtā-vī,	pō-tum (PO) *or* pōtātum,	*to drink.*

B.

Change of Conjugation as result of Reduplication.

do,	dare,	dedī,	datum,	*to give, put.*

N. B. Everywhere a-short, except in dās, *thou givest*, and dā, *give thou.* Like do, are conjugated the compounds with dissyllabic words, such as:

circum-do, *I surround;* satisdo, *I give bail;* pessum-do, *I ruin;* vēnum-do, *I sell; e.g.:*

circumdo,	circumdare,	circumdedī,	circumdatum,	*to surround.*

But the compounds of dare with monosyllabic words pass over wholly into the 3d Conjugation.

abdo,	abdere,	abdidī,	abditum,	*to put away.*
addo,	addere,	addidī,	additum,	*to put to.*
condo,	condere,	condidī,	conditum,	*to put up (found).*
dēdo,	dēdere,	dēdidī,	dēditum,	*to give up.*
ēdo,	ēdere,	ēdidī,	ēditum,	*to put out.*
indo,	indere,	indidī,	inditum,	*to put in.*
perdo,	perdere,	perdidī,	perditum,	*to ruin.*
prōdo,	prōdere,	prōdidī,	prōditum,	*to betray.*
reddo,	reddere,	reddidī,	redditum,	*to give back.*
trādo,	trādere,	trādidī,	trāditum,	*to give over.*
vēndo,	vēndere,	vēndidī,	vēnditum,	*to put up to sale.*
crēdo,	crēdere,	crēdidī,	crēditum,	*to put faith.*
abscondo,	abscondere,	abscondī, -didī,	absconditum,	*to put far away.*

Digitized by Google

sto,	stāre,	stetī,	stātum,	*to stand.*
adsto,	adstāre,	adstitī,	——	*to stand by.*
cônsto,	cônstāre,	cônstitī,	——	*to stand fast.*
însto,	înstāre,	înstitī,	——	*to stand upon.*
obsto,	obstāre,	obstitī,	——	*to stand out against.*
persto,	perstāre,	perstitī,	——	*to stand firm.*
praesto,	praestāre,	praestitī,	——	*to stand ahead.*
resto,	restāre,	restitī,	——	*to stand over.*
disto,	distāre,	——	——	*to stand apart.*
exsto,	exstāre,	——	——	*to stand out.*
circumsto,	circumstāre,	circum*stetī*,		*to stand round.*

Like circumsto, all compounds of stāre with dissyllabic prepositions have -stetī in the Perfect, *e.g.:*

antesto, *I am superior;* intersto, *I am between;* supersto, *I stand upon.*

In other compounds the reduplicated form sisto is used, which, as a simple verb, has the transitive meaning, *I (cause to) stand*, but in its compounds, the intransitive, *I stand.*

sisto,	sistere,	(stiti),	statum,	*to (cause to) stand.*
cônsisto,	cônsistere,	cônstitī,	cônstitum,	*to come to a stand.*
dēsisto (ab-),	dēsistere,	dêstitī,	dêstitum,	*to desist.*
exsisto,	exsistere,	exstitī,	exstitum,	*to stand up.*
obsisto,	obsistere,	obstitī,	obstitum,	*to take a stand against.*
resisto,	resistere,	restitī,	restitum,	*to resist.*
assisto,	assistere,	adstitī,	——	*to stand near.*
însisto,	însistere,	înstitī,	——	*to persevere.*
circumsisto,	circumsistere,	circum*stetī*,		*to surround.*

C.

Change of conjugation as result of strengthened Present.

1. Present strengthened by N.

li-n-o,	linere,	lī-vī, *or* lēvī,	li-tum	*to besmear.*
sī-n-o,	sinere,	sī-vī,	si-tum,	*to let.*
dē-sino,	dēsinere,	desivī (iī),	desitum.	*to leave off.*
pōno (PO-SINO),	pōnere,	pos-**uī**,	posi-tum,	*to place.*

2. Present strengthened by sc-: compare E.

pa-sc-o,	pascere,	pā-vī,	pa**s**-tum,	*to graze* (transitively).
crê-sc-o,	crêscere,	crē-vī,	crē-tum,	*to grow.*
quiê-sc-o,	quiêscere,	quiē-vī,	quiē-tum,	*to rest.*
sue-sc-o, as-, con-,	suescere,	suē-vī,	suē-tum,	*to accustom one's self.*
nô-sc-o,	nôscere,	nō-vī,	(Adj. nōtus),	*to learn to know.*
cognôsco,	cognôscere,	cognōvī,	cogn**ī**tum,	*to recognise.*

So the other compounds of nôsco, except ignôsco, *I pardon, take no notice of*, which has Sup. ignōtum (ignōtus, *unknown*).

D.

Some Stems in R (-er) experience change of conjugation as result of Metathesis, which also is a strengthening of the Present.

ter-o,	terere,	trī-vī,	trī-tum,	*to rob.*
ser-o,	serere,	sē-vī,	sa-tum,	*to sow.*
cônsero,	cônserere,	cônsēvī,	cônsitum,	——
sper-n-o,	spernere,	sprē-vī,	sprē-tum,	*to despise.*
cer-n-o,	cernere,	(crē-vī),	(crē-tum),	*to separate.*
dēcerno,	dēcernere,	dêcrēvī,	dêcrētum,	*to decide.*
ster-n-o,	sternere,	str**ā**-vī,	str**ā**-tum,	*to strew.*

Digitized by Google

E.

Inchoative Verbs.

The inchoatives are formed { by adding to the vowel-stems sc. / " " consonant-stems isc.

Their Perfect and Supine are formed from the pure stem.

inveterâ-sco,	inveterâscere,	inveterā-vī,	inveterā-tum,	*to grow old.*
nā-scor,	nāscī	——	nā-tus sum,	*to be born.*
exolē-sco,	exolēscere,	exolē-vī,	exolē-tum,	*to get one's growth.*

Like exolēsco, decline obsolēsco, *I grow old;* but abolēsco, *I disappear*, has abolitum.

adolē-sco,	adolescere,	adolē-vī,	adul-tum,	*to grow up.*
convalē-sco,	convalēscĕre,	conval-uī,	conval-i-tum,	*to get well.*
incalē-sco,	incalēscere,	incal-uī,	——	*to get warm.*
exardē-sco,	exardēscere,	exar-sī,	exar-sum,	*to take fire.*
sci-sco,	sciscere,	scī-vī,	sci-tum,	*to decree.*
adsci-sco,	adsciscere,	adscī-vī,	adscī-tum,	*to take on.*
obdormī-sco,	obdormiscere,	obdormī-vī,	obdormī-tum,	*to fall asleep.*
concup-isco, (cup-ere),	concupiscere,	concup-īvī,	concupī-tum,	*to long for.*
resip-isco, (sap-ere),	resipiscere,	resipīvī,	——	*to come to one's senses.*
ingem-isco,	ingemiscere,	ingem-uī,	——	*to sigh.*
revīv-isco,	revīviscere,	revī-xī,	revic-tum,	*to come to life again.*

Inchoative Verbs may be formed likewise from Nouns or Adjectives.

nōtēsco,	nōtēscere,	nōtuī,	(nōtus),	*to become known.*
ēvānēsco,	ēvānēscere,	ēvānuī,	(vānus),	*to disappear.*
vesperâsco,	vesperâscere,	——	(vesper),	*to become evening.*
īrâscor,	īrâscī,	īrātus sum,	(īra),	*to grow angry.*

Change of Voice.

Neuter-Passive Verbs.

audeo,	audēre,	ausus sum,	*to dare.*
gaudeo,	gaudēre,	gāvīsus sum,	*to rejoice.*
soleo,	solēre,	solitus sum,	*to be wont.*
fīdo,	fīdere,	fīsus sum,	*to trust.*
[revertor,	revertī,	revertī, reversus sum],	*to turn back.*

Remarks.—1. Some Active Verbs have a Perfect Passive Participle with Active meaning, *e.g.:* coenātus, *one who has dined*, from coenāre, *to dine;* pransus, *having breakfasted*, from prandeo, *I breakfast;* pōtus, *drunken*, from pōto, *I drink;* jūrātus, *having taken the oath, sworn*, from jūro, *I swear;* conjūrātus, *a conspirator*, from conjūro, *I conspire.* Many such are used purely as Adjectives: consīderātus, *circumspect*, from consīdero; cautus, *wary*, from caveo. *I beware.*

2. The Perfect Participle of many Deponent Verbs has both Active and Passive meaning: adeptus, adipiscor, *having acquired*, or *being acquired;* comitātus, comitor, *I accompany;* expertus, experior, *I try;* exsecrātus, exsecror, *I curse;* imitātus, imitor, *I copy;* meritus, mereor, *I deserve;* opīnātus, necopīnātus, opīnor, *I think;* pactus, paciscor, *I contract;* partītus, partior, *I distribute;* sortītus, sortior, *I cast lots.*

Digitized by Google

Irregular Verbs.

A.

Irregular in the formation of the tense-stems are:

1. Two Verbs in a P-mute of the 3d conjugation, viz.:

clepo, *I filch.* lambo, *I lick.* See p. 88.

2. Six Verbs of the 3d conjugation in a K-mute, which have, in spite of the short stem-syllable, the Perfect in -sī, viz.:

rego, *I keep right.* tego, *I cover in.* coquo, *I bake*, and the compounds.
lego, *I read.* lacio, *I lure.* specio *I spy*, (-ligo, -licio, -spicio).

From lego, however, only dīligo, *I love;* intellego, *I understand;* and nēgligo, *I neglect;* are irregular. The other compounds are regular. See p. 85.

3. Two Verbs of the 3d conjugation in a T-mute, which, in spite of the short stem-syllable, have the Perfect in -sī, viz.:

dīvido, *I part.* quatio, *I shake.* See p. 87.

4. Four Verbs of the 3d conjugation in a T-mute, which, in spite of long stem-syllable, have the Perfect in -ī, viz.:

cūdo, *I hammer;* sīdo, *I sit;* strīdeo, *I whistle;* verto, *I turn.* See p. 87.

5. Assimilation between MS and BS occurs in the Perfect and Supine of

premo,	premere,	pressī,	pressum,	*to press.*
jubeo,	jubēre,	jussī,	jussum,	*to order.*

6. Special irregularities occur in:

bibo,	bibere,	bibī,	(bibitum),	*to drink.*
raucio,	raucīre,	rausī,	rausum,	*to be hoarse.*
maneo,	manēre,	mansī,	mānsum,	*to remain.*
meto,	metere,	messuī,	messum,	*to mow.*
reor,	rērī,		ratus sum,	*to think.*
morior,	morī,		mortuus sum,	*to die.*
mētior,	mētīrī,		mēnsus sum,	*to measure.*

7. Formed from different tense-stems, are

fero,	ferre,	tulī,	lātum,	*to bear.*
tollo,	tollere,	sustulī,	sublātum,	*to lift.*

See p. 98.

Digitized by Google

B.

Irregular in the conjugation of the Present-stem.

1. orior, orīrī, ortus sum, *to arise.*

Present: oriŏr, oreris, oritur, orimur, orimini, oriuntur.

The other forms of the Present-stem follow the Fourth Conjugation. *Gerund:* oriundus. The compounds follow the simple verb, except adorīrī, *rise up at, attack*, which follows the Fourth Conjugation throughout.

2. īre, *to go.* Stem I, which, before a, o, u, becomes e.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	Present.	
Sing. 1.	eo, *I go.*	eam, *I be going.*
2.	Is,	eās,
3.	It.	eat.
Pl. 1.	Imus,	eāmus,
2.	Itis,	eātis,
3.	eunt.	eant.
	Imperative.	
Sing. 2.	I, *go thou.*	Ito, *thou shalt go.*
3.		Ito, *he shall go.*
Pl. 2.	Ite, *go ye.*	Itōte, *ye shall go.*
3.		eunto, *they shall go.*
	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	Imperfect.	
	I-bam, *I went.*	I-rem, *I were going.*
	Future.	
	Ibo, *I shall go.*	
	Perfect.	
	Ivī (Compos. ĭī, *e. g.*, exiī), *I have gone.*	Iverim, exierim.
	Pluperfect.	
	Iveram, exieram.	Ivissem, exiissem.
	Future Perfect.	
	Ivero, exiero.	

Supine: i-tum, *to go.*
Participles: *Pres.* iens. G. euntis. *Fut.* Act. itūrus.
Gerund: eundī.

The Passive occurs in some of the compounds: circumīrī.

Compounds of eo are: vēneo, *I am for sale*, and pereo, *I perish*, which serve as passives to vēndo and perdo, whose regular passives occur only in the forms venditus, vendendus, and perditus.

The compound ambio, *I solicit*, follows the Fourth Conjugation throughout.

Like īre, *to go*, are conjugated quīre, *to be able*, and nequīre, *to be unable*, which, however, are usual only in Present Indicative and Subjunctive.

Digitized by Google

3. ferre, *to bear.*

The connecting-vowel E is dropped before T, S, and R.

Active.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	Present.	
Sing. 1.	fer-o, *I bear.*	fer-a-m, *I be bearing.*
2.	fer-s,	fer-ā-s,
3.	fer-t,	fer-a-t,
Pl. 1.	fer-i-mus,	fer-ā-mus,
2.	fer-tis,	fer-ā-tis,
3.	fer-u-nt.	fer-a-nt.
	Imperative.	
Sing. 2.	fer, *bear thou.*	fer-to, *thou shalt bear.*
3.		fer-to, *he shall bear.*
Pl. 2.	fer-te, *bear ye.*	fer-tōte, *ye shall bear.*
3.		fer-u-nto, *they shall bear.*

Participle: fer-ē-ns, *bearing.* Infinitive: fer-re, *to bear.*

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Imperfect.	
fer-ē-bam, *I was bearing.*	fer-rem, *I were bearing.*
Future.	
fer-a-m, *I shall bear.*	
Perfect.	
tulī, *I have borne.*	

Supine: lātum, Participle, *Future Active:* lātūrus.

Passive.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	Present.	
Sing. 1.	fer-o-r, *I am borne.*	fer-a-r, *I be borne.*
2.	fer-ris,	fer-ā-ris,
3.	fer-tur,	fer-ā-tur,
Pl. 1.	fer-i-mur,	fer-ā-mur,
2.	fer-i-minī,	fer-ā-minī,
3.	fer-u-ntur.	fer-a-ntur.
	Imperative.	
Sing. 2	fer-re, *be thou borne.*	fer-tor, *thou shalt be borne.*
3.		fer-tor, *he shall be borne.*
Pl. 2.	fer-i-minī, *be ye borne.*	
3.		fer-u-ntor, *they shall be borne.*

Infinitive: fer-rī, *to be borne.* Gerund: fer-e-ndus.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Imperfect.	
fer-ē-bar.	fer-rer.

Future: fer-a-r. *Perfect:* lātus sum.

Compounds.

affero,	afferre	attulī,	allātum,	*to bear to.*
aufero,	auferre,	abs-tulī,	ab-lātum,	*to bear away.*
cŏnfero,	cŏnferre,	con-tulī,	collātum,	*to collect.*
differo,	differre,	dis-tulī,	dī-lātum,	*to put off.*
effero,	efferre,	ex-tulī,	ē-lātum,	*to carry out.*
offero,	offerre,	ob-tulī,	ob-lātum,	*to offer.*

suffero, *I undergo*, has the Perfect sustinuī (sustulī, sublātum, being appropriated to tollo. See p. 96).

Digitized by Google

4. edere, *to eat.*

In certain forms the connecting-vowels I and E are dropped before S, T, and R. D before S (R) is dropped or assimilated as SS, and before T becomes S.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	Present.	
Sing. 1.	edo, *I eat.*	edam, *I be eating.*
2.	edis, ēs,	edās,
3.	edit, ēst.	edat.
Pl. 1.	edimus,	edāmus,
2.	editis, ēstis,	edātis,
3.	edunt.	edant.
	IMPERATIVE.	
Sing. 2.	ede, ēs, *eat thou.*	edito, ēsto, *thou shalt eat.*
3.		edito, ēsto, *he shall eat.*
Pl. 2.	edite, ēste, *eat ye.*	editōte, ēstōte, *ye shall eat.*
3.		edunto, *they shall eat.*

INFINITIVE.

edere, ēsse, *to eat.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Imperfect.	
edēbam, *I ate.*	ederem, ēssem, *I were eating.*

5. fierī, *to become,*

Is conjugated in the Present, Imperfect, and Future, according to the 4th Conjugation, but receives a connecting-vowel in the Subjunctive Imperfect and in the Infinitive, viz., fi-e-rem, *I were becoming;* fi-e-rī, *to become.* In these forms the I is short, but elsewhere it is long, even before another vowel.

The Infinitive ends in -rī, and the whole Verb in the Present-stem is treated as the Passive to facio, *I make.* The rest of the Passive is formed regularly from facio.

Active.	*Passive.*
Pres. facio, *I make.*	IND. fīo, *I am made, I become.*
	fīs, fīt, (fīmus, fītis,) fīunt.
	SUB. fīam, fīas, fīat, etc.
Imperf. faciēbam, *I made.*	IND. fīēbam, *I was made, I became.*
	SUB. fierem, fierēs, etc.
Future. faciam, *I shall make.*	fīam, *I shall be made or become.*
Perfect. fēcī.	factus sum.
Pluperf. fēceram.	factus eram.
F. Perf. fēcero.	factus ero.
	INF. *Perf.* factum esse, *to have become.*
	Fut. futūrum esse *or* fore.

Digitized by Google

REMARK.—The compounds of *facio*, with Prepositions, change the a of the stem into i, and form the Passive regularly from the same stem: perficio, *I achieve*, Pass. perficior; interficio, Pass. interficior, *I am destroyed*. But when compounded with words other than prepositions, facio retains its a, and uses fio as its Passive:

patefacio, *I lay open*, Pass. patefio; calefacio, *I warm*, Pass. calefio.

The accent remains the same as in the simple verb: calefácis, *thou warmest*.

6. Velle, *to be willing;* nôlle, *to be unwilling;* mâlle, *to be willing rather*.

INDICATIVE—*Present*.

volo,	nōlo,	mālo,
vīs,	nōn vīs,	māvīs,
vult.	nōn vult.	māvult.
volumus,	nōlumus,	mālumus,
vultis,	nōn vultis,	māvultis,
volunt.	nōlunt.	mālunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE—*Present*.

velim,	nōlim,	mālim,
velīs,	nōlīs,	mālīs,
velit.	nōlit.	mālit.
velīmus,	nōlīmus,	mālīmus,
velītis,	nōlītis,	mālītis,
velint.	nōlint.	mālint.

INDICATIVE—*Imperfect*.

volēbam.	nōlēbam.	mālēbam.

SUBJUNCTIVE—*Imperfect*.

vellem.	nōllem.	māllem.

Future.

volam,	nōlam,	mālam,
volēs.	nōlēs.	mālēs.

Perfect.

voluī.	nōluī.	māluī.

IMPERATIVE: Sing. nōlī, nōlīto. Pl. nōlīte, nōlītōte, nōlunto.

PARTICIPLE: volēns. nōlēns.

C.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

1. ajo, *I say, ay*.

Pres. IND. 1. ājo, 2. ais, 3. ait. Pl. 3. ājunt.

SUBJ. ājās, ājat. ājant.

Imperf. IND. ājēbam, &c. PART. ājēns (as adj.), *affirmative*.

Digitized by Google

2. inquam, *I say, quoth I.*

Pres. IND. Sing. 1. inquam, 2. inquis, 3. inquit.
Pl. 1. inquimus, 2. inquitis, 3. inquiunt.
Imperf. IND. 3. inquiēbat. *Fut.* Sing. 2. inquiēs, 3. inquiet.
Perf. Sing. 2. inquistī, 3. inquit. Pl. 2. inquistis.

3. fārī, *to speak.*

Pres. fātur. *Fut.* fābor, fābitur. *Perf.* fātus sum, &c. SUP. fātū.
IMPER. fāre. GERUND. fandī, fandō. PART. *Pres.* fāns, fantis.

4. avēre, salvēre, valēre.

avē, salvē, *hail thou!* valē, *farewell.*
avēte, salvēte, *hail ye!* valēte, *farewell.*
avēre, salvēre. valēre.
age, agite, *come!* apage, *begone!*

5.

In use only in the Perfect-stem are coepī, *I have begun*, to which incipio serves as a Present; meminī, *I remember;* ōdī, *I hate;* nōvī, *I know;* consuēvī, *I am wont.*

coepī, *I have begun.* SUBJ. coeperim.
coeperam, coepissem.
coepero, INF. coepisse, *to have begun.*
meminī, *I remember.* meminerim.
memineram, meminissem.
meminero, meminisse, *to remember.*

IMPERATIVE. Sing. mementŏ. Pl. mementōte.

ōdī, *I hate.* ōderim.
ōderam, ōdissem.
ōdero, ōdisse, *to hate.*

coepī and ōdī have passive forms of the same meaning:

coeptus sum, *I have begun.* ōsus sum, *I hate.*
nōvi (from nōsco, see p. 94), *I know, am aware.*
cōnsuēvī, cōnsuesco, *I am wont.*

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

PART SECOND.

SYNTAX OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE.

BY

BASIL L. GILDERSLEEVE.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

SYNTAX.

SYNTAX OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

§ 1. Syntax treats of the formation and combination of sentences.

Sentences are divided into *simple* and *compound.*

A simple sentence is one in which the necessary parts occur but once.

The necessary parts of the sentence are *the subject* and *the predicate.*

The predicate is that which is said of the subject.

The subject is that of which the predicate is said.

The most simple form of the sentence is the finite verb: su-m, *I am;* docē-s, *thou teachest;* scrīb-i-t, *he writes.*

§ 2. The subject of the finite verb is always in the Nominative Case.

Remarks.—1. The use of the Nominative in Latin is the same as in English.

2. The Vocative Case (the case of direct address) is not influenced by the structure of the sentence, and does not enter as an element into Syntax, except in the matter of Concord. The form differs from the Nominative in the Second Declension only, and even there the Nominative is sometimes used instead, especially in poetry. The interjection Ō is prefixed to give emphasis to the address.

§ 3. The subject may be a noun or pronoun, or some word or phrase used as a noun:

Deus mundum gubernat, *God steers the universe; ego* vōbīs vērum dīcam, *I will tell you what is true; victī* in

Digitized by Google

servitūtem rediguntur, *the vanquished are reduced to slavery; sapiēns* rēs adversās nōn timet, *the wise man does not fear adversity; contendisse* decōrum est (Ov.), *it is honorable to have struggled;* magnum est beneficium nātūrae, *quod necesse est morī, it is a great boon of nature that it is absolutely necessary* (for us) *to die; vidēs* habet duās syllabās, "*vides*" *has two syllables.*

Remarks.—1. Masculine and Feminine adjectives and participles are used as substantives, chiefly in the plural number: pauperēs, *the poor;* dīvitēs, *the rich;* doctī, *the learned;* whereas, in the singular, the substantive is generally expressed: vir bonus, *a good man;* homo doctus, *a learned person;* mulier peregrīna, *a foreign woman.* When persons are not meant, a substantive is understood: cānī (capillī), *grey hairs;* calida (aqua), *warm water;* dextra (manus), *right hand.*

2. Neuter adjectives and participles are freely employed as substantives in both numbers: medium, *the midst;* extrēmum, *the end;* reliquum, *the residue;* futūrum, *the future;* bonum, *good;* bona, *blessings, possessions;* malum, *evil;* mala, *misfortunes.*

3. Adjectives of the Second Declension are sometimes used as neuter substantives in the Genitive case, after words of quantity or pronouns: aliquid bonī, *something good;* nihil malī, *nothing bad.* Adjectives of the Third Declension are thus employed only in combination with those of the Second. (§ 168, R. 1.)

* Vixque tenet lacrimās quia nīl *lacrimābile* cernit.—Ov.

She scarcely keeps back her tears, because she descries nothing to shed tears for.

4. Instead of the neuter adjective, the word rēs, *thing*, is frequently used, and especially in the Genitive Plural, in order to avoid ambiguity. Bonōrum might be Masculine or Neuter. Hence, bonārum rērum, *of blessings.*

5. In Latin, the Plural of abstract nouns occurs more frequently than in English: adventūs imperātōrum, *the arrival(s) of the generals* (because there were several generals, or because they arrived at different times). Pluralizing abstract nouns makes them concrete: fortitūdinēs, *gallant actions;* formīdinēs, *bugbears;* īrae, *quarrels.*

6. Other plural expressions to be noted are: nivēs, *snow-flakes;* grandinēs, *hail-stones;* pluviae, *streams of rain;* ligna, *billets of wood;* carnēs, *pieces of meat;* aera, *articles of bronze;* also symmetrical parts of the human body: cervīcēs, *neck;* pectora, *breast.*

Digitized by Google

The Plural is freely used in poetry:

* *Ōtia* sī tollās, periēre. Cupīdinis *arcūs*.—Ov.
If you abolish holidays, Cupid's bow (and arrows) *are ruined.*

* *Corpora* magnanimō satis est prōstrâsse leōnī.—Ov.
It is enough to prostrate the body before the great-hearted lion.

7. Very common is the First Person Plural for the First Person Singular: librum dē senectūte ad tē mīsimus, *we* (I) *have sent you a treatise on old age:*

* Sitque memor *nôstrī* necne, referte mihī.—Ov.
Bring me back (word) *whether she remembers us* (me) *or no.*

8. The Singular, in a collective sense, is also used for the Plural, but more rarely: fāba, *beans;* porcus, *pig* (meat); gallīna, *fowl* (as articles of food); vestis, *clothing;* hostis, *the enemy;* mīles, *the soldiery;* pedes, *infantry;* eques, *cavalry.*

COPULA.

§ 4. When the predicate is not in the form of a verb, the so-called Copula is generally employed, in order to couple the adjective or substantive with the subject. The chief copula is the verb SUM, *I am.*

REMARK.—Strictly speaking, the copula is itself a predicate, as is shown by the translation when it stands alone or with an adverb: *est* Deus, *there is a God, God exists; rectē* semper *erunt* rēs, *things will always be (go on) well.* Other copulative verbs are: vidērī, *to seem;* appārēre, *to appear;* manēre, *to remain;* nâscī, *to be born;* fierī, *to become;* ēvādere, *to turn out;* creārī, *to be created;* dēligī, *to be chosen;* putārī, *to be thought;* habērī, *to be held;* dīcī, *to be said;* appellārī, *to l called;* nōminārī, *to be named.*

RULE.

Verbs of SEEMING, REMAINING, BECOMING, with the Passiv of verbs of MAKING and CHOOSING, SHOWING, THINKING, and CALL ING, take the same case after them as before them: nēmo pe fectus *nâscitur, no one is born perfect;* Aristīdēs jûstus *appe lātur, Aristides is called just;* fortissimus vir *cognitus es, yo are known as a gallant man;* Servius Tullius rêx est *dêclārātus, Servius Tullius was declared king.*

§ 5. The person is not expressed, unless it is emphatic, as

Digitized by Google

for example in contrasts: *amāmus* parentēs, *we love* our *parents; ego* rēgēs ējēcī, *vōs* tyrannōs intrōdūcitis, *I drove out kings, ye are bringing in tyrants.*

§ 6. Verbs that have no definite subject are called *Impersonal Verbs*, chiefly relating to the state of the weather: tonat, *it thunders;* fulgurat, fulminat, *it lightens;* pluit, *it rains;* ningit, *it snows.*

REMARKS.—1. The passive of intransitive verbs (§§ 11, 15) is often used impersonally: vīvitur, *people live;* curritur, *there is a running.* The subject is contained in the verb itself: sīc vīvitur=sīc vīta vīvitur, *such is life.* In the same way explain taedet, *it wearies;* miseret, *it moves to pity;* piget, *it disgusts;* pudet, *it puts to shame;* interest, rēfert, *it concerns;* oportet, *it behooves.*

2. All other so-called Impersonal Verbs have an Infinitive for a subject.

§ 7. The Copula is often omitted in saws and proverbs, in short questions, in rapid changes, and in tenses compounded with participles:

Summum jūs summa injūria, *the height of right is the height of wrong* (compare: "the greater the truth, the greater the libel);" *nēmo malus fēlix (JUV.), *no bad man is happy;* quid dulcius? *what sweeter?*

CONCORD.

RULE.

§ 8. The verbal predicate agrees with its subject in number and person.

The adjective predicate agrees with its subject in number, gender, and case.

The substantive predicate agrees with its subject in case.

Substantīva mōbilia are treated as adjectives, and follow the number and gender of the subject.

Digitized by Google

Ego rēgēs *ējēcī*, *vōs* tyrannōs *intrōdūcitis* (§ 5); vērae *amīcitiae sempiternae* sunt, *true friendships are abiding; dōs* est decem *talenta*, *the dowry is ten talents; ūsus magister* est optimus, *practice is the best teacher; Athēnae* sunt omnium doctrīnārum *inventrīcēs*, *Athens is the inventor of all branches of learning.*

REMARK.—The natural relation may be preferred to the artificial, the nearer to the more remote. Hence—

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Nouns of multitude often take the predicate in the plural: cētera *classis fūgērunt*, *the rest of the fleet fled.*

2. The adjective predicate often follows the natural gender of the subject: *capita* conjūrātiōnis virgīs *caesī sunt*, *the heads of the conspiracy were flogged.*

3. The copula often agrees with the number of the predicate (the wages of sin *is* death): *Amantium īrae (§ 3, R. 5,) amōris integrātio *est* (TER.), *lovers' quarrels are love's renewal.*

§ 9. The neuter adjective is often used as the substantive predicate of a masculine or feminine subject: *triste* lupus stabulīs (VIRG.), *the wolf is destruction to the folds;* omnium rērum (§ 3, R. 4) mors est *extrēmum*, *death is the end of all things.*

§ 10. The demonstrative pronoun is commonly attracted into the gender of the predicate: *hic* mūrus ahēneus esto (HOR.), *let this be a wall of brass; ea* erat cônfessio, *that was an acknowledgment.* But when the pronoun is the predicate: id sum quod fuī, *I am what I was.*

FORMS OF THE VERBAL PREDICATE.

VOICES OF THE VERB.

§ 11. The Active Voice denotes that *the action proceeds from the subject.*

Verbs are called *Transitive* when their action *goes over* an object; *Intransitive* when their action *does not go beyo* the subject: occīdere, *to fell = to kill* (Transitive); occidē *to fall* (Intransitive).

Digitized by Google

REMARK.—Transitive verbs are often used intransitively, and Intransitive verbs transitively: suppeditāre, *to supply* (Transitive), *to be on hand* (Intransitive); queror, *I complain* (Intransitive), *I complain of* (Transitive.)

§ 12. The Passive Voice denotes that *the subject receives the action of the verb.* The instrument is put in the Ablative, the agent in the Ablative with AB (Ā): trahimur omnēs studiō laudis, *we are all drawn by the desire of praise;* Pompêjus ā Caesare victus est, *Pompey was conquered by Cæsar.*

REMARKS.—1. Intransitive verbs of Passive signification are construed as Passives: famē perīre, *to perish of hunger;* ā paucīs interīre, *to die at the hands of a few.*

2. When the instrument is considered as an agent, or the agent as an instrument, the constructions are reversed: vincī ā Voluptāte, *to be overcome by Pleasure;* * Poenō mīlite portās frangimus (JUV.), *we break down the gates with the Punic soldiery* (as if with a battering-ram).

§ 13. The person in whose interest an action is done is put in the Dative. Hence, the frequent inference that the person interested is the agent. In prose, this construction is found chiefly in the Perfect Passive. With the Gerundive, however, it is the reigning combination: rēs mihi tōta prōvīsa est, *I have had the whole matter provided for;* *Carmina scrîpta mihī sunt nulla (Ov.), *poems—I have none written* (I have written no poems); nihil est hominī tam timendum quam invidia, *there is nothing that a man has to fear to the same extent as envy* (§§ 150 151).

§ 14. The Direct Object of the Active Verb (the Accusative Case) becomes the Subject of the Passive: Alexander Dārīum vīcit, *Alexander conquered Darius;* Dārīus ab Alexandrō victus est, *Darius was conquered by Alexander.*

§ 15. The Indirect Object of the Active Verb (Dative Case) cannot be properly used as the Subject of the Passive. The Dative remains unchanged, and the verb becomes a Passive in the Third Person Singular (Impersonal Verb).

Digitized by Google

PARADIGM.

mihi invidētur, *I am envied,*
tibi invidētur, *thou art envied,*
eī invidētur, *he is envied.*
nōbīs invidētur, *we are envied,*
vōbīs invidētur, *you are envied,*
eīs invidētur, *they are envied.*
} ab aliquō, *by some one.*

§ 16. Reflexive relations, when emphatic, are expressed as in English: omne animal sē ipsum dīligit, *every living creature loves itself.*

§ 17. When the reflexive relation is more general, the Passive is employed: lavor, *I bathe, I bathe myself;* * Cūrābar propriīs herbīs (Ov.), *I was trying to cure myself by my own herbs.*

§ 18. The Passive is often used to express an action which the subject suffers or causes to be done to itself: trahor, *I let myself be dragged;* tondeor, *I have myself shaved.*

* Ipse docet quid agam; fās est et ab hoste docērī.—Ov., *He himself teaches* (*me*) *what to do; it is* (but) *right to let one's self be taught even by an enemy.*

§ 19. The Deponent is a Passive form which has lost, in most instances, its Passive (or Reflexive) signification. It is commonly translated as a Transitive or Intransitive Active: hortor, *I am exhorting* (Trans.); morior, *I am dying* (Intrans.).

§ 20. Reciprocal relations ("*one another*") are expressed by inter, *among*, and the Personal Pronouns, nōs, *us;* vōs, *you;* sē, *themselves:* inter sē amant, *they love one another.*

TENSES OF THE VERB.

§ 21. The Tenses express the relations of time, embracing:

1. The stage of the action (duration in time).
2. The period of the action (position in time).

The first tells whether the action is *going on*, or *finished.* The second tells whether the action is *past*, *present*, or *future.* Both these sets of relations are expressed by the tenses of

Digitized by Google

the Indicative mood. The tenses of the other moods express duration in time only.

§ 22. There are six tenses in Latin:

1. The *Present*, denoting *continuance* in the *present*.
2. The *Future*, denoting *continuance* in the *future*.
3. The *Imperfect*, denoting *continuance* in the *past*.
4. The *Perfect*, denoting *completion* in the *present*.
5. The *Future Perfect*, denoting *completion* in the *future*.
6. The *Pluperfect*, denoting *completion* in the *past*.

§ 23. An action may further be regarded simply as *attained*, without reference to its *continuance* or *completion*. This gives rise to the *indefinite* stage of the action, which has no especial tense-form. It is expressed by the Present tense for the present; by the Future and Future Perfect tenses for the future; and by the Perfect tense for the past.

Of especial importance is the *Indefinite* or *Historical* Perfect (Aorist), which differs materially in syntax from the *Definite* or *Pure* Perfect.

§ 24. Table of Temporal Relations.

Indicative Mood.

	Continuance.	Completion.	[Attainment.
Present:	scrībo, *I am writing.*	scrīpsī, *I have written.*	scrībo, *I write.*
Future:	scrībam, *I shall be writing.*	scrīpsero, *I shall have written.*	scrībam, (scrīpsero), *I shall write.*
Past:	scrībēbam, *I was writing.*	scrīpseram, *I had written.*	scrīpsī, *I wrote.*]

Present Tense.

§ 25. The Present Tense is used, as in English, *of that which is going on now*, and *of statements that apply to all time: teneo* lupum, *I am holding the wolf;* *Probitās *laudātur* et *alget* (Juv.), *honesty is praised and freezes.*

§ 26. The idea of continuance is sometimes more clearly

Digitized by Google

brought out by employing the phrases "*trying to*," "*being to.*" Hence, we say that the Present is used of *attempted* and *intended* actions: vēnditat domum, *he is trying to sell the house;* vēnditātur domus, *the house is to be sold, is for sale.*

§ 27. The Present Tense is used more rarely than in English *in anticipation of the future:* sī *vincimus*, omnia tūta erunt, *if we conquer* (= shall conquer), *every thing will be safe.*

§ 28. The Present Tense is used far more frequently than in English, *as a lively representation of the past* (Historical Present): ille respondet, *he answers;* iste mittit, *the fellow sends;* = respondit, *answered*, mīsit, *sent.*

REMARK.—DUM, *while*, commonly takes the Historical Present: *dum* haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est, *while these things were transacting in the conference, word was brought to Cæsar.* When DUM can be translated *so long as*, it takes the Perfect: vixit, *dum vixit*, bene (TER.), *he lived well while (so long as) he lived.* (§ 357).

§ 29. IDIOM.—The Present is used in Latin of actions *that are continued from the past into the present*, especially with JAM, *now;* JAM DIŪ, *now for a long time;* JAM PRĪDEM, *now long since.* In English, we translate by a Perfect of continuance: jam diū flāgitat, *he has long been demanding.*

PURE PERFECT TENSE.

§ 30. The Pure Perfect expresses *Completion in the Present*, and is used as in English:

1. Of an action *that is over and gone:* fīlium ūnicum habeo *īmō habuī*, *I have an only son—nay, I have had one;* dixī, *I have said, I have done.*

2. Far more frequently of the *present result of a past action*: mē recondidī et forēs clausī, *I have hidden myself, and shut* (my) *door* [I am still hidden, my door is still shut.].

REMARKS.—1. The Pure Perfect is often translated by the English Present: nōvī, *I have become acquainted with, I know;* meminī, *I have recalled,*

Digitized by Google

I remember; ōdī, *I have conceived a hatred of, I hate;* cônsuēvī, *I have made it a rule, I am accustomed.*

2. As the Present stands for the Future, so the Perfect stands for the Future Perfect: Brūtus sī cônservātus est, vīcimus, *Brutus!—if* HE *is saved, we are victorious, we* (shall) *have gained the victory.* Ōtia si tollās, *periēre* Cupīdinis arcūs. Ov. (§ 3, R. 6).

3. HABEO, *I have*, with the Accusative of the Perfect Participle Passive, is not a mere circumlocution for the Perfect, but lays peculiar stress on the maintenance of the result: habeo statūtum, *I have resolved, and hold to my resolution;* habeo perspectum, *I have perceived, and I have full insight.*

4. On the Perfect in frequentative sentences see §§ 356, 367.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

§ 31 *a.* The Imperfect Tense denotes *Continuance in the Past:* pugnābam, *I was fighting.*

The Imperfect is employed to represent *manners, customs, situations;* to describe and to particularize.

The Imperfect and the Historical Perfect serve to illustrate one another. The Imperfect dwells on the *process;* the Historical Perfect states the *result.* The Imperfect counts out the *items;* the Historical Perfect gives the *sum.*

The two tenses are often so combined that the general statement is given by the Historical Perfect, the particulars of the action by the Imperfect:

Verrēs in forum vēnit; ardēbant oculī; tōtō ex ōre crūdēlitās ēminēbat, *Verres came into the forum, his eyes were blazing, cruelty was standing out from his whole countenance.*

§ 31 *b.* The Imperfect is used of *attempted* and *interrupted, intended* and *expected* actions: vēnditābat domum, *he was engaged in selling the house, he was trying to sell the house, he intended to sell the house, he would have sold the house;* vēnditābātur domus, *the house was for sale, was to be sold, would have been sold;* ipse Postumius quī *dēdēbātur, that very Postumius, who was to be given up.*

Digitized by Google

Pluperfect Tense.

§ 32. The Pluperfect denotes *Completion in the Past*, and is used of an action that was completed before another was begun.

The Latin Pluperfect does not differ essentially from the English.

Remark.—On the Pluperfect in frequentative sentences see § 356,357).

§ 33. When the Perfect is translated by an English Present (§ 30, R. 1), the Pluperfect is translated by an English Imperfect: nōveram, *I had become acquainted with, I knew;* memineram, *I remembered;* ōderam, *I hated;* cônsuēveram, *I was accustomed.*

Historical Perfect.

§ 34. The Historical or Indefinite Perfect (Aorist) states a *past action, without reference to its duration, simply as a thing attained;* vēnī, vīdī, vīcī, *I came, saw, conquered.*

The Historical Perfect is the great narrative tense of the Latin language, and is best studied in long connected passages, and by careful comparison with the Imperfect. (§ 31.)

The Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Historical Perfect are called *Historical Tenses;* the Present, Pure Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect, *Principal Tenses.*

Future Tense.

§ 35. The Future Tense denotes *Continuance in the Future:* scrībam, *I shall be writing.*

The Future Tense is also used to express indefinite action in the Future: scrībam, *I shall write.*

§ 36. In subordinate clauses the Latin language is more exact than the English in the expression of future relations. * Dōnec *eris* fēlix, multōs numerābis amīcōs (Ov.), *so long as you shall be* (are) *happy, you will count many friends.*

Digitized by Google

* Quidquid *eris*, mea semper eris (Ov.), *whatever you shall be* (are), *you will always be mine own.*

REMARK.—Observe especially the verbs VOLO, *I will*, and POSSUM, *I can:* * Ōdero sī *poterō*, sī nōn, invītus amābo (Ov.), *I will hate if I shall be able* (can); *if not, I shall love against my will;* *Sī qua *volet* regnāre diū, dēlūdat amantem (Ov.), *if a woman shall wish* (wishes), *to reign long, she must mock her lover.*

§ 37. The Future is used in an imperative sense, as in English: * Tū nihil *dīcēs* (HOR.), *you shall, are to, say nothing; do you say nothing.* (§ 66, 7.)

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

§ 38. The Future Perfect is the Perfect, both Pure and Historical, transferred to the future, and embraces both *completion* and *attainment:* fēcero, *I shall have done it*, or *I shall do it* (once for all); vīdero, *I will see to it;* prōfēcerit, *it will prove profitable.*

§ 39. In subordinate sentences, the Latin language is more exact than the English in the use of the Future Perfect.

When one action precedes another in the future, the action that precedes is expressed by the Future Perfect: quī prior (§115) *strinxerit* ferrum, ējus victōria erit, *who first draws the sword, his shall be the victory.*

REMARK.—The Future Perfect is frequently used in volo, *I will;* nōlo, *I will not;* possum, *I can;* licet, *it is left free;* libet, *it is agreeable;* placet, *it is the pleasure;* whereas the English idiom familiarly employs the Present: sī *potuero*, faciam vōbīs satis, *if I can, I shall satisfy you.*

§ 40. The Future Perfect in both clauses denotes simultaneous accomplishment or attainment; one action involves the other: quī Marcum Antōnium *oppresserit* is bellum *cônfecerit, he who shall have crushed* (crushes) *Mark Antony, will have finished* (will finish) *the war.*

§ 41. When the Perfect is used as a Present, the Future

Digitized by Google

Perfect is used as a Future: nōvero, *I shall know;* cônsuēverō, *I shall be accustomed;* **Ōdero*, sī poterō (§ 30, R.).

Periphrastic Tenses.

§ 42. The Periphrastic Tenses are formed by combining the various tenses of ESSE, *to be*, with participles and verbal adjectives.

I. Periphrastic Conjugation—Active Voice.

§ 43. The Periphrastic Tenses of the Active are chiefly combinations of ESSE and its forms with the so-called Future Participle Active. The Future Participle is a verbal adjective denoting *capability* and *tendency*. The translation is very various:

1. Scrîptūrus sum, *I am about to write, I am to write, I purpose to write, I am likely to write.*
2. Scrîptūrus eram, *I was about to write, &c.*
3. Scrîptūrus fuī, *I have been* or *was about to write* (often = *I should have written*). (§ 384, R, 3).
4. Scrîptūrus fueram, *I had been about to write, &c.*
5. Scrîptūrus ero, *I shall be about to write, &c.*
6. Scrîptūrus fuero, *I shall have made up my mind to write, &c.* (of course very rare).

REMARK.—The Subjunctives and Infinitives, scrîptūrus sim, scrîptūrum esse, scrîptūrus fuerim, and scrîptūrum fuîsse, are of great importance in dependent discourse. (§ 298).

II. Periphrastic Tenses of the Passive.

§ 44. A.—*Of Future Relations.*

The phrases:

1. Futūrum est, erat, fuit, } *it is to be, was to be,* } ut, *that*, with the subjunctive,

are employed—but rarely: futūrum erat ut pugnārētur, *there was going to be a fight.*

Digitized by Google

2. Also in eō est, erat, fuit, } *it is on the point, was,* } ut *that* (of), with the subjunctive, to denote the precise moment of time when the action of the verb begins: in eō erat ut urbs caperētur, *the city was on the point of being taken.*

Both sets of expressions can be used in the Active as well.

REMARK.—The Infinitive of the first set becomes absolutely necessary when the verb forms no Supine or Future Participle: fore ut discās, *that you will learn;* fore ut discātur, *that it will be learned.*

EXCEPTIONS.—Posse, *to be able;* velle, *to be willing;* which may be used as Future Infinitives.

B.—*Of Past Relations.*

§ 45. The Perfect Participle Passive is used in combination with sum, *I am*, and fuī, *I have been, I was*, to express the Pure Perfect and Historical Perfect of the Passive Voice. Eram, *I was*, and fueram, *I had been*, stand for the Pluperfect; and ero, *I shall be*, and fuero, *I shall have been*, for the Future Perfect. See Paradigms.

REMARK.—FUĪ is the *favorite* form when the participle is frequently used as an adjective: convīvium exornātum fuit, *the banquet was furnished forth;* FUĪ is the *necessary* form when the Perfect denotes that the action is over and gone: amātus fuī, *I have been loved* (but I am loved no longer).

C.—*Periphrastic Conjugation—Passive Voice.*

§ 46. The combination of the Tenses of ESSE, *to be*, with the Gerundive (verbal in -ndus), is called the Periphrastic Conjugation of the Passive, and follows the laws of the simple conjugation.

REMARK.—The Gerundive has the form of a Present Participle Passive (-ndus for -ntus). That which is done (as a rule) is that which is expected. Comp. § 218, R, 4.

Digitized by Google

amandus sum, *I have to be loved.*
amandus eram, *I had to be loved.*
amandus fuī, *I have had (had) to be loved.*
amandus fueram, *I had had to be loved.*
amandus ero, *I shall have to be loved.*
amandus fuero, *I shall have had to be loved.*

Tenses in Letters.

§ 47. In letters, the Roman writer takes the point of view of the receiver, and employs the Imperfect or Historical Perfect for the Present, and the Pluperfect for the Perfect: scrībēbam, scrīpsī, *I am writing, I write* [the receiver: scrībēbat, scrīpsit, *he was writing, he wrote*]; scrīpseram, *I have written* [the receiver: scrīpserat, *he had written*]; nihil *habēbam* quod scrīberem, *I have nothing to write.*

Remark.—The rule is not rigidly observed.

MOODS.

§ 48. Mood signifies manner. The mood of a verb signifies the manner in which the predicate is said of the subject.

There are three moods in Latin:

1. The Indicative,
2. The Subjunctive,
3. The Imperative.

Remark.—The Infinitive form of the verb is generally, but improperly, called a mood.

The Indicative Mood.

§ 49. The Indicative Mood represents the predicate *as a reality.* Its use coincides, in the main, with the English Indicative.

Idioms.

Remarks.—The Latin language expresses *possibility* and *power*, *obligation* and *necessity*, and abstract relations generally, as *facts;* whereas, our

Digitized by Google

translation often *implies the failure to realize.* Such expressions are: dēbeo, *I ought, it is my duty;* oportet, *it behooves;* necesse est, *it is absolutely necessary;* possum, *I can, I have it in my power;* convenit, *it is fitting;* păr, aequum est, *it is fair;* infinītum, *endless;* difficile, *hard to do;* longum, *tedious;* and the Indicative form of the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation:

Ad mortem tē dūcī oportēbat, *it behoove you to be led to execution* (you were not), *you ought to have been led off;* Volumnia dēbuit in tē officiōsior esse, *it was Volumnia's duty to be more attentive to you, V. ought to have been, &c.;* potuit dīligentius facere, *it was in her power to do it more carefully, she might have done it more carefully;* quae conditio nōn accipienda fuit? *what terms ought not to have been accepted?* longum est. ūtilitātēs persequī asinōrum, *it would be tedious to rehearse the useful qualities of asses* (I will not do it).

* Vulnera quae fēcit *dēbuit* ipse patī (Ov.), *the wounds which he inflicted he ought to have suffered himself.*

* Nōnne *fuit melius* dominae pervincere mōrēs? (Prop.) *would it not have been better to conquer your lady-love's habits?*

Exception.—Dēbēbam, *it was my duty,* and poteram, *it was in my power,* and the like, are sometimes used in opposition to a present state of things: dēbēbam, *I ought* (but do not); poteram, *I could* (but do not).

* At, inquis, *poterās* melius mala ferre silendō (Ov.), "*but,*" *you say,* "*you could* (you do not) *bear your misfortunes better by keeping silent.*"

§ 50. In general relative expressions, such as the double formations, quisquis, *no matter who,* quotquot, *no matter how many,* and all the forms in -cunque, *-ever,* the Indicative is employed where we may use in English a Subjunctive or its equivalent: quisquis est, *no matter who he is, be, may be;* quālecunque est, *whatever sort of thing it is, be, may be.* * *Quidquid id est,* timeo Danaōs et dōna ferentēs (Virg.), *whatever it (may) be, I fear the Danai even when they bring presents;* * Ōre trahit *quodcunque potest* atque addit acervō (Hor.), *it drags with its mouth whatever it can, and adds to the heap;* * *Quidquid eris,* mea semper eris.—Ov. (§ 36).

§ 51. The Indicative is sometimes used in the leading clause of conditional sentences (the Apodosis), thereby implying the certainty of the result, had it not been for the interruption. The Indicative generally precedes: perierāmus, *we had per-*

Digitized by Google

ished, were lost, had been lost, should undoubtedly have been lost; praeclārē vīcerāmus, nisi Lepidus recēpisset Antōnium, *we had* (should have) *gained a brilliant victory, had not Lepidus received Antony.* (§ 384, R, 3).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

§ 52. The Subjunctive Mood represents the predicate *as an idea*, as something merely conceived in the mind (abstracts from reality).

REMARK.—The Latin Subjunctive is often translated into English by the auxiliary verbs *may, can, must, might, could, would, should.* When these verbs have their full signification of *possibility* and *power, obligation* and *necessity* (§ 49), they are represented in Latin by the corresponding verbs: *may, can, might, could*, by the forms of posse, *to be able*, licet, *it is left free; will* and *would*, by velle, *to will, to be willing; must*, by dēbeo or oportet (of moral obligation), by necesse est (of absolute obligation).

* Cāsibus īnsultās quōs *potes* ipse patī (Ov.), *you insult misfortune which it is possible for you to suffer yourself* (*which you may possibly suffer yourself*).

§ 53. The realization of the idea may be *in suspense*, or it may be *beyond control.* The first, or purely Ideal Subjunctive, is represented by the Present and Perfect Tenses; the second, or Unreal, is represented by the Imperfect and Pluperfect.

REMARKS.—1. The Subjunctive, as the name implies (subjungo, *I subjoin*), is largely used in dependent sentences, and will be treated at length in that connection.

2. The following modifications of the above principles must be carefully observed:

a. The Romans, in lively discourse, often represent the unreal as ideal, that which is beyond control as still in suspense. (§ .)

b. In transfers to the past, the Imperfect represents the Present, and the Pluperfect the Perfect Subjunctive (§ 295).

The idea may be a *view*, or a *wish.* Hence, the division of the Subjunctive into the *Potential* and the *Optative.*

Digitized by Google

Potential Subjunctive.

§ 54. For the present (or future) time, the Present or Perfect Subjunctive is employed; for the past, the Imperfect; the last chiefly in the ideal second person (an imaginary "*you*").

The Potential Subjunctive occurs:

1. In softened assertions.

2. In modest questions, which expect negative answers:

Velim, *I should wish;* nōlim, *I should be unwilling;* mālim, *I should prefer;* dīcās, *you would say;* crēdās, *you would believe;* dīcat, dīxerit aliquis, *some one may undertake to say, go so far as to say.* * Nīl ego *contulerim* jūcundō sānus amīcō (Hor.), (there is) *nothing I should prefer,* (while I am) *in* (my) *senses, to an agreeable friend;* * quis *tulerit* Gracchōs dē sēditiōne querentēs? (Juv.) *who could bear the Gracchi complaining of rebellion?* [No one].

Vellem, *I should have wished* (it is too late); nōllem, *I should have been unwilling;* māllem, *I should have preferred;* crēderēs, *you would have believed;* putārēs, *you would have thought;* quid aliud *faceret? what else was he to do?* [Nothing].

Remark.—The Potential Subjunctive, as a modified form of the Indicative, is often found where the Indicative would be the regular construction. So after quamquam (§ 399 R).

Optative Subjunctive.

§ 55. (1.) The Subjunctive is used as an *Optative* or *wishing* mood. The regular negative is nē. The expression is further strengthened by utinam (literally = *how*), *would that,* utinam nē, utinam nōn, and in poetry, by ō sī, *oh! if—*

§ 56. The Present and Perfect Subjunctive are used *when the decision is in suspense;* the Imperfect and Pluperfect *when the decision is adverse.*

Digitized by Google

Hoc ōmen *āvertat* Jûppiter, *may Jupiter avert this omen;* utinam modo cōnāta efficere *possim, may I but have it in my power to accomplish my endeavors;* utinam vēra invenīre *possem, would that it were in my power to find out the truth* (but it is not); utinam *susceptus* nōn *essem, would I had not been born.*

*Atque utinam *vīvat* sed nōn *moriatur* in illīs (Ov.), *may he live, but not die, among them.*

*Ō mihi praeteritōs *referat* sī Jûppiter ânnōs (Virg.), *O if Jupiter were to bring me back the years that are gone by!*

Other phases of the Optative Subjunctive.

§ 57. (2.) The Optative Subjunctive is used in *asseverations;* ita *vīvam* ut maximōs sûmptūs facio, *as I live, I am spending very largely* (literally, *so may I live as I am making very great outlays*).

§ 58. (3.) The Subjunctive is used as an *Imperative*—

1. In the First Person, which has no Imperative form;

2. In the Second Person, chiefly of an imaginary "*you;*" §§ 67, 68.

3. In the Third Person. (The negative is nē.)

Amēmus patriam, *let us love our country;* nē difficilia *optēmus, let us not desire what is hard to do;* nē *trânsieris* Ibērum, *do not cross the Ebro;* suum quisque (§ 107) *nôscat* ingenium, *let each man try to become acquainted with his own turn of mind.*

Remarks.—1. The Present Subjunctive is employed when stress is laid on *the continuance of the action;* the Perfect when stress is laid on the *completion.* Hence, in total prohibitions, the Perfect Subjunctive is the favorite form. (§ 67.)

2. The Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are occasionally used in like manner of actions that ought to have been done in the past (§ 49, Rem.): commovērentur=commovērī dēbēbant, *they ought to have been moved;* nē poposcissēs, *you ought not to have demanded.*

§ 59. (4.) The Subjunctive is used as a *concessive:* sit fūr, (*granted that*) *he be a thief; fēcerit* sī ita vīs, (*suppose*) *he have*

Digitized by Google

done it, if you will (have it so); *darēs* hanc vim Marcō Crassō, *suppose you had given this virtue to Marcus Crassus; dedĭssēs* huīc animō pār corpus, *suppose you had given him a body* (that was) *a match for his mind.*

This use is next of kin to the conditional.

REMARK.—On the Tenses of the Subjunctive, see the Tenses of the Moods (§ 72).

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

§ 60. The Imperative Mood *demands realization.* The tone of the demand varies, and may appear as an *order*, an *exhortation*, a *permission*, an *entreaty.*

§ 61. The Imperative has two forms, commonly known as the Present and the Future Imperative. The Present Imperative has only the Second person; the Future Imperative has both Second and Third persons. The First Person is represented by the Subjunctive.

REMARK.—All Imperatives look forward to the future. Hence, the common nomenclature is unfortunate.

§ 62. The First (or Present) Imperative looks forward to immediate fulfilment (Absolute Imperative):

Special: patent portae; *prŏficiscere, the gates are open; depart.*

General: Jûstitiam *cole* et pietātem, *cultivate justice and piety.*

§ 63. The Second (or Future) Imperative looks forward to contingent fulfilment (Relative Imperative), and is chiefly used in laws, legal documents, maxims, and the like:

*Signa tibī dīcam, tū condita mente *tenētō* (VIRG.), *I will tell you the signs—do thou* (thereupon) *keep them stored in your mind;* rēgiō imperiō duo *sunto, there shall be two* (*officers*) *with royal power;* cônsulēs *appellantor, they shall be called consuls;* nēminī *parento, they are to obey no one;* illīs salūs populī suprēma lêx *esto, to them the welfare of the people must be the paramount law;* coelestia semper spectāto, *always look to heavenly things.*

Digitized by Google

NEGATIVE OF THE IMPERATIVE.

§ 64. The regular negative of the Imperative is NĒ (NĒVE, NEU), which is found with the Second Imperative; with the First Imperative, in poetry only.

*Tū nē cēde malīs sed contrā audentior ītō (VIRG.), *do thou not yield to misfortunes, but go more boldly* (than ever) *to meet them;* hominem mortuum in urbe nēve sepelīto nēve ūrito, *thou shalt not bury nor burn a dead man in the city;* impius nē audēto plācāre dōnīs īram deōrum, *the impious man must not dare attempt to appease by gifts the anger of the gods.*

PERIPHRASES.

§ 65. CŪRĀ UT, *take care that,* FAC UT, *cause that,* FAC, *do,* with the subjunctive, are common circumlocutions for the Positive Imperative.

CAVĔ NĒ, *beware lest,* and CAVĔ with the subjunctive, and NŌLĪ, *be unwilling,* with the Infinitive for the Negative or Prohibitive Imperative.

Cūrā ut quam prīmum (§ 117) veniās, *manage to come as soon as possible; fac* habeās spem bonam, *do have good hope; cavĕ* festīnēs, *do not be in a hurry.* **Nēve* puellārum lacrimās moveāre *cavētō* (OV.), *beware of letting yourself be moved by girls' tears.* **Nōlī* vexāre: quiēscit (JUV.), *don't disturb her: she's sleeping.*

REPRESENTATIVES OF THE POSITIVE IMPERATIVE.

§ 66. Instead of the Positive Imperative, may be employed:

1. The Second Person of the Future Indicative;
2. The Third Person of the Present Subjunctive:

Faciēs, ut sciam, *let me know;* vīvēs, *live on.* *Quod quis habet dominae *cônferat* omne suae (OV.), *let a man give every thing that he has to his lady-love.* *Quaedam cum prīmā *resecentur* crīmina barbā (JUV.), *let some faults be trimmed with the first beard.*

Digitized by Google

REPRESENTATIVES OF THE NEGATIVE IMPERATIVE.

§ 67. Instead of the Negative (Prohibitive) Imperative, may be employed:

The Second Person of the Perfect Subjunctive, with NĒ;

The Second Person of the Future, with NŌN;

The Third Person of the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, with NĒ:

Hoc facito, hoc *nē fēceris, this do, that leave undone;* nōn cessābis, *you shall not be idle;* puer tēlum *nē habeat, a boy is not to have a deadly weapon; nē* metus quemquam *cēperit, let not fear take possession of any one.*

REMARK.—The negative NŌN is often used in poetry for NĒ, and NEQUE, NEC for NĒVE, NEU, *Aut *nōn tentāris* aut perfice (Ov.), *either do not try* (at all), *or effect* (your object). **Nec*, si quem fallēs, tu perjūrāre *timēto* (Ov.), *nor if you* (shall try to) *deceive a man, do you fear to forswear yourself.*

§ 68. The Second Person Singular of the Present Subjunctive is used both positively and negatively; but in prose, only of an imaginary subject ("*you*"):

Injūriās fortūnae dēfugiendō *relinquās, the wrongs of fortune you may escape by flight.* *"Actum" ājunt "*nē agās*" (TER.), "*You must not do,*" *they say,* "*what has been* (already) *done.*"

§ 69. Passionate questions are equivalent to a command: nōn tacēs? *won't you hold your tongue?* quīn tacēs? *why don't you hold your tongue?*

*Cūr nōn ut plēnus vītae convīva recēdis?—LUCR. *Why do you not withdraw as a guest sated with life?*

§ 70. SUMMARY OF IMPERATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS.

Positive.

2d P. AUDĪ, *hear thou;* audīto (legal); audiēs; audiās (ideal 2d Person).

3d P. audīto (legal), *let him hear;* AUDIAT.

Digitized by Google

Negative.

2d P. nē audī, *hear not* (poetic); nē audīto (legal); nōn audiēs; nē audiās (ideal); NĒ AUDĪVERIS; NŌLĪ AUDĪRE.

3d P. nē audīto (legal); NĒ AUDIAT; NĒ AUDĪVERIT.

Tenses of the Moods and Verbal Nouns.

§ 71. The Indicative alone expresses directly the period of time (§ 21). The other moods and verbal nouns express the stage of the action *directly*, the period of time *indirectly*.

§ 72. The Present and Imperfect Subjunctive have to do with *continued* action, the Perfect and Pluperfect with *completed* action. The Perfect Subjunctive is also used to express the *attainment*. See § 304.

§ 73. The Subjunctive has no future, owing to its close relationship to that tense, which it often represents in dependent discourse (§ 297).

§ 74. The Imperative is necessarily future. § 61, R.

§ 75. The Present Infinitive has to do with *continued* action. It is the common form of the Infinitive, used as a noun.

The Perfect Infinitive has to do with *completed* action, and is also used to express *attainment*.

§ 76. As a noun, the Perfect Infinitive is comparatively little used. As a subject, it is found chiefly in abstract phrases and fixed expressions: **Contendîsse* decōrum est (Ov.), *to have struggled is honorable; quiêsse* melius erit, *it will be better to have kept, to be, quiet.* So with decuit, *it became;* oportuit, *it behooved;* and the like (§ 49). Tunc decuit *flêsse, that was the time when it would have been becoming to weep.* As an object, it is found only in the poets (after the fashion of the Greek Aorist Infinitive): **Frâtrēs* tendentēs opācō Pēlion *imposuîsse* Olympō (HOR.), *the brothers striving to pile Pelion on shady Olympus.*

§ 77. The Present Infinitive represents the Present Indicative after a Principal Tense, and the Imperfect after a Histori-

Digitized by Google

cal Tense: dīco eum venīre, *I say that he is coming;* dīcēbam eum venīre, *I said that he was coming.*

The Perfect Infinitive represents the Perfect and Imperfect Indicative after a Principal Tense: dīco eum vēnîsse, *I say that he came, has come, used to come;* and the Pluperfect Indicative after a Historical Tense: dîxī eum vēnîsse, *I said that he had come.*

REMARK.—Meminī, *I remember,* when use of personal experience commonly takes the present; Meminī Pamphilum mihi nârrāre, *I remember Pamphilus telling me, that Pamphilus told me.*

§ 78. The Present Participle (Active) denotes *continuance:* the Perfect Passive, *completion* or *attainment.*

REMARK.—The Perfect Participle is often used where we should employ a Present: ratus, *thinking;* complexus, *embracing;* hortātus, *exhorting.*

§ 79. The Future Participle is a verbal adjective, denoting capability and tendency, chiefly employed in the older language with sum, *I am,* as a periphrastic tense. In later Latin it is used freely, just as the Present and Perfect Participles, to express subordinate relations.

II.—SIMPLE SENTENCE EXPANDED.

The sentence may be expanded by the *multiplication* or by the *qualification* of the subject.

A.

1. MULTIPLICATION OF THE SUBJECT.

Concord.

RULE.

§ 80. The common predicate of two or more subjects is put in the plural number: jūs et injūria nātūrā *dîjūdicantur,*

Digitized by Google

right and wrong are distinguished by nature; pater et avus *mortuī sunt, father and grandfather are dead.*

Exceptions.—1. The common predicate may agree with a singular subject when that subject is the nearest or the most important (My strength and my heart *faileth*—Ps. lxxiii. 26): Homērus *fuit* et Hēsiodus ante Rōmam conditam, *Homer lived and* (so did) *Hesiod before the founding of Rome.*

2. Two abstracts in combination, when they are conceived as a unit, take a singular verb (When distress and anguish *cometh* upon you—Prov. i. 27): senātus populusque Rōmānus *intelligit, the senate and people of Rome perceives = Rome perceives.*

Rule.

§ 81. When the genders of combined subjects are different, the adjective predicate takes either the strongest gender or the nearest. In things with life, the masculine gender is the strongest; in things without life, the neuter. When things with life and things without life are combined, the gender of the things with life is preferred:

Pater mihi (§ 143) et māter *mortuī* sunt, *father and mother have been lost to me by death;* mūrus et porta dē coelō *tacta* erant, *wall and gate had been struck by lightning; convicta* est Messalīna et Sīlius, *Messalina was convicted and* (so was) *Silius;* rēx rēgiaque classis *prŏfectī* sunt, *the king and the king's fleet set out.*

Remark.—On the use of the neuter as a predicate see § 9: *īra et avāritia* imperiō *potentiōra* erant, *anger and avarice were stronger* (things) *than command;* nox atque *praeda* hostēs *remorāta* erant, *night and plunder* (were the things that) *had delayed the enemy.*

§ 82. A singular subject combined with another word by cum, *with*, is treated sometimes as a singular, sometimes as a plural: Māgo cum omnibus ferē armātīs *refūgerat, Mago with almost all the armed men had retreated;* Taurus cum quinque vaccīs ūnō ictū fulminis *exanimātī sunt, a bull and five cows were killed by one stroke of lightning.*

Digitized by Google

Rule.

§ 83. When the persons of combined subjects are different, the First Person is preferred to the Second, the Second to the Third: sī tū et Tullia *valētis*, ego et Cicero *valēmus*, *if Tullia and you are well, Cicero and I are well.*

☞ Observe the order of the example. ☜

Exception.—In contrasts, and when each person is considered separately, the predicate agrees with the person of the nearest subject: ego tē, tū mē ferēs, *I will endure you, you me;* et ego et Cicero meus flāgitābit, *My Cicero will demand it and* (so will) *I.*

2. Qualification of the Subject.

§ 84. The subject may be qualified by giving it an attribute. An attribute is that which serves to give a specific character.

The chief forms of the attribute are:

I. The adjective (amicus certus, *a sure friend*) and its equivalents.

II. The substantive in apposition: Cicero ōrātor, *Cicero the orator.*

Remark.—The equivalents of the adjective are: 1. The pronouns, hic, *this*, ille, *that*, &c. 2. Substantives denoting *rank*, *age*, *trade:* servus homo, *a slave person;* homo senex, *an old fellow;* homo gladiātor, *a gladiator-fellow;* mulier ancilla, *a servant-wench.* 3. The genitive (§ 155). 4. The ablative (§ 198). 5. Preposition and case: excessus ē vītā, *departure from life.* 6. Adverbs chiefly with participial nouns: rectē facta, *good actions.* 7. Relative clauses (§ 292).

Concord.

Rule.

§ 85. The Adjective Attribute agrees with its substantive, in gender, number, and case: vir sapiēns, *a wise man;* mulier pulchra, *a beautiful woman;* alta moenia, *lofty walls;* meī honōris, *of my honor;* fīlium tuum, *thy son*, &c.

Digitized by Google

Rule.

§ 86. The common attribute of two or more substantives agrees with the nearest: *all lands and seas, omnēs* agrī et maria; agrī et maria *omnia.*

Remarks.—1. The Latin language repeats the common attribute more frequently than the English: *omnēs* agrī et *omnia* maria, *all lands and (all) seas.* Generally, the Latin language has a strong tendency to rhetorical repetition.

2. A common surname is put in the plural: M. et Q. Cicerōnēs, *Marcus and Quintus Cicero;* G., Gn., M. Carbōnēs, *Gaius, Gnaeus,* (and) *Marcus Carbo;* otherwise, M. Cicero et Q. Cicero, *Marcus and Quintus Cicero.*

Position of the Attribute.

§ 87. When the Attribute is emphatic, it is commonly put before the substantive: *fugitīvus* servus, *a runaway slave;* (servus *fugitīvus, a slave* that is *a runaway*).

Remark.—The superlatives which denote order and sequence in time and space are often used partitively, and then generally precede their substantive: summa aqua, *the surface of the water;* summus mōns, *the top of the mountain;* vēre prīmō, prīmō vēre, *in the beginning of spring;* in mediā urbe, *in the midst of the city.* So also, reliqua, cētera Graecia, *the rest of Greece.*

Exceptions.—Certain expressions have become fixed formulæ; such as, cīvis Rōmānus, *Roman citizen;* populus Rōmānus, *people of Rome.*

§ 88. When the Attribute belongs to two or more words, it is placed sometimes before them all, sometimes after them all, sometimes after the first: *all lands and seas, omnēs* agrī et maria; agrī et maria *omnia;* agrī *omnēs* et maria.

Peculiar Forms of the Adjective Attribute.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

The Demonstrative and other Adjective Pronouns present important peculiarities.

Digitized by Google

REMARK.—For the sake of convenience, the substantive use will be considered at the same time.

§ 89. HĬC, *this* (the Demonstrative of the First Person), refers to *that which is nearer the speaker*, and may mean: 1. The speaker himself: *hic* homo = ego. 2. The judges in a suit at law: sī ego *hōs* nōvī, *if I know these men* (= the bench). 3. The most important subject immediately in hand: *hic* sapiēns dē quō loquor, *this* (imaginary) *wise man of whom I am speaking.* 4. That in which the speaker is peculiarly interested: *hoc* studium, *this pursuit of mine, of ours.* 5. That which has just been mentioned: *haec* hâctenus, *these things thus far = so much for that.* 6. Very frequently, that which is about to be mentioned: *hīs* conditiōnibus, *on the following terms.* 7. The current period of time: *hic* diēs, *today; haec* nox, *the night just past* or *just coming; hic* mênsis, *the current month.*

§ 90. ISTE, *that* (of thine, of yours), refers to *that which belongs more peculiarly to the Second Person.* (Demonstrative of the Second Person): perfer *istam* mīlitiam, *endure that military service of yours;* adventū tuō *ista* subsêllia vacuē facta sunt, *at your approach the benches in your neighborhood were vacated.*

REMARK.—The supposed contemptuous character of ISTE arises from the refusal to take any direct notice of the Second Person.

§ 91. ILLE, *that* (the Demonstrative of the Third Person), denotes *that which is more remote from the speaker*, and is often used in contrast to HIC, *this:* * Heu quantum *haec* Niobē Niobā distābat ab *illā* (Ov.), *Alas! how far this Niobe differed from that Niobe.* ILLE may mean: 1. That which has been previously mentioned (often: ILLE QUIDEM): *illud* quod initiō vōbīs prōposuī, *that which I propounded to you at first.* 2. That which is well known, notorious (often put after the substantive): testula *illa*, *that* (notorious) *potsherd = institution of ostracism; illud* Solōnis, *that* (famous saying) *of Solon's.*

Digitized by Google

3. That which is to be recalled: *illud* imprimīs mīrābile, *that* (which I am going to remind you of) *is especially wonderful.* 4. That which is expected: * *Illa* diēs veniet mea quā lūgubria pōnam (Ov.), *the day will come when I shall lay aside* (cease) *my mournful strains.*

§ 92. HIC and ILLE are used together in contrasts; as, *the latter—the former, the former—the latter.* When both are matters of indifference the natural signification is observed: HIC, *the latter;* ILLE, *the former.* When the former is the more important, HIC is *the former,* ILLE *the latter:*

Ignāvia corpus hebetat, labor firmat; *illa* mātūram senectūtem, *hic* longam adolêscentiam reddit, *laziness weakens the body, toil strengthens it; the one* (the former) *hastens old age; the other* (the latter) *prolongs youth.* Melior tūtiorque (§ 7) certa pâx quam spērāta victōria; *haec* in nôstrā, *illa* in deōrum manū est, *better and safer the certainty of peace than the hope of victory; the former is in our power, the latter in the power of the gods.*

§ 93. HIC ET ILLE; ILLE ET ILLE; ILLE AUT ILLE, *this man and* (or) *that man = one or two;* nōn dīcam *hoc* signum ablātum esse et *illud,* hoc dīco, nullum tē signum relīquîsse, *I will not say that this image was taken off and that;* (what) *I say* (is) *this, that you left no image at all.*

REMARK.—The derived adverbs retain the personal relations of hic, iste, ille, hīc, *here* (where I am); hinc, *hence* (from where I am); hūc, *hither* (where I am); istīc, *there* (where you are); illīc *there* (where he is), &c.

§ 94. Is, *that,* is the most general demonstrative, and the regular antecedent of the relative: mihi obviam vēnit tuus puer; *is* mihi lîtterās abs tē reddidit, *I was met by your servant; he delivered to me a letter from you; eum* quī palam est adversārius facile cavendō vītāre possīs (§ 54), *a man who is an open enemy you can readily avoid by caution.*

REMARKS.—1. Is, as the antecedent of the relative, is often omitted,

Digitized by Google

chiefly in the Nominative, more rarely in an oblique case: bis dat quī citŏ dat, *he gives twice who gives in a trice.* (§ 414)

2. Is, with a copulative or adversative particle, is used as *he* or *that* in English, for the purpose of emphasis: such expressions are; ET IS, ATQUE IS, ISQUE, *and he too, and that too;* NEQUE IS, ET IS NŌN, *and he not, and that not;* SED IS, *but he,* further strengthened by QUIDEM, *indeed;* exempla quaerimus *et ea* nōn antīqua, *we are looking for examples, and those, too, not of ancient date;* ūnā in domō *et eā quidem* angustā, *in one house and that a narrow one.*

3. Is does not represent a noun before a Genitive, as in the English *that of.* In Latin the noun is omitted, or repeated, or a word of like meaning substituted: flēbat pater dē fīliī mortē, dē patris fīlius, *the father was weeping for the death of his son, the son for that of his father;* nulla est celeritās quae possit (§ 426) cum animī celeritāte contendere, *there is no speed that can possibly vie with that of the mind;* M. Coelius tribūnal suum juxtā G. Trēbōnī sēllam collocāvit, *Marcus Coelius placed his chair of office near that of Gaius Trebonius.* (But HIC, ISTE, and ILLE can be used before Genitives.)

§ 95. Akin to IS is the Reflexive Pronoun SUĪ SIBĪ SĒ. Instead of the Genitives ĒJUS, EŌRUM, EĀRUM, EŌRUM, the Possessive of the Reflexive SUUS, SUA, SUUM, is employed when reference is made to the subject of the sentence: Alexander moriēns ânnulum *suum* dederat Perdiccae, *Alexander* (when) *dying had given his ring to Perdiccas.* * Quod quis habet dominae cônferat omne *suae* (Ov.). (§ 66.)

On the other hand: Deum agnôscis ex operibus *ējus, God you recognize by his works.*

The same principle applies to the other cases of Is and of the Reflexive. Hence the general

RULE.

§ 96. The forms of the Reflexive Pronoun are used when reference is made to the subject of the sentence: ipse *sē* quisque dīligit, *everybody loves himself.*

REMARKS.—1. SUUS, when used in an emphatic sense (*own, peculiar, proper*), may refer to another case than that of the subject: Hannibalem

Digitized by Google

suī cīvēs ē cīvitāte ējēcērunt, *Hannibal's own countrymen exiled him;* jûstitia *suum* cuīque distribuit, *justice gives each man that is his own = his due;* * Inque *suōs* voluī cōgere verba pedēs (Ov.), *I wished to force the words into their proper feet* (places in the verse); *suō* tempore, *at the proper, fitting time;* compare: * Pugna *suum* fīnem quum jacet hostis habet (Ov.), *a fight has reached its real end when the enemy is prostrated.* (§ 101, R.)

2. In dependent sentences the reflexive is used with reference either to the principal or to the subordinate subject. See § 307.

§ 97. Īdem, *the same*, is used to unite two or more attributes or predicates on a person or thing.

Īdem is often to be translated by *at the same time; likewise, also; yet, notwithstanding.*

Cimōn incidit in *eandem* invidiam quam pater, *Cimon fell into the same odium as his father;* quidquid honestum est *idem* est ūtile, *whatever is honorable is also* (at the same time) *useful;* * Nīl prōdest quod nōn laedere possit (§ 425) *idem* (Ov.), *nothing helps that may not likewise hurt;* Epicūrus, quum optimam et praestantissimam nātūram deī dīcat esse, negat *īdem* esse in deō grātiam, *although Epicurus says that the nature of God is transcendently good and great, yet* (at the same time) *he says that there is no feeling of kindness in God;* * Difficilis facilis, jūcundus acerbus, es *īdem* (Mart.), *hard to deal with* (and) *easy to deal with, sweet* (and) *sour, are you at once.*

Remarks.—1. *The same as* is expressed by īdem with quī, with atque or ac, with ut, with cum, and poetically with the Dative: *eandem* Rōmānī causam bellī cum Bocchō habent *quam* cum Jugurthā, *the Romans have the same cause for war with Bocchus as with Jugurtha;* est animus erga te *īdem ac* fuit (Ter.), *her feelings toward you are the same as they were;* disputātiōnem expōnimus *eīsdem* ferē verbīs *ut* actum disputātumque est, *we are setting forth the discussion in very much the same words in which it was carried on;* tibi *mēcum* in *eōdem* pistrīnō vīvendum, *you have to live in the same treadmill with me;* * Invītum quī servat *idem* facit *occīdentī* (Hor.), *he who saves a man*('s life) *against his will, does the same thing as one who kills him* (— as if he killed him).

2. Īdem cannot be used with is, of which it is only a stronger form (is + dem).

Digitized by Google

§ 98. IPSE, *self*, is the distinctive pronoun, and separates a subject or an object from all others: *Ipse* fēcī, *I myself did it and none other, I alone did it, I did it of my own accord, I am the very man that did it;* nunc *ipsum, at this very instant; at this precise moment;* Conōn nōn quaesīvit § (415) ubi *ipse* tutō vīveret, sed unde praesidiō esse posset cīvibus suīs, *Conon did not seek a place to live in safely himself, but a place from which he could be of assistance to his countrymen;* valvae subitō *sē ipsae* aperuērunt, *the folding-doors suddenly opened of their own accord;* Cato mortuus est annīs octōgintā sex *ipsīs* ante Cicerōnem cônsulem, *Cato died precisely* 86 *years before Cicero's consulship.*

REMARK.—Owing to this distinctive character, IPSE is often used of *persons* in opposition to *things; riders* in opposition to *horses; inhabitants* in opposition to the *towns* which they inhabit; the *master* of the house in opposition to his *household:* * Maxima poena mihi est *ipsum* offendîsse (Ov.), *it is my greatest punishment to have offended* HIM (the Emperor).

§ 99. IPSE, ET IPSE (= etiam) is used when a new subject takes an old predicate, or a new substantive an old adjective: Locrī urbs dêscīverat *et ipsa* ad Poenōs, *the city* (of) *Locri had likewise* (as well as the other cities) *fallen over to the Punics;* Camillus ex Volscīs in Aequōs trânsiit *et ipsōs* bellum mōlientēs, *Camillus went across from the Volscians to the Aequians, who were likewise* (as well as the Volscians) *getting up a war.*

§ 100. IPSE is used to lay stress on the reflexive relation; in the Nominative when the subject is emphatic, in the Oblique Cases when the object is emphatic: sē *ipse* laudat, *he* (and not another) *praises himself;* sē *ipsum* laudat, *he praises himself* (and not another); nōn egeo medicīnā; mē *ipse* cônsōlor, *I do not need medicine; I comfort myself* (I am my only comforter); omnibus potius quam *ipsīs* nōbīs cônsuluimus, *we have consulted the interest of all rather than our own.* Exceptions are common: * Qui, que aliīs cāvit nōn cavet *ipse* sibī (Ov.), *and he who took precautions for others takes none for himself.*

Digitized by Google

REMARK.—The Demonstrative Pronouns HIC, ISTE, ILLE, IS, are often strengthened by QUIDEM, *indeed*. The sentence often requires that either the demonstrative or the particle be left untranslated: optāre *hoc quidem* est, nōn docēre, *that indeed is wishing, not teaching;* nihil perfertur ad nōs praeter rūmōrēs satis *istōs quidem* cōnstantēs sed adhūc sine auctōre, *nothing is brought to us except reports, quite consistent, it is true, but thus far not authoritative.*

Possessive Pronouns.

§ 101. The Possessive Pronouns are more rarely used in Latin than in English, and chiefly for the purpose of contrast or clearness: manūs lavā et coenā, *wash* (your) *hands and dine;* praedia *mea* tū possidēs, ego *aliēnā* misericordiā vīvo, *you are in possession of my estates* (while) *I live on the charity of others.*

REMARK.—Observe the intense use of the Possessive in the sense of *property, peculiarity, fitness: suum* esse, *to belong to one's self;* tempore *tuō* pugnāstī, *you have fought at your own time* (= when you wished); ego ânnō meō cônsul factus sum, *I was made consul in my own year* (= the first year in which I could be made consul). Comp. § 96, R. 1.

Indefinite Pronouns.

§ 102. QUĪDAM means *one, a, a certain one* (not more particularly designated): *quīdam* rhētor, *a certain rhetorician.*

QUĪDAM is often used with or without QUASI, *as if*, to modify an expression: *quoddam* commūne vinculum, *a* (certain) *common bond;* nōn sunt istī audiendī quī virtūtem dūram et *quasi ferream quandam* esse volunt, *those friends of yours are not to be listened to who will have virtue to be hard, and as it were made of iron.*

§ 103. ALIQUIS (ALIQUĪ, p. 43) means, *some one, any one, some one or other;* fēcit hoc *aliquis* tuī similis, *some one or other like you did this; aliquī* scrūpus, *some scruple or other;* sum *aliquis, aliquid, I am somebody = a person of importance, something = of some weight,* opposed to: nullus sum, nihil

Digitized by Google

sum, *I am a nobody, nothing;* * Est *aliquid* fātāle malum per verba levāre, Ov., *it is something to relieve the fated misfortune by words.*

§ 104. QUIS (QUĪ, p. 43), fainter than ALIQUIS, is used chiefly in relative sentences and after QUUM, *when*, SĪ, *if*, NĒ *lest*, NUM, *whether*, QUŌ (*the* . . § 196). *Nē quid* nimis! *nothing in excess! Sī quid* in tē peccāvī, ignōsce, *if I have committed any offence against you, forgive.* * Quod *quis* habet dominae cōnferat omne suae (§ 95).

§ 105. QUISPIAM is rarer than ALIQUIS, but not to be distinguished from it, except that QUISPIAM is never found in negative sentences: dixerit *quispiam, some one may say.*

§ 106. QUISQUE means *each one:* laudātī sunt omnēs dōnātīque prō meritō *quisque, all were praised and rewarded, each one according to his desert.* QUISQUE is frequently combined with superlatives and ordinals: optimus *quisque, every good man;* quintō *quōque* annō, *every fifth year.*

§ 107. QUISQUE is always postpositive: ipse sē *quisque* dīligit (§ 96); suum *cuīque* (§ 95, R. 1).

§ 108. ALTER and ALIUS are both translated *other, another*, but ALTER refers to number (one of two), ALIUS to kind: sōlus aut cum *alterō, alone or with* (only) *one other; alter* Nero, *a second Nero;* Āgēsilāus claudus fuit *alterō* pede, *Agesilaus was lame of one foot;* **alterā* manū fert lapidem, pānem ostentat *alterā*, PLAUT., *In one hand he carries a stone, in the other he holds out bread; alter alterum* quaerit, *one* (definite person) *seeks another* (definite person); *alius alium* quaerit, *one person* (of one kind) *seeks another* (of another kind); alterī, —alterī, *one party—another party* (already defined); aliī—aliī, *some—others:* Mors nec ad vīvōs pertinet nec ad mortuōs: *alterī* nullī (§ 110, R. 2) sunt, *alterōs* nōn attinget, *Death concerns neither the living nor the dead: the latter are not, the former it will not touch.*

§ 109. QUISQUAM and ULLUS (adjective) mean *any one* (at all), and are used chiefly in negative sentences, in sentences

Digitized by Google

that imply negation, and in sweeping conditions: Jûstitia nunquam nocet *cuīquam*, *Justice never hurts anybody;* Quis unquam Graecōrum rhētorum ā Thūcȳdide *quidquam* duxit? *What Greek rhetorician ever drew any thing from Thucydides* [None]; Sī *quisquam*, ille sapiēns fuit, *If any one at all* (was) *wise, he was;* Est *ulla* rēs tantī, ut virī bonī et splendōrem et nōmen amittās? *Is any thing of such importance as that you should lose* (for its sake) *the splendid title of a good man?*

§ 110. The negative of QUISQUAM is NĒMO, *nobody*, which, however, is sometimes used as an adjective: nēmo discipulus, *no scholar.* The negative of ULLUS is NULLUS, *no, none*, which is also used regularly as a substantive in the genitive and ablative instead of NĒMINIS and NĒMINE (p. 30).

REMARK.—1. On NEQUE QUISQUAM and ET NĒMO, see § 262.

2. NULLUS is used in familiar language instead of NŌN: nullus vēnit, *he did not come.*

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

The adjective attribute further presents peculiarities in the way of comparison.

§ 111. The comparative degree generally takes a term of comparison either with QUAM, *than*, or with the Ablative (§195): Ignōrātio futūrōrum malōrum ūtilior est *quam* scientia, *ignorance of future events is better than knowledge* (of them). Tullus Hostilius ferōcior etiam Rōmulō fuit, *Tullus Hostilius was fiercer even than Romulus.*

REMARK 1.—The Ablative is used only when the word with QUAM would stand in the Nom. or Acc.

Caesar minor est { quam Pompêjus, *Caesar is younger than Pompey.* / Pompêjō.

Caesarem magis amāmus { quam Pompêjum, *we love Caesar more than* Pompey. / Pompêjō.

But—

Caesarī magis favēmus quam Pompêjō, *we favor Caesar more than* Pompey (§ 436).

Digitized by Google

2. The Ablative is very common in negative sentences, and is used exclusively in negative relative sentences.

* Nōn adeō cecidī quamvīs dējectus ut īnfrā tē quoque sim, īnferius quō nihil esse potest, Ov., *I have not fallen so far, however cast down, as to be beneath you, than whom nothing can be lower.*

3. Measure of difference is put in the ablative. § 194.

4. QUAM is often omitted after PLŪS, *more*, and MINUS, *less*.

Hominī miserō plūs quingentōs colaphōs īnfrēgit (§ 129, R. 1) mihī, TER., *He has administered to me, poor wretch, more than five hundred sound boxes on the ear.*

5. On the combination of the comparative with opīniōne, *opinion*, spē, *hope*, and the like. § 195 R, 1.

6. Atque for quam is poetical.

Standard of Comparison omitted.

§ 112. When the standard of comparison is omitted, it is supplied

1. By the context.
2. By the usual or proper standard.
3. By the opposite.

1. *By the context:* Solent rēgēs Persārum *plūrēs* uxōrēs habēre, *The kings of Persia usually have more wives* [than one].

2. *By the proper standard:* senectūs est nātūrā *loquācior, old age is naturally rather*, (or) *too, talkative.*

3. *By the opposite:* nōnne fuit *melius? Would it not have been better* [than otherwise]?

Disproportion.

§ 113. Disproportion is expressed by the comparative with QUAM PRŌ, *than for*, and the Ablative, or with UT, *that*, or QUĪ, *who*, and the subjunctive: *Minor* caedēs *quam prō* tantā victōriā, *the loss was* (*too*) *small for so great a victory;* ingenium *majus quam ut* comparētur, *a genius too great to be compared;* **Major* sum *quam cuī* possit Fortūna nocēre, Ov., *I am too great for Fortune possibly to hurt me.*

Digitized by Google

Two Qualities compared.

§ 114. When two qualities of the same substantive are compared, we find either MAGIS and QUAM with the positive or a double comparative: Celer tuus disertus *magis* est *quam* sapiēns, *your* (friend) *Celer is eloquent rather than wise—more eloquent than wise;* Paullī cōncio fuit *vērior* quam *grātior* populō, *Paullus's speech was more true than popular.*

REMARK.—There is no distinction to be made between the two expressions. In the latter, the second comparative is merely attracted into the same form as the first. The same rule applies to the adverb: fortius quam fēlīcius, *with more bravery than good luck.*

§ 115. When but two objects are compared, the comparative exhausts the degrees of comparison, whereas, in English, the superlative is employed, unless the idea of duality is emphatic: nātū *major*, *the eldest* (of two), *the elder;* nātū *minor*, *the youngest*, *the younger;* prior, *the first;* posterior, *the last.* Exceptions are rare.

REMARK.—The same rule applies to the interrogative UTER, *which of two? (whether?):* Quæritur *uter* dignior sit? *The question is, which of the two (whether of the twain) is the worthier?* (not quis, *who, which?*)

Superlative.

§ 116. The Latin superlative is generally to be rendered by the English positive, unless a standard of comparison is given: Quintus Fabius *Maximus*, *Q. F. the Great.* *Tam fēlīx ēssēs quam *formōsissima* vellem, Ov., *I could wish you were as happy as* (you are) *beautiful.*

Superlative strengthened.

§ 117. The superlative is strengthened by LONGĒ, *by far;* MULTŌ, *much;* VEL, *even;* ŪNUS, ŪNUS OMNIUM, *one above all others;* QUAM QUANTUS—POTUIT, *as—as possible;* longē hūmānissimī, *by far the most cultivated;* vel minima, *even the smallest things;* quam aequissimus locus, *as favorable a position as*

Digitized by Google

possible (= tam aequus quam aequissimus); urbs ūna mihi amīcissima, *a city friendly above all others to me.*

Apposition.

By apposition one substantive is placed by the side of another, which contains it: Cicero ōrātor, *Cicero the orator.*

Concord.

Rule.

§ 118. The word in apposition agrees wit the principal word in number and case, and as far as it can in gender: Hērodotus pater historiae, *Herodotus the father of History;* Gen. Hērodotī patris; D. Hērodotō patrī historiae, &c.: *Athēnae* omnium doctrīnārum *inventrīcēs, Athens the inventor of all branches of learning.* Comp. § 8.

Remarks.—1. The predicate sometimes agrees with the word in apposition: Cōriolī oppidum captum est, *Corioli-town was taken.*

2. The Possessive Pronoun takes the Genitive in apposition: nōmen meum absentis, *my name* (while) *absent;* meā ūnīus operā, *by my exertions alone.*

Partitive Apposition.

§ 119. Partitive Apposition is that form of apposition in which a part is taken out of the whole: cētera *multitūdo* sorte *decimus quisque* ad supplicium lectī sunt, (of) *the rest of the crowd every tenth man was chosen by lot for punishment.*

Distributive Apposition.

§ 120. Distributive Apposition is that form of apposition in which the whole is subdivided into its parts, chiefly with ALTER—ALTER, *the one—the other;* QUISQUE, *each one;* ALIĪ—ALIĪ, *some—others.* Duae *filiae altera* occīsa *altera* capta est, (of) *two daughters, the one was killed, the other captured.*

The Partitive Genitive is more commonly employed than either of these forms of apposition.

Digitized by Google

Mihi nomen est.

§ 121. Instead of the apposition with NŌMEN, *name*, the name of the person is more frequently attracted into the Dative.

My name is Cicero
1. Mihi *Cicerōnī* nomen est; most common.
2. Mihi nōmen *Cicero* est; less common.
3. Mihi nōmen *Cicerōnis* est; least common. (§ 156.)

§ 122. Sometimes an accusative stands in apposition to a whole preceding sentence: admoneor ut aliquid etiam dē sepultūrā dīcendum exīstimem; *rem nōn difficilem, I am reminded that something is to be said about burial—an easy matter.*

Predicative Attribution and Predicative Apposition.

§ 123. Any case may be followed by the same case in Predicative Attribution or Apposition, which differ from the ordinary Attribution or Apposition in translation only:

NOMINATIVE: Fīlius salvus rediit.

Ordinary Attribution: *The well son returned.*

Predicative Attribution: *The son returned well—(He was well when he returned).*

Hercules juvenis leōnem interfēcit.

Ordinary Apposition: *Hercules the young man slew a lion.*

Predicative Attribution: *Hercules, when a young man slew a lion—(He was a young man when he slew a lion.)*

GENITIVE: Potestās ējus adhibendae uxōris, *The permission to take her to wife.*

DATIVE: Amīcō vīvō nōn subvēnīstī, *You did not help your friend* (while he was) *alive.*

ACCUSATIVE: Hercules cervam vīvam cēpit.

Ordinary Attribution: *Hercules caught a living doe.*

Predicative Attribution: *Hercules caught a doe alive.*

ABLATIVE: Athēniēnsēs Miltiade duce ūsī sunt, *The Athenians employed Miltiades as their leader.*

Digitized by Google

REMARKS—1. Victōrēs rediērunt may mean, *the conquerors returned*, or *they returned conquerors;* and a similar predicative use is to be noticed in īdem, *the same;* Iīdem abeunt quī vēnerant, *they go away just as they had come* (literally, *the same persons as they had come*).

2. Notice especially such phrases as: ante Cicerōnem cônsulem, *before Cicero as consul*, i.e., *before Cicero's consulship.*

3. Do not confound the "as" of apposition with the "as" of comparison—UT, QUASI, TANQUAM (comp. § 460).

4. When especial stress is laid on the Adjective or Substantive predicate, in combination with the verbal predicate, it is well to resolve the sentence into its elements: Themistoclēs ūnus restitit, *Themistocles alone withstood*, i. e., *Themistocles was the only one that withstood.* Argonautae *prīmī* in Pontum Euxīnum intrāvērunt, *the Argonauts first, were the first, who entered the Euxine (Black) Sea—were the first to enter the Black Sea.* **Ūna* salūs victīs nullam sperāre salūtem, VIRG., *The only safety which the vanquished have, is to hope for none;* *Fragilem trucī commīsit pelagō rātem *prīmus*, HOR., *He was the first to trust his frail bark to the wild waves.*

5. The English idiom often uses the adverb and adverbial expressions instead of the Latin adjective: so in adjectives of *inclination* and *disinclination*, *knowledge* and *ignorance*, of *order* and *position*, of *time* and *season*, and of temporary condition generally: libēns, *with pleasure;* volēns, *willing(ly);* nōlēns, *unwilling(ly);* invītus, *against one's will;* prūdēns, *aware;* imprūdēns, *unawares;* sciēns, *knowing(ly);* prīmus, prior, *first;* ultimus, *last;* medius, *in the middle;* hodiernus, *to-day;* mātūtīnus, *in the morning;* frequēns, *frequent(ly);* sublīmis, *aloft.* *Ōdero sī poterō, si nōn, invītus amābo. OV. *Plūs hodiē bonī fēcī imprūdēns quam sciēns ante hunc diem unquam, TER. *I have done more good to-day unawares than I have ever done knowingly before;* Medius pōnor, *I am put in the middle;* quī prior strinxerit ferrum ējus victōria erit, *who draws the sword first, his shall be the victory;* *Vespertīnus pete tectum. HOR., *Seek thy dwelling at eventide;* *Rārus venit in coenācula mīles. JUV., *The soldiery rarely comes into the garret.* So also tōtus, *wholly;* Philosophiae nōs tōtōs trādimus, *we give ourselves wholly to philosophy;* sōlī hoc contingit sapientī, *this happens to the wise man alone—it is only the wise man who has this good luck.*

6. Carefully to be distinguished are the uses of prīmus and the adverbs prīmum, *first, for the first time*, and prīmō, *at first:*

PRĪMUS: Ego *prīmus* hanc ōrātiōnem lēgī, *I was the first to read this speech.* Hanc *prīmam* ōrātiōnem lēgī, *this was the first speech that I read.*

Digitized by Google

PRĪMUM: Hanc ōrātiōnem *prīmum* lēgī deinde trânscrîpsī, *I first read, and then copied this speech.*

Hodiē hanc ōrātiōnem *prīmum* lēgī, *I read this speech to-day for the first time.*

PRĪMŌ: Hanc ōrātiōnem prīmō libenter lēgī, posteā magis magisque mihi jejūna vīsa est, *at first I read this speech with pleasure, afterwards it seemed to me drier and drier.—Müller and Lattmann.*

B.

EXPANSION OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

1. By Multiplication of the Predicate.
2. By Qualification of the Predicate.

1. The Multiplication of the Predicate.

§ 124. The multiplication of the predicate requires no further rules than those that have been given in the general doctrine of Concord, and those that are to be given in the exhibition of the copulative and disjunctive conjunctions.

2. The Qualification of the Predicate.

§ 125. The Qualification of the Predicate may be regarded as an External or an Internal change:

I. External change: combination with an object.
a. Direct object, Accusative. b. Indirect object, Dative.

II. Internal change: combination with an attribute, which may be in the form of

a. the Genitive case.
b. the Ablative.
c. Preposition with a case.
d. an Adverb.

Digitized by Google

I. *External Change.*

Accusative.

§ 126. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object. The object may be outside of the verb, Outer Object, object affected: Deus mundum gubernat, *God steers the universe;* or it may be contained in the verb (Inner Object, object effected): Deus mundum creāvit, *God created the universe—God made a creation, the universe.* (From the Inner object are developed the adverbial uses of the Accusative.)

Remark.—The Accusative as the case of the Direct Object is the most general form of the noun, and is used as the subject of the most general form of the verb, the Infinitive: Salvum tē esse, *your being safe (that you should be safe).* See § 311.

Rule.

§ 127. Active Transitive Verbs take the Accusative case: Mēns regit corpus, *mind governs body* (object affected); Rōmulus Urbem Rōmam condidit, *Romulus founded the City of Rome* (object effected).

Remark.—Many verbs are intransitive in English which are transitive in Latin: dolēre, *to grieve (for);* dēspērāre, *to despair (of);* horrēre, *to shudder (at);* mīrārī, *to wonder (at);* rīdēre, *to laugh (at);* sitīre, *to thirst (for);* olēre, *to smell (of);* redolet antīquitātem, *it smells of the olden time;* * Cōnscia mēns rectī Fāmae *mendācia rīsit,* Ov., *her soul, conscious of its uprightness, laughed at Rumor's lies.*

Rule.

§ 128. Verbs compounded with the prepositions AD, ANTE, CIRCUM, CON, IN, INTER, OB, PER, PRAETER, SUB, SUBTER, SUPER, and TRĀNS, become transitive, and take the accusative: *ad*orīrī hostēs, *to attack the enemy;* stella Veneris *ante*greditur sōlem, *the star Venus goes in advance of the sun;* * Tam mē *circum*stant dēnsōrum turba malōrum, Ov., *so dense a crowd of evils encompass(es) me;* nēminem *con*vēnī, *I have met with no*

Digitized by Google

*one; in*eo cônsilium, *I engage in a plan;* fretum quod Naupactum et Patrās *inter*fluit, *the frith that flows between Naupactus and Patrae;* *ob*īre mortem, *to undergo death;* omnem agrum Pīcēnum *per*currit, *he traversed all the Picenian territory;* dignōs *praeter*īre, *to pass by the worthy;* *sub*īre poenam, *to submit to punishment;* *Flūminaque antīquōs *subter*lābentia mūrōs, VIRG., (and) *rivers gliding under ancient walls; trâns*īre līneam, *to cross the line.*

REMARKS.—1. If the simple verb is a transitive, it can take two accusatives: Āgēsilāus Hellêspontum cōpiās trâjēcit, *Agesilaus put his troops across the Hellespont.*

2. With many of these verbs the preposition may be repeated: cōpiās trâjēcit Rhodanum, or trâns Rhodanum, *he put his troops across the Rhone;* sometimes with difference of signification: adīre ad aliquem, *to go to a man;* adīre aliquem, *to apply to a man.*

Cognate Accusative.

RULE.

§ 129. Any verb can take an Accusative of the Inner Object, when that object serves to define more narrowly or to explain more fully the contents of the verb: facere facinus, *to do a deed.* This is commonly called the Cognate Accusative, or Accusative of kindred meaning.

REMARKS.—1. The Cognate Accusative, when a substantive proper, is commonly attended by an attribute: **Mīrum* somniāvī somnium, PLAUT., *I have dreamed a strange dream;* **cônsimilem* lūserat jam ōlim ille lūdum, TER., *he had long before played a like game;* *cantilēnam *eandem* canis, TER., *you are singing the same song;* **quingentōs* colaphōs înfrēgit mihī—*He has administered to me five hundred sound boxes on the ear* (Infringo—I break on).

2. Much more common is the Cognate Accusative of neuter pronouns and adjectives treated as substantives: Xenophōn *eadem* ferē *peccat, Xenophon makes very much the same mistakes;* Equidem posse vellem *idem glōriārī* quod Cȳrus, *for my part I could wish that it were in my*

Digitized by Google

power to make the same boast as Cyrus; * *Quidquid dēlīrant* rēgēs plĕctuntur Achīvī, Hor., *whatever mad freak the kings play, the Achivi are punished for it.*

With transitive verbs an Accusative of the person can be employed beside: discipulōs id ūnum mŏneo, *I give my scholars this one piece of advice.*

3. From this the accusative neuter gradually passes over into an adverb (Comp. the list, p. 36), such as aliquantum, *somewhat;* nihil, *nothing* ("nothing loath"); summum, *at most.* Especially to be noted are magnam partem, *to a great extent;* id temporis, *at that time;* id aetātis, *of that age;* id genus, *of that kind;* omne genus, *of every kind.*

* haec vulnera vītae
nōn minimam partem mortis formīdine aluntur, Lucr.,
these wounds of life are for not the least part fostered by the fear of death.

Rule.

§ 130. A part of the object affected is sometimes put in the Accusative case after a passive or intransitive verb or an adjective: Tacitā cūrā animum incĕnsus, *his soul on fire with silent care.*

This is commonly called the Greek accusative, and is found chiefly in poetry. The common prose construction is the Ablative. *Nĕscit stāre locō; micat auribus et tremit *artūs*, Virg., *he cannot stand still; he twitches with his ears and quivers in his limbs.*

Remark.—Different is the accusative with induor, *I don;* exuor, *I doff;* cingor, *I gird on myself;* in which verbs the reflexive signification is retained: *inūtile ferrum cingitur, Virg., *he girds on (himself) a useless blade;* *Lōrīcam induitur fīdōque accingitur ĕnse, Virg., *he dons a corslet and begirds himself with his trusty glaive.*

Double Accusative.

Rule.

§ 131. Active Verbs signifying *to inquire, to require, to teach,* and cēlāre, *to conceal,* take two Accusatives, one of the Person, and the other of the Thing: Pūsiōnem quendam Sō-

Digitized by Google

cratēs interrogat quaedam geōmetrica, *Socrates asked an urchin sundry questions in geometry;* Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitābat, *Caesar kept on demanding the corn of the Aedui;* quid nunc tē, asine, līterās doceam? (§54), *why should I now be teaching you literature, you donkey?* Iter omnēs cēlat, *he conceals his route from all.*

REMARKS.—1. The Passive form takes the Nominative of the Person and the Accusative of the Thing: omnēs mīlitiae artēs ēdoctus fuerat, *he had learned (been taught) thoroughly all the arts of war.*

2. The expressions vary a good deal. Observe:

This then is not the only way,
For it is also right to say
Docēre and cēlāre dē
Interrogāre dē quā rē:
Posco, *I claim;* and flāgitō
And always peto, postulo
Take aliquid ab aliquō
While quaero takes ex, ab, dē, quō.

3. Quid mē vīs? *what do you want of me?* belongs to this general class. (*Why* (*for what*) *do you want me?*)

4. On Double Accusative with compound verbs, see § 128, R. 1.

RULE.

§ 132. Verbs of NAMING, MAKING, TAKING, CHOOSING, SHOWING, may have two accusatives of the same person or thing: Īram bene Ennius *initium dīxit* īnsāniae, *well did Ennius call anger the beginning of madness;* Ancum Marcium *rēgem* populus *creavit, the people made Ancus Martius king;* Cato Valerium Flaccum *collēgam habuit, Cato had Valerius Flaccus* (to) *colleague;* Sōcratem Apollo *sapientissimum jūdicāvit, Apollo judged Socrates* (to be) *the wisest;* Athēniēnsibus Pȳthia praecēpit ut Miltiadem sibi *imperātōrem sūmerent, the Pythia instructed the Athenians to take Miltiades* (as) *their commander;* Praestā tē virum, *show yourself a man.*

Digitized by Google

REMARK.—The second accusative is an Accusative of the Inner Object. The Double Accusative is turned into the Double Nominative with the Passive (§ 4). Reddo, *I render*, is not used in the Passive, but instead thereof fīo, *I become*.

Accusative of the Local Object.

RULE.

§ 133. The Accusative of the Local Object *Whither?* commonly takes a preposition such as: IN, *into;* AD, *to;* VERSUS, *-ward;* in Graeciam prŏficiscī, *to set out for Greece.*

REMARK.—The omission of the preposition, except as below stated, is poetical.

RULE.

§ 134. Names of Cities and Smaller Islands are put in the Accusative of the place *Whither?* without a preposition. So also RŪS, *into the country;* DOMUM, DOMŌS, *home;* Lēgātī Athēnās missī sunt, *Envoys were sent to Athens;* Lātōna cōnfūgit *Dēlum*, *Latona took refuge in Delos;* Laelius et Scīpio *rūs* ēvolābant, *Laelius and Scipio used to hurry out into the country;* nunquam *domum* revertēre, *they never returned home.*

REMARKS.—1. Domum, *house*, with a possessive pronoun, or Genitive, may or may not have IN before it: domum meam or in domum meam, *to my house;* domum Pompēji or in domum Pompēji, *to Pompey's house.*

2. When urbem, *city*, or oppidum, *town*, precedes the name of the city or town, the preposition in or ad is prefixed; if it follows, in or ad may be omitted: in (ad) oppidum Cirtam, *to, in (at) the town* (of) *Cirta;* Jugurtha Thalam pervēnit in oppidum magnum et opulentum, *Jugurtha arrived at Thala, a great and wealthy town.*

3. Ad Mutinam — *to* (the neighborhood of) *Mutina* (Modena).

4. In with the Accusative is employed when the rest in a place is considered as the result of motion toward a place: habēre in potestātem, *to have (got) in(to) one's power.*

Digitized by Google

Accusative of Extent in Space and Time.

RULE.

§ 135. The Accusative of Extent in Space accompanies the verb, either with or without PER, *through.*

1. With PER to denote entire occupancy (*from one end to the other; all through*): sparsī *per* prōvinciam mīlitēs, *the soldiers scattered all through the province;* Phoebidās iter *per* Thēbās fēcit, *Phoebidas marched through Thebes.*

2. Without PER to denote distance, *how far, how long?* Trabēs inter sē *bīnōs pedēs* distābant, *the beams were two feet apart;* campus Marathōn abest ab oppidō Athēniēnsium circiter *mīllia* passuum *decem, the plain* (of) *Marathon is about ten miles from the city of Athens;* ā rectā cônscientiā *trânsversum unguem* nōn oportet discēdere, *one ought not to depart a nail-breadth from an upright conscience.*

REMARK.—With abesse and distāre, an ablative of measure may also be employed: mīllibus passuum quātuor et vīgintī abesse, *to be twenty-four miles off.*

RULE.

§ 136. The Accusative of Extent in Space accompanies the adjectives LONGUS, *long;* LĀTUS, *wide;* ALTUS, *high* (deep); fossa *pedēs trecentōs* longa est, *sex pedēs* alta, *the ditch is three hundred feet long, six feet deep;* mīlitēs aggerem lātum *pedēs trecentōs* trīgintā altum *pedēs octōgintā* exstruxērunt, *the soldiers raised an embankment three hundred feet wide* (and) *eighty feet high.*

RULE.

§ 137. The Accusative of Extent in Time accompanies the verb either with or without PER, *through,* in answer to the question *How long?*: Luscinia (per) tōtam ferē noctem canit, *the nightingale sings almost the whole night* (*long*).

Digitized by Google

RULE.

§ 138. The Accusative of Extent in Time accompanies the adjective NĀTUS, *old* (born): puer decem ânnōs nātus est, *the boy is ten years old;* Cyrus regnāvit ânnōs trīgintā; quadrāgintā ânnōs nātus regnāre coepit, *Cyrus reigned thirty years;* (he was) *forty years* old (when) *he began to reign.*

Accusative in Exclamations.

RULE.

§ 139. The Accusative is used in exclamations as the general object of thought or perception: mē miserum, *poor me!* *Ō miserās hominum mentēs, O pectora caeca, LUCR., *Oh, the wretched minds of men, oh, the blind hearts!* These exclamations often assume an interrogative form: hanccine audāciam? [are you going to stand] *this audacity?*

§ 140. Interjections used with the Accusative are HEU and ō, more rarely ĒN and ECCE, *Lo!* which commonly stand with the Nominative. PRŌ takes the Vocative, HĒĪ and VAE the Dative: Heu mē miserum! O miserās mentēs! Ecce homo! Ēn Vārus! Prō sancte Jûppiter! Hēī mihi! Vae victīs, *woe to the conquered.*

DATIVE.

§ 141. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object, the object had in view in contradistinction to the object reached.

REMARK.—In English the form of the Indirect Object is the same as that of the Direct. "He shewed *me* (Dat.) a pure river;" He shewed *me* (Acc.) to the priest; "I will give *thee* (Dat.) a crown;" I will give *thee* (Acc.) away; woe is *me* — vae *mihi.*

Dative with Transitive Verbs.

RULE.

§ 142. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with Transitive Verbs, which already have a Direct Object in the Accusa-

Digitized by Google

tive (translation, *to* or *for*): Facile omnēs quum valēmus recta cônsilia aegrōtīs damus, *all of us, when we are well, readily give good advice to the sick* (Passive: recta cônsilia aegrōtīs dantur, *good advice is given to the sick;* Domus pulchra dominīs aedificātur nōn mūribus, *a handsome house is built for its owners, not for the mice*).

REMARK.—*For* (*in defence of*) is prō: prō patriā morī, *to die for one's country; to* (*with a view to*) is often ad, and always ad when the idea of motion is involved.

Dative with Intransitive Verbs.

RULE.

§ 143. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with many Intransitive Verbs of ADVANTAGE OR DISADVANTAGE, YIELDING and RESISTING, PLEASURE and DISPLEASURE, BIDDING and FORBIDDING, such as prōdesse, *to do good;* nocēre, *to do harm;* indulgēre, *to yield;* cēdere, *to give way;* servīre, *to be a slave;* pārēre oboedīre, *to be obedient;* crēdere, *to lend belief;* ignôscere, *to grant forgiveness;* placēre, *to give pleasure;* imperāre, *to give orders;* resistere, *to make resistance.*

*Nec *prōsunt dominō* quae *prōsunt omnibus* artēs, Ov., *and the arts which do good to all do none to their master;* vir bonus *nocet nēminī, a man who is good does harm to no one;* indulgent animīs, *they yield to their feelings;* *tū nē *cēde malīs, do thou not give way to misfortunes;* turpe *servīre puellae, it is disgraceful to be a slave to a girl;* mundus *deō pāret* et *huīc oboediunt* maria terraeque, *the universe is obedient to God, and seas and lands hearken unto him;* *nimium nē *crēde colōrī, do not trust complexion too much;* *ignôsce timōrī, PROP., *grant pardon to my fear;* **cuī placeō* prōtinus ipsa placet, [the woman] *to whom I am pleasing is straightway herself pleasing* (to me); Rōmānī *omnibus gentibus imperārunt, the Romans gave orders to all nations;* arbor *resistit ventīs, the tree offers resistance to the winds.*

Digitized by Google

REMARKS.—1. Among the most notable exceptions are: aequāre, to be *equal;* decēre, *to be becoming;* dēficere, *to be wanting;* juvāre, *to be a help;* jubēre, *to order*, and vetāre, *to forbid*, which take the Accusative: Eam pictūram imitātī sunt multī aequāvit nēmo, *that painting many have imitated, none equalled;* *forma *virōs* neglecta *decet*, Ov., *a careless beauty is becoming to men;* *me diēs *dēficiat*, *the day would fail me;* **fortēs* fortūna *adjuvat*, TER., *fortune favors the brave;* jubē famulōs, *order your servants;* **Vetuit mē* Quirīnus, HOR., *Quirinus forbade me.* Fīdo and cōnfīdo, *I trust*, generally take the Ablative. § 202.

2. The Dative use is obscured in the English of nūbere alicuī, *to marry a man* (to veil for him); mēdērī alicuī, *to heal* (to take one's measures for) *a man;* supplico, *I beg* (I go on my knees to); persuādeo, *I persuade* (I make it sweet).

3. The novice is again reminded that the passives of these verbs are used impersonally: *Quī invident egent illī *quibus invidētur* rem habent, PLAUT., *those who envy are the needy, those who are envied have property* (§ 15).

Dative and Verbs compounded with Prepositions.

RULE XXIV.

§ 144. Many verbs compounded with the prepositions AD, ANTE, CŌN- (CUM), IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRAE, SUB, and SUPER take the Dative case: Pelopidās omnibus *perīculīs adfuit, Pelopidas was present in all dangers;* *Virtūs omnibus *rēbus anteit*, PLAUT., *Virtue goes before all things;* Nōn omnis aetās Lȳde *lūdō convenit*, PLAUT., *It is not every age that is suitable to sport;* Ferōciter *īnstat victīs, He presses the conquered furiously;* Aristīdēs *interfuit pugnae* nāvālī apud Salamīnem, *Aristides was engaged in the naval battle off Salamis;* *Obstā prīncipiīs, OV., *Oppose the beginnings;* Hannibal *Alexandrō* Magnō nōn *postpōnendus est, He is not to be put below Alexander the Great;* Praesse exercituī, *to command an army;* *Miserīs succurrere disco, *I learn to succor the wretched;* Lucumo superfuit patrī, *Lucumo survived his father.*

REMARK.—When the local signification preponderates, the preposition is repeated with its proper case: *adhaeret* nāvis *ad* scopulum, *the ship*

Digitized by Google

sticks to the rock; Ajâx *incubuit in* gladium, *Ajax fell on his sword; congredī cum* hoste, *to engage the enemy; dētrahere* ânnulum *dē* digĭtō, *to take a ring from one's finger.* The tendency in later Latin is to neglect this distinction, which even in the best period is not rigidly observed. Compounds with CUM (CON-) commonly repeat the preposition: always *commūnicāre* aliquid *cum* aliquō, *to communicate something to a man* (share it with him).

Verbs with Accusative and Dative.

§ 145. Some verbs are construed both with the Accusative and with the Dative. Sometimes there is hardly an appreciable difference: comitor aliquem, *I accompany a man;* comitor alicuī, *I act as companion to a man;* adūlor, generally Accusative, *I fawn on;* aemulor, *I rival, I am a rival;* praestōlor, *I wait for.* Sometimes the difference follows naturally from the difference of case:

Cavēre alicuī, aliquem, } to *take precautions* for / against } *some one.*

*Quīque *aliīs cāvit* nōn *cavet* ipse *sibī*, Ov. (§ 100); *Hic niger est, *hunc* tū Rōmāne *cavēto*, Hor., *He is a black fellow, against him be thou on thy guard, Oh Roman!*

Metuere alicuī, aliquem, } *to fear for / to dread* } *some one.*

So all verbs of fearing.

Cônsulere alicuī, aliquem, } *to take measures for / to consult* } *some one.*

Convenīre alicuī, aliquem, } *to be suitable for / to meet* } *some one.*

Moderārī / Temperāre } alicuī reī, *to moderate* / aliquid, *to manage* } *a matter.*

Vacāre reī } *to be at leisure for / to attend to* } *a matter.*

Vacāre rē, ā rē, *to be at leisure from*

Digitized by Google

Dative with Verbs of giving and putting.

RULE.

§ 146. A few verbs, chiefly of GIVING and PUTTING, take a Dative with an Accusative, or an Accusative with an Ablative, in the same signification:

Dōnō tibi librum, *I present* (to) *you a book.*
Dōnō tē librō, *I present you with a book.*
Circumdo urbī mūrum, *I put round the city a wall.*
urbem mūrō, *I surround the city with a wall.*

So also aspergere, *to besprinkle* and *to sprinkle on*; impertīre, *to endow* and *to give*; induere, *to clothe* and *to put on*; exuere, *to strip of* and *to strip off.*

RULE.

§ 147. ESSE, *to be*, with the Dative, denotes an inner connection between its subject and the Dative, and is commonly translated by the verb *to have:* mihi est amīcus, *I have a friend.* *An nescīs longās rēgibus esse manūs? OV., *Or perhaps you do not know that kings have long arms?*

REMARKS.—1. The predicate of ESSE with the Dative is translated in the ordinary manner: Caesar amīcus est mihi, *Caesar is a friend to me* (amīcus meus, MY *friend, friend of* MINE).

2. On the attraction of the Dative with nōmen esse, see § 121.

3. The possession of qualities is expressed by IN and the Ablative or some other turn: In Cicerōne magna fuit ēloquentia, *Cicero had great eloquence.*

Dative of the Object for which.

§ 148. Certain verbs take the Dative of the *object for which* (to what end), and often at the same time a Dative of the personal object *for whom* or *to whom*, as in the legal phrase, cuī bonō? *To whom is it* (for) *an advantage?* = *who is advantaged?* Such verbs are esse, *to be*; fierī, *to become, to turn*

Digitized by Google

out; dare, *to give;* mittere, *to send;* accipere, *to receive;* venīre, *to come;* relinquere, *to leave;* habēre, *to hold;* vertere, *to interpret;* dūcere, *to count*, and the like; Nimia fīdūcia magnae *calamitātī* solet esse, *Excessive confidence is usually a great calamity;* Virtūs sōla neque datur *dōnō* neque accipitur, *Virtue alone is neither given nor taken as a present;* Paupertās *probrō* habēre coepit, *Poverty began to be held (as) a disgrace;* Tīmotheus *Ariobarzānī auxiliō* profectus est, *Timotheus set out to help Ariobarzanes;* *Vitiō mihi* dant (vertunt, dūcunt) quod hominis necessāriī mortem graviter fero, *They find fault with me because I take to heart (bear ill) the death of a connection;* canere receptuī, *to sound a retreat.*

Ethical Dative.

§ 149. The Ethical Dative indicates special interest in the action. It may be called the Dative of Feeling, and its use in Latin (and old English) is confined to the personal pronouns: Tū *mihi* Antōniī exemplō istīus audāciam dēfendis? *Do you defend me (to my face) by Anthony's example that fellow's audacity?* Ecce tibi Sēbōsus! *Here's your Sebosus!* ("She's a civil modest wife, one (I tell you) that will not miss *you* morning nor evening prayer."—SHAKESPEARE.) *Et quōscunque meō fēcīstī nōmine versūs, ūre mihī, laudēs dēsine habēre meās, PROP., *And whatever verses you have made on my account, burn them me (I beg); cease to keep praises of me.*

REMARK.—Especially to be noted is sibi velle, *to want, to mean:* *Quid *tibi vīs* mulier? HOR., *What do you want, woman?* Quid *sibi vult* haec ōrātio? *What does this speech mean?*

Dative of the Agent.

§ 150. The Dative is used with passive verbs in prose chiefly with the perfect passive, to show the interest which the agent takes in the action. Comp. § 13: Rēs mihi tōta prōvīsa est; *Carmina scripta mihī sunt nulla, OV., *I have no poems written*, (therefore) *have written no poems.*

Digitized by Google

RULE.

§ 151. The agent of the Gerund and Gerundive is put in the Dative: Hoc mihi faciendum est, *I have this to be done, this is to be done by me.* *Est mala sed cûnctīs ista terenda via, PROP., *That is a bad road, but one which all have to travel.* *Dêspēranda tibī salvā concordia socrū, JUV., *You must despair of harmony while your mother-in-law is alive.* Compare the Dative with verbals in -bilis: mihi amābilis, *loveable in my eyes.*

REMARK.—When the verb itself takes the Dative, the Ablative with AB (Ā) is employed for the sake of clearness: Cīvibus ā vōbīs cônsulendum, *The interest of the citizens must be consulted by you.* But not necessarily: *Linguae moderandum est tibi, PLAUT., *You must put bounds to your tongue.*

Dative of Participles.

§ 152. Datives of Participles are used as predicative attributes, §123: Oppidum prīmum venientibus ab Ēpīrō, *The first town to those who come* (as you come) *from Epirus;* Mihi volentī est (literally), *I have it willing; I have it and I am willing to have it; I am willing for it to be so.*

Dative with Derivative Nouns.

§ 153. A few derivative nouns take the Dative of their primitives: Jûstitia est obtemperātio lēgibus, *Justice is obedience to the laws.*

Dative with Adjectives.

RULE.

§ 154. Adjectives of LIKENESS, FITNESS, FRIENDLINESS, NEARNESS, and the like, with their opposites, take the Dative: *Rāra avis in terrīs *nigrōque simillima cygnō*, JUV., *A rare bird in this world, and very like a black swan.* *Nōn ego sum *laudī* nōn nātus *idōneus armīs*, OV., *I am not fitted by nature for glory,*

Digitized by Google

not fitted for arms; **Amīca lutō* sūs, HOR., *A sow devoted to mire.* *Semper tū scīto, Flamma *fūmō* est *proxima*, PLAUT., *Do thou always bear in mind, fire is next door to smoke*

REMARKS.—1. Many adjectives which belong to this class become substantives, and as such are construed with the Genitive: amīcus, *friend;* affīnis, *connection;* aequālis, *contemporary;* aliēnus, *foreign, strange;* cognātus, *kinsman;* commūnis, *common;* contrārius, *opposite;* pār, *match;* proprius, pecūliāris, *own, peculiar;* similis, *like* ("we ne'er shall look upon *his like* again"); sacer, *set apart, sacred;* Deōs esse *similēs tuī* putās? *Do you think that the gods are like you?* *Virtūte sīs *pār dispar* fortūnīs *patrīs*, ATTIUS, *May you be your father's match in valor, but not in* (mis) *fortunes.*

2. The *object toward which* is expressed by the Accusative with IN, ERGĀ, ADVERSUS: Manlius fuit sēvērus IN fīlium, *Manlius was severe toward his son;* Mē esse scit ERGĀ sē benevolum, *He knows that I am kindly disposed toward him;* ADVERSUS merita ingrātissimus, *highly ungrateful to* (*ward*) *deserts.*

3. The *object for which* may be expressed by the Accusative with AD, *to:* homo ad nullam rem ūtilis, *a good for nothing fellow.*

4. Propior, *nearer*, proximus, *next*, are construed also (like prope, *near*) with the Accusative and the Ablative with AB, *off:* Propius est fidem, *it is nearer belief, i. e., more likely;* Quī tē proximus est, *He who is next to you;* *Proximus ā tectīs ignis dēfenditur aegrē, OV., *A fire next door is kept off with difficulty* (is hard to keep off).

5. Aliēnus, *foreign, strange*, is also construed with the Ablative, with or without AB (Ā): *Homō sum, hūmānī nihil ā mē aliēnum puto, TER., *I am a man, and nothing that pertains to man do I consider foreign to me.*

6. In poetry, Īdem, *the same*, is often construed after the analogy of the Greek, with the Dative. *Invītum quī servat idem facit occīdentī (§ 97).

GENITIVE.

§ 155. The Genitive is the *case of the complement, i. e.*, of the *lacking half*, and thus serves to *specify*. As the *specific characteristic* it stands in a close relation to the Adjective, with which it is often interchanged.

Digitized by Google

The chief English representatives of the Genitive are the Possessive case, the Objective case with *of*, and Substantives in composition, or used as Adjectives: *Cicero's orations, the house of Sallust, fir-tree, cart-wheel, farthing candle, the Orsini plot.*

Remark.—An abstract Noun with the Genitive is often to be translated as an attribute; and, on the other hand, the attribute is often to be translated as an abstract noun with *of:* vernī temporis suāvitās, *the sweet springtime;* ante Rōmam conditam, *before the founding of Rome.*

The Genitive is employed:

I. and II. Chiefly as the complement of Nouns Substantive and Adjective.

III. Occasionally as the complement of Verbs.

I. Genitive with Nouns Substantive.

Appositive Genitive, or Genitive of Specification.

Rule.

§ 156. The Genitive is sometimes used to specify the contents of generic words instead of Apposition in the same case: Virtūs continentiae, *the virtue of self-control.*

So especially with vôx, *expression;* nōmen, *name;* verbum, *word, verb:* vôx voluptātis, *the word "pleasure";* nōmen rēgis, *the name* or *title of king;* Sulla nōmen Fēlīcis assûmpsit, *Sulla assumed the surname (of) "the Lucky";* Verba dīcendī et sentiendi, *the verbs "to say and to think," verbs of saying and thinking.* So also, occasionally: Urbs Rōmae, *the city of Rome;* arbor abietis, *fir-tree.*

Possessive Genitive.

§ 157. The Possessive Genitive is the substantive form of an adjective attribute with which it is often parallel: domus rēgis = domus rēgia, *the palace of the king, the king's palace = the royal palace;* (aliēnus canis, *a strange dog = another man's dog.*)

Digitized by Google

REMARKS.—1. The attention of the student is called to the variety of forms which possession may take, *e. g.*, Statua Myrōnis, *Myron's statue*, may mean: 1. A statue which M. owns. 2. Which Myron has made. 3. Which represents Myron.

2. Observe the brief expressions: Ventum erat ad Vestae, *We (they) had come to Vesta's* (*i. e.*, temple); Hasdrubal Gisgōnis, *Gisgo's Hasdrubal, Hasdrubal Gisgo's son* (as it were, *Hasdrubal O'Gisgo*); *Flaccus Claudiī, Claudius's Flaccus = F. the slave or freedman of Claudius.*

Active and Passive Genitive.

§ 158. When the Substantive on which the Genitive depends contains the idea of an action, the possession may be *active* or *passive*. Hence the division into 1. the *Active* or *Subjective Genitive:* amor Deī, *the love of God, the love which God feels* (God loves). 2. *Passive or Objective Genitive:* amor Deī, *love of God, love toward God* (God is loved).

REMARKS.—1. The English form in *of* is used either *actively* or *passively: the love of women.* Hence, to avoid ambiguity, other prepositions than *of* are often substituted for the Passive Genitive, such as *for, toward*, and the like. So, also, sometimes in Latin: Voluntās prōvinciae *ergā* Caesarem, *The good-will of the province toward Caesar;* Odium *in* hominum ūniversum genus, *Hate toward all mankind.*

2. Both Genitives may be connected with the same Substantive: Tanta hominum ējus fānī fuit religio, *So great was the reverential regard of the public for that shrine.*

§ 159. The Genitive of the Personal Pronouns meī, *of me*, tuī, *of thee*, suī, *of self*, nôstrī *of us*, vestrī, *of you*, are used as Passive Genitives: amor meī, *love to me;* dēsīderium tuī, *longing for thee;* memoria nôstrī, *memory of us* (our memory).

REMARK.—Nôstrum and vestrum are used as Partitive Genitives: magna pars nôstrum, *a great part of us;* uterque vestrum, *either (both) of you.*

§ 160. The Possessive Pronoun is generally used as the Active Genitive: amīcus meus, *a friend of mine;* librī meī,

Digitized by Google

my books. Additional attributives are put in the Genitive: Meā ipsīus operā, *by my own exertions.* § 118, R. 2.

REMARK.—Occasionally, however, in Latin, as occasionally in English, the Possessive Pronoun is used passively: dēsīderium tuum, *longing for thee;* injūria tua, *your wrong* ("The deep damnation of *his* taking off").

Genitive of Quality.

RULE.

§ 161. The Genitive of Quality must always have an Adjective or its equivalent: Mītis ingeniī juvenem, *a youth of mild disposition.*

REMARK.—On the Ablative of Quality, see § 198.

Genitive as a Predicate.

RULE.

§ 162. The Genitives of Possession and Quality may be used as Predicates: domus est rēgis, *the house is the king's;* vir est magnī ingeniī, *the man is of great genius.*

REMARKS.—1. The Possession appears in a variety of forms, and takes a variety of translations: *Hûjus erō vīvus mortuus hûjus erō, PROP., *Hers I shall be, living, dead, hers I shall be;* Omnia quae mulieris fuērunt virī fīunt, *All that was the wife's* (property) *becomes the husband's;* Is [Herculēs] dīcēbātur esse Myrōnis, *That* (statue of Hercules) *was said to be Myron's* (work); Nōlae senātus Rōmānōrum, plēbs Hannibalis erat, *At Nola the senate was* (on the side of) *the Romans, the common folk* (on) *Hannibal's;* Damnātio est jūdicum, poena lēgis, *Condemning is the judges'* (business), *punishment the law's;* Imbēcillī animī esse, *to be* (a mark) *of a weak mind;* Stultitiae est, *it is folly;* Mōris est, *It is customary.* So also with facere, *to make* (cause to be): Rōmānae diciōnis facere, *to bring under the Roman sway.*

2. In the Third Declension of the Adjective, the Genitive is the usual form: prūdentis est, *it is prudent.*

3. The same methods of translation apply to the Possessive Pronoun in the Predicate ("Vengeance is *mine*"): meum est, *it is my property, business, way;* Meum nōn est mentīrī, *Lying is not my way, I do not lie.*

Digitized by Google

Partitive Genitive.

RULE.

§ 163. The Genitive stands for the whole to which a part belongs: magna vīs mīlitum, *a great number of soldiers;* centum mīlitum, *a hundred* (of the) *soldiers;* eī mīlitum, *those* (of the) *soldiers;* fortissimī mīlitum, *the bravest* (of the) *soldiers;* satis mīlitum, *enough* (of) *soldiers, soldiers enough.*

The Partitive Genitive is used:

§ 164. *a.* With substantives of quantity, number, weight, &c.: modius trīticī, *a measure of wheat;* libra farris, *a pound of spelt;* āla equitum, *a squadron of cavalry.*

§ 165. *b.* With numerals, both special and general:

Special.—Centum mīlitum, *a hundred* (of the) *soldiers, a hundred* (of) *soldiers.*

(Centum mīlitēs, *a, the hundred soldiers.*)

Quintus rēgum, *the fifth (of the) king(s.)*

(Quintus rex, *the fifth king.*)

General.—Multī mīlitum, *many of the soldiers, many soldiers.*

(Multī mīlitēs, *many soldiers.*)

REMARK.—The English language commonly omits the partition, unless it is especially emphatic: (Quot cīvium adsunt? HOW MANY CITIZENS *are present?* Quot cīvēs adsunt? HOW MANY *are the citizens present?*)

§ 166. *c.* With Pronouns: eī mīlitum, *those* (of the) *soldiers;* eī mīlitēs, *those soldiers;* illī Graecōrum, *those* (of the) *Greeks.*

REMARKS.—1. When all are embraced, there is no partition: Nōs trecentī conjūrāvimus, *three hundred of us have made a conspiracy;* amīcōs quōs multōs habet, *friends whom he has in great number, of whom he has many;* Quī omnēs, *all of whom;* Quot estīs? *How many are (there of) you?* Here the English language familiarly employs the partition.

2. Mīlle, *a thousand*, is in the Singular an indeclinable Adjective, and is less frequently used with the Genitive: mīlle mīlitēs, rather than mīlle mīlitum, *a thousand soldiers;* in the Plural it is a declinable Substantive, and must have the Genitive: duo mīllia mīlitum, *two thousand(s of) soldiers, = two regiments of soldiers.*

Digitized by Google

§ 167. *d.* With comparatives and superlatives: Prior hōrum, *the former of these;* *Rēgum ultimus ille bonōrum, Juv., *The last of the good kings.*

Remarks.—1. When there are only two, the comparative exhausts the degrees of comparison. (§ 115.)

2. Uterque, *either (both)*, is commonly used as an adjective with substantives: uterque cônsul, *either consul = both consuls;* as a substantive with pronouns: uterque hōrum, *both of these.*

§ 168. *e.* With the Neuter Singular of the following and kindred words:

tantum, *so much*	quantum, *as (how much)*	aliquantum, *somewhat*
multum, *much*	plūs, *more*	plūrimum, *most*
paulum, *little*	minus, *less*	minimum, *least*
satis, *enough*	parum, *too little*	nihil, *nothing*
hoc, *this*	id, illud, istud, *that*	idem, *the same*

quod and quid, *which* and *what?* with their compounds. *Plūs aloēs quam mellis habet, *It has more aloes than honey;* *Surgit amārī aliquid, Lucr., *uprises something bitter;* nihil reliquī facere, *to leave nothing* (undone).

Remarks.—1. Neuter Adjectives of the Second Declension can be treated as substantives in the Genitive: not so Adjectives of the Third, except in combination with Adjectives of the Second: aliquid bonum, or bonī, *something good;* aliquid memorābile, *something memorable;* aliquid bonī et memorābilis, *something good and memorable;* *Vixque tenet lacrimās quia *nīl lacrimābile* cernit, Ov., *And scarce restrains her tears, because she descries naught to shed tears for.* (§ 3, R. 3.)

2. The partitive construction is not admissible with a preposition: ad tantum studium, *to so much zeal.* (Exceptions occur: ad multum diēī, *far into the day.*)

3. The Partitive Genitive is also used with Adverbs of *quantity, place, extent:* armōrum affatim, *foison* (plenty) *of arms;* ubi terrārum, gentium? *where in the world?;* hūc, eō arrogantiae prōcêssit, *he got to this, that pitch of presumption* (Later Latin, tum temporis, *at that time*). Notice especially the phrase: quoad *ējus* facere possum, *as far as I can do so.*

4. Instead of the Partitive Genitive with numerals, pronouns, compara-

Digitized by Google

tives, and superlatives, the ablative may be employed with EX, *out of*, DĒ, *from* (especially with proper names and singulars), or the accusative with INTER, *among:* Gallus prōvocat ūnum *ex* Rōmānīs, *The Gaul challenges one of the Romans;* ūnus *dē* multīs, *one of the many* (the masses); Croesus *inter* rēgēs opulentissimus, *Croesus, wealthiest of kings;* (but in a series: *quōrum* ūnus, alter, tertius.)

5. On the Attribute used partitively, see § 87, R.

Genitive with Prepositional Substantives.

RULE.

§ 169. CAUSĀ, GRĀTIĀ, ERGŌ, *for the sake*, and ĪNSTAR, *after the fashion*, are construed with the Genitive. CAUSĀ and GRĀTIĀ, Ablatives, are always put after the case. So also ERGŌ: Virtūtis ergō, *on account of valor.* ĪNSTAR is an old Accusative: Reīpūblicae causā, *for the sake of the state;* *dolōrum* effugiendōrum *causā, for the sake of escaping sufferings;* **īnstar montis* equus, VIRG., *a horse like a mountain;* Plato mihi ūnus *īnstar* est *omnium, Plato by himself is in my eyes worth them all.*

II. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

RULE.

§ 170. Adjectives of FULNESS, of PARTICIPATION, and of POWER, of KNOWLEDGE and IGNORANCE, of DESIRE and DISGUST, take the Genitive: plēnus rīmārum, *full of chinks* ("a leaky vessel"); particeps cōnsiliī, *a sharer in the plan;* compos mentis, *in possession of* (one's) *mind;* perītus bellī, *versed in war;* cupidus glōriae, *grasping after glory;* *Cūr nōn ut *plēnus vītae* convīva recēdis? LUCR., *Why do you not withdraw like a guest sated with life?* *Nōn ita *certandī cupidus* quam propter amōrem, LUCR., *Not so desirous of rivalry as by reason of love;* **Cônscia* mēns *rectī* Fāmae mendācia rīsit, OV., *Her mind, conscious of its uprightness, laughed at Rumor's lies;* *Agricolam laudat *jūris lēgūmque perītus*, HOR., *The husbandman*('s lot) *is praised by the counsel learned in the law;* *Sitque *memor nôstrī* necne referte mihī, OV. (§ 3,

Digitized by Google

R. 7); *Vēnātor tenerae *conjugis immemor*, Hor., *The hunter of his tender spouse unmindful;* *Vīs *cônsil(i)ī expers* mōle ruit suā, Hor., *Force void of counsel rushes to ruin by its own mass;* **Mentis inops* gelidā formīdine lōra remīsit, Ov., *Senseless from chill fear, he let go the reins.*

Remarks.—1. The following adjectives—refertus, *stuffed;* praeditus, *endowed;* contentus, *satisfied;* frētus, *supported*—show their participial nature by being construed with the Ablative: Vīta referta bonīs, *a life filled to overflowing with blessings;* membrīs hūmānīs esse praeditum, *to be endowed with human limbs;* frētus opulentiā, *trusting in wealth;* *Uxor contenta est quae bona est ūnō virō, Plaut., *A wife who is good is contented with one husband.*

2. Plēnus, *full*, sometimes takes the Ablative: *Maxima quaeque (§ 106) domus servīs est plēna superbīs, Juv., *Every great house is filled with overbearing slaves.*

3. Dignus, *worthy*, and indignus, *unworthy*, are construed with the Ablative: *Digne puer meliōre flammā, Hor., *Boy worthy of a better flame;* *Vītā tua dignior aetās, Virg., *Your age is worthier of life.* The Genitive is rare.

4. Līber, *free*, and vacuus, *empty*, take the Ablative with or without ab (ā): līberum (vacuum) esse metū (ā metū), *to be free from, void of, fear.*

5. On aliēnus, *strange*, see § 154, R. 5. On aequālis, commūnis, cônscius, contrārius, pār, similis, superstes, and the like, see § 154, R. 1.

6. Verbs of filling sometimes follow the analogy of plēnus, *full*, and take the genitive. On egeo and indigeo, *I want*, with the Genitive, see § 189, R. 1.

Genitive with Verbals.

Rule.

§ 171. Verbals in -ĀX take the Genitive, and so do Participles in -ĀNS and -ĒNS when they lose their verbal nature: tenācem esse prōpositī, *to be tenacious of purpose;* amâns patriae, *patriotic;* dīligêns vēritātis, *truth-loving;* Epamīnōndās adeō *vēritātis* erat *dīligêns* ut ne jocō quidem mentīrētur, *E. was so truth-loving as not to tell lies even in jest.*

Remarks.—1. The simple test is the substitution of the relative and the verb: amâns (participle), *loving* (*who is loving*); amâns (adjective), *fond* (substantive), *lover;* patiêns (part.), *bearing* (*who is bearing*); patiêns (adjective), *enduring* (substantive), *a sufferer.*

Digitized by Google

2. In later Latin and in the poets almost all adjectives that denote an affection of the mind take a Genitive of the thing to which the affection refers: aeger timōris, *sick of fear;* ambiguus cônsiliī, *doubtful of purpose.* The seat of the feeling is also put in the Genitive: aeger animī, *sick at heart, heartsick;* audâx ingeniī, *daring of disposition.*

III. Genitive with Verbs.

Genitive with Verbs of Memory.

Rule.

§ 172. Verbs of Reminding, Remembering and Forgetting are construed with the Genitive: admonēre egestātis, *to remind of poverty;* locī meminîsse, *to remember a place;* oblīviscī officiī, *to forget duty;* *Ipse jubet *mortis* tē *meminîsse* Deus, Mart., *God himself bids you remember death.*

Remarks.—1. Verbs of Reminding also take the Ablative with dē, *from, of,* and the Acc. Neut. of a Pronoun or Numeral Adjective: Dē avāritiā tuā commonēmur, *We are reminded of your avarice;* Discipulōs id ūnum moneo, *I give scholars this one piece of advice.* (§ 129, R. 2.)

2. Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting also take the Accusative, especially of things: *Haec ōlim meminîsse juvābit, Virg., *To remember these things one day will give us pleasure;* *Dulcēs moriēns reminiscitur Argōs, Virg., *Dying, he remembers sweet Argos;* Oblīviscī nihil solēs nisi injūriās, *You are wont to forget nothing except injuries.* Recordor (literally — *I bring to heart, to mind*) is commonly construed with the Acc.: *Et vōcem Anchīsae magnī vultumque recordor, Virg., *And I recall* (call to mind) *the voice and countenance of Anchises the great.* (With persons, dē.)

3. Venit mihi in mentem, *it comes into my mind, occurs to me,* may be construed impersonally with the Genitive, or personally with a subject: Venit mihi in mentem Platōnis, *or* Plato, *Plato occurs to me.*

Genitive with Verbs of Emotion.

Rule.

§ 173. Miserĕor and Miserêsco, *I pity,* and the Impersonal Verbs Miseret, *it moves to pity,* Poenitet, *it repents,* Piget, *it irks,* Pudet, *it makes ashamed,* Taedet and Pertaesum est, *it tires,* take the Accusative of the Person, and the

Digitized by Google

Genitive of the Exciting Cause: Miserēre labōrum, *pity our toils;* Miseret mē frātris, *I am sorry for my brother;* Poenitet mē cônsiliī, *I repent of my plan;* *Miseret *tē aliōrum, tuī tē* nec miseret nec pudet, PLAUT., *You are sorry for others, for yourself you are neither sorry nor ashamed.* (Pudet deōrum hominumque, *It is a shame in the sight of gods and men.*)

REMARK.—These Impersonals can also have a subject, chiefly a Demonstrative or Relative Pronoun: Nōn tē haec pudent? *Do not these things put you to the blush?*

Genitive with Judicial Verbs.

RULE.

§ 174. Verbs of ACCUSING, CONVICTING, CONDEMNING and ACQUITTING take the Genitive of the Charge: accūsāre aliquem fûrtī, *to accuse a man of theft;* convincere maleficiī, *to convict of misdemeanor;* damnārī repetundārum, *to be condemned of extortion;* absolvere improbitātis, *to acquit of dishonesty;* *Parce tuum vātem sceleris damnāre Cupīdō, Ov., *Be slow to condemn thy bard of crime, O Cupid.*

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of CONDEMNING and ACQUITTING take the Ablative as well as the Genitive of the CHARGE and the PUNISHMENT, and always the Ablative of the FINE: accūsāre capitis, or capite, *to bring a capital charge;* damnāre capitis, or capite, *to condemn to death;* damnārī decem mîllibus, *to be fined* 10,000. Multāre, *to mulct*, is always construed with the Ablative; multāre pecūniā, *to mulct in, of money.*

2. Most verbs belonging to this class take also, instead of the Genitive, the Abl. with DĒ, *from, of:* accūsāre dē nêgligentiā, *to accuse of negligence.*

Genitive with Verbs of Rating and Buying.

RULE.

§ 175. Verbs of RATING and BUYING are construed with the Genitive of the general value or cost, and the Ablative of the particular value or cost. (§ 200.)

Verbs of RATING are: aestimāre, *to value;* putāre, *to reckon;*

Digitized by Google

dūcere, *to take;* habēre, *to hold;* pendere, *to weigh;* facere, *to make, put;* esse, *to be* (worth).

Verbs of BUYING are: emere, *to buy;* vêndere, *to sell;* vēnīre, *to be for sale;* stāre and cônstāre, *to cost, to come to;* prôstāre, licēre, *to be exposed, left (for sale);* condūcere, *to hire;* locāre, *to let.*

§ 176. Genitives of PRICE and VALUE are:

Dear, magnī; *dearer*, plūris; *dearest*, plūrimī, maximī.
Cheap, parvī; *cheaper*, minōris; *cheapest*, minimī.

For / *At* } *so much*, tantī; *how much?* quantī? *nothing*, nihilī.

Equivalents of nihilī, *nothing*, are floccī, *a hair*, naucī, *a trifle*, assis, *a copper*, and the like; and so also hûjus, *that* (a snap of the finger), with the negative. Tantī is often used in the sense of operae pretium est = *it is worth while.*

*Dumnē ob malefacta peream *parvī* [id] aestimo, PLAUT., *So long as I am not killed for my misdeeds, little do I care;* Vêndo meum frūmentum *nōn plūris* quam cēterī, *fortasse* etiam *minōris, I sell my corn not dearer than everybody else, perhaps even cheaper;* rempûblicam *floccī* nōn facere, *not to care a fig for the state.* (Quantī coenās? *what do you give for your dinner?* quantī habitās? *what is the rent of your lodgings?*)

REMARKS.—1. With verbs of Buying, TANTĪ, QUANTĪ, PLŪRIS and MINŌRIS are the only Genitives used: the others stand in the Ablative. **Quantī* oryza empta est? Parvō. HOR., *What did the rice cost? Little.* *Argentum accēpī: *dōte* imperium vêndidī, PLAUT., *I took the money: for a dowry I sold my command.* *Hōc Ithacus velit et *magnō* mercentur Atrīdae, VIRG., *this* (is what) *the Ithacan would wish and the Atridae purchase at a high price.* Aestimo takes the Ablative as well as the Genitive: aestimāre *magnō* and *magnī, to value highly.*

2. Observe the phrases: bonī, aequī bonīque facio, bonī cônsulo, *I put up with, take in good part.*

Digitized by Google

Genitive with Interest and Rēfert.

RULE.

§ 177. INTEREST, *it concerns*, RĒFERT, *it is of importance*, take a Genitive of the Person or Thing concerned: Clōdiī interest, *it is Clodius's interest;* Rēfert compositiōnis, *it is of importance for composition.*

§ 178. Instead of the Personal Pronouns meī, tuī, &c., the Abl. Sing. Fem. of the Possessives is employed: meā interest, meā rēfert, *I am concerned.* This is the common construction of RĒFERT.

REMARK.—Meā seems to agree with rē; comp. ē rē esse, *to be to the interest.*

§ 179. The degree of concern is expressed by an Adverb or a Genitive of price. The object of concern is commonly put in the Infinitive, Accusative and Infinitive, UT with the Subjunctive or an interrogative sentence, occasionally in the Nominative of a neuter pronoun: Caesar dīcere solēbat nōn tam suā quam reīpūblicae interesse ut salvus esset, *Cæsar used to say that it was not of so much importance to him*(self) *as to the State that his life should be spared;* Clōdiī intererat Milōnem perīre, *It was to Clodius' interest that Milo should perish;* Quid tuā id rēfert? *What business is that of yours?* Magnī rēfert quālī in corpore animī locātī sint, *It is of great importance in what sort of body the souls are situated.*

IV. APPARENT GENITIVE (LOCATIVE).

The Locative case Singular of the First and Second Declensions coincides in form with the Genitive: Hence the

RULE.

§ 180. Names of TOWNS or SMALL ISLANDS of the First or Second Declension, and of the Singular Number, are put in the Genitive of the Place Where: Rōmae esse, *to be at Rome;* Corinthī habitāre, *to dwell at Corinth;* Rhodī vīvere, *to live at Rhodes.*

Digitized by Google

REMARKS.—1. Appositions are put in the Ablative commonly with IN: Mīlitēs Albae cônstitērunt in urbe opportūnā, *the soldiers halted at Alba, a conveniently situated town;* Archiās Antiochīae nūtus est celebrī quondam urbe, *Archias was born at Antioch, once a populous city.* When urbs, *city*, oppidum, *town*, or însula, *island*, precedes, the name of the city or island is put in the Ablative: in urbe Rōmā, *in the city* (of) *Rome;* in însula Samō, *in the island* (of) *Samos.*

2. Other locative forms are, domī, *at home* (Genitive, domūs), humī, *on the ground*, and also bellī and mīlitiae, in combination with domī: Parvī sunt forīs arma nisi est cônsilium *domī*, *Arms are of little value abroad unless there is wisdom at home;* humī jacēre, *to lie on the ground;* humī prôsternere, *to throw flat on the ground;* domī mīlitiaeque, bellī domīque, *in peace and in war, in war and in peace.*

3. Domī takes the possessive pronoun in the Genitive: Marcus Drūsus occīsus est domī suae, *M. Drusus was killed at his own house;* also domī aliēnae, *in a strange house;* *Metuis ut domī meae cūrētur dīligenter, TER., *You fear that she will not be carefully nursed in my house;* otherwise in domō castā, *in a pure house;* in domō Periclis, *in the house*(hold) *of Pericles;* in domō, *in the house* (not, *at home*).

ABLATIVE.

§ 181. The Ablative is the Adverbial, as the Genitive is the Adjective case. It contains three elements:

A. Where? B. Whence? C. Wherewith?

In a literal sense, the Ablative is commonly used with Prepositions; in a figurative sense, it is commonly used without Prepositions.

A. The Ablative of the Place Where appears in a figurative sense as the Ablative of the Time When.

B. The Ablative of the Place Whence appears as:

1. The Ablative of Origin.
2. The Ablative of Measure.

C. The Ablative of the Thing Wherewith appears in a figurative sense, as:

1. The Ablative of Manner.
2. The Ablative of Quality.
3. The Ablative of Means.

Digitized by Google

REMARK.—It is impossible to draw the line of demarcation with absolute exactness. So the Ablative of Cause may be derived from any of the three fundamental significations of the case, which is evidently a composite one.

I. THE LITERAL MEANINGS OF THE ABLATIVE.

A. *Ablative of the Place Where.*

Ablātīvus locālis.

RULE.

§ 182. The Ablative answers the question *Where?* and takes as a rule the preposition IN: in portū nāvigo, *I am sailing in harbor;* in scēnā, *on the stage;* sedēre in equō, *to sit on a horse;* in eō flūmine pōns erat, *over that river there was a bridge.*

REMARK.—Verbs of PLACING and kindred significations take the Ablative with IN, to designate the result of the motion: pōnere, *to place;* collocāre, *to put;* statuere, cōnstituere, *to set;* cōnsīdere, *to settle;* dēfīgere, *to plant;* dēmergere, *to plunge;* imprimere, *to press upon;* īnscrībere, *to write upon;* incīdere, *to carve upon:* Plato ratiōnem in capite posuit, īram in pectore locāvit, *Plato has put reason in the head, has placed anger in the breast;* Lūcrētia cultrum in corde dēfīgit, *Lucretia plants a knife in, thrusts a knife down into, her heart;* Philosophī in eīs ipsīs librīs quōs scrībunt dē contemnendā glōriā sua nōmina īnscrībunt, *Philosophers write their own names on* (the titles of) *the very books which they write about contempt of glory;* Index incīditur in aēneīs tabulīs, *An index is engraved on tablets of bronze.* Impōnere is commonly construed with IN and the Accusative: mīlitēs *in* nāvēs impōnere, *to put the soldiers on board the vessels.* (The same observation applies to SUB: *Pōne sub currū nimium propinquī sōlis in terrā domibus negatā, HOR., *Put* (me) *under the chariot of the all-too neighboring sun, in a land denied to dwellings.*)

RULE.

§ 183. Names of CITIES and SMALL ISLANDS of the Third Declension or Plural Number are put in the Ablative of the Place Where, without the preposition IN: Ut Rōmae (§ 180) cōnsulēs sīc Carthāgine quotannīs bīnī rēgēs creābantur, *As at Rome*

Digitized by Google

(two) *consuls, so in Carthage two kings were created yearly;* Tarquinius Superbus mortuus est Cūmīs, *Tarquin the Overbearing died at Cumae.* So also rūre, *in the country.*

REMARK.—Appositions are commonly made with IN: Neāpolī in celeberrimō oppidō, *at Naples, a very populous town.* When URBE, *city*, or OPPIDO, *town*, precedes, the preposition is always employed: in oppidō Neāpolī, *in the town of Naples.* Comp. § 180, R. 1.

RULE.

§ 184. In CITATIONS FROM BOOKS and ENUMERATIONS, the Ablative of the Place Where is used without IN: librō tertiō, *third book;* versū decimō, *tenth verse;* aliō locō, *elsewhere.*

REMARK.—Locus, *place*, used metaphorically, generally omits IN: hōc locō, *in this position, situation;* in hōc locō, *in this place, part of the country.* Librō is used when the whole book, in librō, when merely a passage in the book is devoted to the subject in hand.

RULE.

§ 185. In DESIGNATIONS OF PLACE with TŌTUS, *whole*, and the like, the Ablative of the Place Where is generally used without IN: tōtō orbe terrārum, *in the whole world, throughout the world;* *Battiadēs *tōtō* semper cantābitur *orbe*, Ov., *Battiades* (Callimachus) *will always be sung throughout the world.*

RULE.

§ 186. In all such designations of place as may be regarded in the light of Cause, Manner, or Instrument, the Ablative is used without a preposition: Eādem viā quā vēnit fūgit, *by the same way he came, he fled;* flūmine frūmentum subvehere, *to carry corn down by river;* marī Adriāticō nāvigāre, *to voyage over the Adriatic sea;* terrā marīque bella gerere, *to carry on wars by land and sea;* imperātor mīlitēs (in) castrīs tenēbat, *the general kept his soldiers in camp;* recipere aliquem tectō, oppidō, *to admit a man into one's house, town;* cognātī pugnā Marathōniā interfectī fuerant, *their kinsmen had been killed in the battle of Marathon.*

Digitized by Google

B. *Ablative of the Place Whence.*

Ablātīvus sēparātīvus.

This is the original use of the Ablative proper.

RULE.

§ 187. The Ablative answers the question *Whence?* with or without the prepositions EX, *out of*, DĒ, *from*, AB, *off:* The prepositions are omitted chiefly with verbs of separating: arcēre tectō, *to shut out of a house;* patriā pellere, *to drive from* (one's) *country;* *Cēdāmus patriā, JUV., *Let us withdraw from our native land;* Magistrātū sē abdicāre, *to abdicate an office;* Multōs fortūna līberat *poenā, metū* nēminem, *fortune relieves many of punishment, none of fear;* Alcibiadem Athēniēnsēs *ē cīvitāte* expulērunt, *The Athenians banished Alcibiades from the state;* Hannibal *ex Italiā* dēcēdere coactus est, *Hannibal was forced to withdraw from Italy;* *Crēde mihī mōrēs distant *ā carmine* nōstrō, OV., *Believe me, my character is wide apart from my poetry;* Hostem submovēre statiōne, ex mūrō ac turribus, ā portā, *to dislodge the enemy from his position, from the wall and towers, from the gate.* So also Adjectives of separation: (ab) omnī animī perturbātiōne līberum esse, *to be free from all mental excitement;* (ab) omnibus hūmānīs vitiīs immūnem esse, *to be free from all human vices.*

REMARKS.—1. Compounds with dī (dis) also take the Dative (in poetry): *Paullum sepultae distat inertiae cēlāta virtūs, HOR., *Little doth concealed worth differ from buried inactivity.*

2. The Place whence gives the point of view from which. In English a different translation is often given, though not always necessarily: ā tergō, *in the rear;* ex parte dextrā, *on the right side;* ab oriente, *on the east;* ā tantō spatiō, *at such a distance;* ex fugā, *on the flight* (ā rē frūmentāriā labōrāre, *to be embarrassed in the matter of provisions*).

Digitized by Google

RULE.

§ 188. Names of CITIES and SMALL ISLANDS are put in the Ablative of the Place Whence without a preposition: Dēmarātus fūgit Tarquiniōs Corinthō, *Demaratus fled to Tarquinii from Corinth;* Dolābella Dēlō proficiscitur, *Dolabella sets out from Delos.*

REMARKS.—1. The prepositions AB (Ā) and EX (Ē) are sometimes used for the sake of greater exactness. When the common nouns URBE, *city*, and OPPIDUM, *town*, are employed, the use of the preposition is the rule: ex Apollōniā Pontī urbe, *from Apollonia, a city of Pontus;* ex oppidō Gergoviā, *from the town of Gergovia.* Comp. §§ 180, R., 183, R.

2. Domō, *from home;* humō, *from the ground;* rūre, *from the country,* follow the construction of the names of cities.

3. The poets use the Ablative freely as a whence case.

RULE.

§ 189. Verbs of DEPRIVING and FILLING, of PLENTY and WANT, take the Ablative: Dēmocritus dīcitur *oculīs* sē prīvâsse, *Democritus is said to have deprived himself of his eyes;* Deus *bonīs* omnibus explēvit mundum, *God has filled the universe with all blessings;* vacāre *culpā* magnum est sōlātium, *to be void of blame is a great comfort;* abundant dulcibus *vitiīs, they abound in charming faults;* *Nōn caret *effectū* quod voluēre duō, Ov., *What two have resolved on never lacks execution;* *Nōn eget hīc *medicīs* nōn *lectīs* mollibus aeger, PROP., *He does not need physicians nor a soft couch in his sickness.*

REMARKS.—1. Egeo and indigeo, *I am in need of,* also take the Genitive: Nōn tam artis indigent quam labōris, *They are not so much in need of skill as of industry.*

2. Adjectives of PLENTY and WANT take the Genitive, but some of them follow the analogy of the verb (§170, R. 1): Onustī cibō et vīnō, *laden with food and wine;* *Pollicitīs dīves quīlibet esse potest, Ov., *Anybody can be rich in promises;* *Amor et melle et felle est fēcundissimus, PLAUT., *Love is fruitful both in honey and in gall* (of acrimony.)

Digitized by Google

RULE.

§ 190. OPUS EST, *there is work* (*need*), with the Dative, takes an Ablative of the Thing Needed: but the Thing Needed may be the subject and OPUS the predicate:

Opus est mihi librō, librīs, *I have need of a book, of books.*
Liber mihi opus est, *a book is a necessity to me.*
Librī mihi opus sunt, *books are a necessity to me.*

Auctōritāte tuā nōbīs opus est, *we need your authority;* quid opus est verbīs, *what is the use of words;* dux nōbīs opus est, *we want a leader;* quid opus est mātūrāre? *What is the use* (need) *of hurrying?* or mātūrītō. So also ŪSUS: speculō mulierī ūsus est, *the woman wants a mirror.* The Genitive is rare.

C. ABLATIVE OF THE THING WHEREWITH.

Ablātīvus Sociātīvus.

RULE.

§ 191. The Ablative of Attendance takes the preposition CUM, *with:* arcula *cum* ornāmentīs, *a little box with ornaments;* *Nec *tēcum* possum vīvere nec sine tē, MART., *I cannot live with you nor without you.*

REMARKS.—1. In military phrases, the troops with which a march is made are put in the Ablative, with or without CUM; generally without CUM when an adjective is used (Ablative of Manner), with CUM when no adjective is used (Ablative of Attendance): Rēx Hellēspontum *cum* exercitū trānsiit, *The king crossed the Hellespont with an army;* Dictātor (cum) ingentī exercitū ab urbe prŏfectus est, *The dictator set out from the city with a great army.*

2. Not to be confounded with the above is the Instrumental Ablative: nāvibus prŏficiscī, *to set out by ship.* So also with verbs which denote other military actions: hostēs sagittāriīs et funditōribus terrēbat, *he was frightening the enemy with archers and slingers;* *Nīl actum est nisi Poenō mīlite portās, Frangimus, JUV., *Naught is accomplished unless we break the gates with the Punic soldiery* (as if with a battering-ram). § 12, R. 2.

Digitized by Google

II. The Figurative Meanings of the Ablative.

A. The Place Where is transferred to the Time When.

Ablative of Time.

Rule.

§ 192. *a.* Time when or within which is put in the Ablative: *Quā nocte* nātus est Alexander *eādem* Dīānae Ephesiae templum dēflagrāvit, *On the same night on which Alexander was born, the temple of Diana of Ephesus burnt to the ground;* *Nocte dīēque potest aliēnum sūmere vultum, Juv., *night and day he can assume another man's countenance;* Sāturnī stella trīgintā ferē ânnīs cursum suum cônficit, *The planet Saturn completes its period in about thirty years.*

Remarks.—1. Time within which may embrace both extremities, and so be equivalent to per, *through*, and the Accusative: Pugnātum est continenter hōrīs quinque, *They fought five hours continuously.* Tōtus, *whole, all*, of time, follows the analogy of the tōtus of space (§ 185): *Tōtā nocte pluit, redeunt spectācula māne, Virg., *All night it rained: the shows came back in the morning.*

2. Especially to be noted is the Ablative of time with hic, *this;* ille, *that:* Hīs ânnīs quadringentīs Rōmae rēx erat? *Was there a king at Rome within these four hundred years?* hīs duōbus mēnsibus, *within the last two months.* Transferred to the Orātio Oblīqua hic becomes ille: Diodōrus respondit sē paucīs illīs diēbus argentum mīsisse Lilybaeum, *Diodorus answered that he had sent money to Lilybaeum within a few days, a few days before.*

Rule.

§ 192. *b.* The Ablative with the preposition in is used of points within a period of time, or of the character of the time: bis in diē, *twice a day;* in pueritiā, *in boyhood;* in adolēscentiā, *in youth;* with an adjective, in may be omitted: prīmā pueritiā, *in early boyhood;* illō tempore, *at that time;* in illō tempore, *in those circumstances, at that crisis;* in tempore or

Digitized by Google

tempore = *at the right time;* bellō Persicō, *at the time of the Persian war;* in bellō, *in war times;* in pāce, *in peace times.*

REMARK.—DĒ, *from*, is also used in designations of time: *Ut jugulent hominēs surgunt dē nocte latrōnēs, HOR., *To kill people, highwaymen rise by night*, i. e., *while it is yet night.* Intrā biennium, *within two years, in less than two years;* inter tot ānnōs ūnus innocēns imperātor inventus est, *in so many years* (all those years, but) *one innocent emperor was found;* cum prīmā lūce, *with daybreak.*

B. The Place Whence is transferred—1. To Origin; 2. To Measure.

1. *Ablative of Origin.*

RULE.

§ 193. PARTICIPLES which designate BIRTH take the Ablative of Origin, with or without the Prepositions EX, *out of*, DĒ, *from:* **Dīs* genite et genitūre Deōs, VIRG., *Begotten of Gods and destined to beget Gods!* *Sate *sanguine* dīvum! VIRG., *Offspring of the blood of Gods!* Dĭānam (*ex*) *Jove et Lātōnā* nātam esse accēpimus, *We have learned that Diana is the daughter of Jove and Latona;* *Maecēnās *atavīs* ēdite rēgibus, HOR., *Maecenas, offshoot of ancestral kings;* *Ōdērunt nātōs *dē pellice*, JUV., *They hate the offspring of the concubine.* AB, *off*, is employed of remote progenitors: Plērīque Belgae sunt ortī ab Germānīs, *most Belgians are descended from the Germans.*

2. *Ablative of Measure.*

The Ablative gives the point from which a thing is measured or treated. See § 187, R. 2.

RULE.

§ 194. The Ablative is put in answer to the questions FROM WHAT POINT OF VIEW? ACCORDING TO WHAT? BY WHAT? Magnōs hominēs *virtūte* mētīmur, nōn *fortūnā*, *We measure great men*

Digitized by Google

by worth, not by fortune; Dēscrīptus erat populus Rōmānus *cēnsū, ordinibus, aetātibus, The people of Rome was drawn off according to income, rank* (and) *age;* *Sī quaeris cuī sint similēs, cognōsceris *illīs*, Ov., *If you ask whom they are like,* (why) *you are known by them;* *Ennius *ingeniō* maximus *arte* rudis, Ov., *Ennius in genius great, in art unskilled.* Crīne ruber, *red haired;* captus oculīs (literally, caught in the eyes), *blind;* captus mente, *insane;* meā sententiā, *according to my opinion;* jūre, *by right;* lēge, *by law.*

REMARKS.—1. Prepositions are also used: Caesaris adventus ex colōre vestītūs cognitus est, *The arrival of Caesar was known by the color of his clothing;* Dē gestū intelligo quid respondeās, *I understand by your gesture what answer you are giving;* ex lēge, *according to law;* ex pactō, *according to agreement;* ex (dē) mōre, *according to custom;* ex animī sententiā, *according to (my) heart's desire;* ex ūsū, *useful;* *Ab animō aeger fuī, PLAUT., *At heart I was sick.*

2. DIGNUS, *worthy*, and INDIGNUS, *unworthy*, are most conveniently referred to this head: *Digne puer meliōre flammā, HOR.; *Tua vītā dignior aetās, VIRG. § 170, R. 3. So also dignor, *I deem worthy.*

RULE.

§ 195. The ABLATIVE of MEASURE is used with the COMPARATIVE instead of QUAM, *than*, with the Nominative or Accusative: Tunica propior palliō, *The shirt is nearer than the cloak;* Phīdiae simulâcrīs cōgitāre possumus pulchriōra (= quam simulâcra), *We can imagine more beautiful things than the statues of Phidias.* So also after adverbs, but not so freely in prose: Sapientius tē ipsō, *more wisely than yourself;* *Pulchrum ornātum turpēs mōrēs pejus caenō collinunt, PLAUT., *A bad character besmirches fine clothes worse than mud;* *Cūr Sybaris olīvum sanguine vīperīnō cautius vītat? (= quam sanguinem vīperīnum), HOR., *why does Sybaris avoid oil more carefully than the blood of a viper?* See § 111.

REMARKS.—1. The comparative is also employed with the Ablative of certain abstract substantives and adjectives used as substantives: Opī-

Digitized by Google

niōne celerius vēnit, *He came more quickly than was thought* (=quam opīnio erat); plūs aequō, *more than was fair.*

2. Alius, with the Ablative, *other than*, is poetic.

RULE.

§ 196. MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is put in the Ablative: Turrēs dēnīs pedibus quam mūrus altiōrēs sunt, *The towers are* (by) *ten feet higher than the wall;* *Perfer et obdūrā: *multō* graviōra tulīstī, Ov., *Endure to the end and be firm: you have borne much more grievous burdens;* * *Quōque* minor spēs est, *hōc* magis ille cupit, Ov., *The less his hope the greater his desire;* * *Hoc* sōlō propior quod amīcōs conjugis ōdit, Juv. (§ 311.)

REMARKS.—1. This rule applies to verbs involving difference as well as to comparatives: Aesculāpiī templum quinque millibus passuum ab urbe Epidaurō distat, *The temple of Aesculapius is five miles from the city of Epidaurus.*

2. The Accusative is sometimes employed.

3. Especially to be noted is the use of the Ablative of Measure with ANTE, *before*, and POST, *after*. Paucīs ante diēbus, Paucīs diēbus ante, *a few days before;* paucīs post diēbus, paucīs diēbus post, *a few days after, afterward.* Duōbus ânnīs postquam Rōma condita est, *Two years after Rome was founded;* Paulō post Trojam captam, *A little while after the taking of Troy.* The Accusative can also be employed: post paucōs ânnōs, *after a few years;* ante paucōs ânnōs, *a few years before;* and the ordinal as well as the cardinal numbers: *two hundred years after(ward)* may be:

Ducentīs ânnīs post	*or*	Ducentēsimō ânnō post,
Post ducentōs ânnōs	"	Post ducentēsimum ânnum.

Ante hōs sex mênsēs, *six months ago* (comp. 192 *a.* R. 2): also, abhinc sex mênsēs, abhinc sex mênsibus.

Digitized by Google

C. *Ablative of the Thing Wherewith.*

Ablātīvus sociātīvus. Ablative of Attendance.

1. *Ablative of Manner.*

RULE.

§ 197. The Ablative of Manner answers the question *How?* and is used with the Preposition CUM, *with*, when it has no Adjective, with or without CUM when it has an Adjective: Miltiadēs summā aequitāte rēs cônstituit Chersonēsī, *Miltiades settled the affairs of the Chersonese with the greatest fairness;* *Nōn facile est aequā commoda mente patī, Ov., *It is not easy to bear good fortune with an even temper;* cum cūrā scrībere, *to write with care;* magnā cūrā, or cum magnā cūrā, magnā cum cūrā, *with great care.*

REMARK.—Several Ablatives are used adverbially without an Adjective or Preposition: ordine, *in an orderly manner*; silentiō, *silently;* cāsū, *by chance, accidentally;* viā et ratiōne, *methodically;* dolō, fraude, *fraudulently.* It is sometimes hard to distinguish between the manner and the instrument: vī, *violently* and *by violence;* vī et armīs, *by force of arms:* pedibus, *afoot*, nāvibus, *by ship.* Notice, also, the use of per, *through*, with the Accusative: per vim, *by violence;* per lītterās, *by letter.*

2. *Ablative of Quality.*

RULE.

§ 198. The ABLATIVE OF QUALITY has no Preposition, and is always found in combination with an Adjective Attribute, or an equivalent; Āgēsilāus statūrā fuit humilī, *Agesilaus was* (a man) *of low stature;* Cato singulārī fuit prūdentiā et industriā, *Cato was* (a man) *of unique foresight and energy;* *Ista turpiculō puella nāsō, CAT., *That girl of yours with the ugly nose;* clāvī ferreī digitī pollicis crassitūdinis, *Iron nails of the thickness of your thumb.*

REMARK.—External and transient qualities are put by preference in the Ablative; while such qualities as *measure*, *number*, *time*, and *space*, are put in the Genitive only.

Digitized by Google

3. *Ablative of Means.*

RULE.

§ 199. The Instrument is put in the Ablative without a Preposition; the Agent in the Ablative, with the Preposition AB (Ā) (§ 12); while the Person through whom is expressed by the Preposition PER, and the Accusative: Pyrrhus lapide interfectus est, *Pyrrhus was killed by a stone;* Pyrrhus ā muliere interfectus est, *Pyrrhus was killed by a woman:*

Xerxēs certior factus est, *Xerxes was informed,*
1. nûntiō, *by a message.*
2. ā nûntiō, *by a messenger.*
3. per nûntium, *by means of a messenger.*

* Nec *bene prōmeritīs* capitur neque tangitur *īrā*, LUCR., (God) *is not* (to be) *cajoled by merit nor touched by anger;* *Ipse docet quid agam: fās est et *ab hoste* docērī, OV. (§ 18); *Discite sānārī *per quem* didicistis amāre, OV., *Learn to be healed by means of* (him by) *whom you learned to love.*

REMARKS.—1. When the Instrument is personified and regarded as an Agent, or the Agent is regarded as an Instrument, the constructions are reversed (§ 12. R. 2.)

2. Notice under this head: assuētus labōre, *accustomed to labor* (familiarized with labor); Quid fīet nāve? *What will become of the ship?* Quid mē futūrum est? *What is to become of me?*

3. Nītor, *I stay myself*, is construed with the Ablative, with or without IN; Hastīlī nixus, *leaning on a spear* (stayed by a spear); ējus in vītā nītēbātur salūs cīvitātis, *The weal of the State depended on his life.*

4. *Ablative of Price.*

RULE.

§ 200. DEFINITE PRICE is put in the Ablative: Vīgintī

Digitized by Google

talentīs ūnam ōrātiōnem vēndidit, *He sold one speech for twenty talents.* Other examples, see § 176, R. 1.

REMARK.—Mūtāre, *to exchange*, is put with Accusative of the Thing Given and the Ablative of the Thing Received in exchange, or (less frequently) the reverse: Miseram pācem bellō mūtāre, *to (give in) exchange a wretched peace for war* (or, *to get in exchange for war a wretched peace*); *Īma summīs mūtāre, *to exchange high and low (to turn things upside down)*; *Cūr valle permūtem Sabīnā dīvitiās operōsiōrēs, HOR., *Why should I exchange my Sabine vale for riches which will breed* (me) *greater trouble.*

5. *Ablative with Sundry Verbs.*

RULE.

§ 201. The Deponent Verbs ŪTOR, ABŪTOR, FRUOR, FUNGOR, POTIOR, and VESCOR, take the Ablative: Victōriā ūtī nēscīs, *How to make use of victory you know not;* abūtēre patientiā nōstrā, *you will abuse our long-suffering;* lacte vescēbantur, *they fed on milk* (made their food of milk); lūce fruimur, *we enjoy the light;* imperiō potīrī, *to possess one's self of the rule;* fungī mūnere, *to acquit one's self of a duty.*

REMARKS.—1. These Ablatives are commonly regarded as Ablatives of the Instrument. They have been grouped here for convenience of reference. In older Latin they are sometimes combined with the Accusative. Hence they have a gerundive: in mūnere fungendō, *in discharging a duty.* § 218, R. 4.

2. Ūtī aliquō amīcō, *to have a man to friend* (to enjoy his friendship).

3. Vīvo, *I live*, is construed like vescor: aliēnā misericordiā vīvo, *I live on the charity of others.* Potior (*I possess myself*) sometimes takes the Genitive; always potīrī rērum, *to possess the supreme power.*

D. *Ablative of Cause.*

The Ablative of Cause may be referred to so many classes, that it is most convenient to regard it as a class by itself.

RULE.

§ 202. The Ablative of Cause is used without a preposition, chiefly with verbs of emotion: *Castor gaudet equīs, HOR.,

Digitized by Google

Castor rejoices in horses; Quīdam vitiīs suīs glōriantur, *some make a boast of their vices;* Quis poterit fortūnae stabilitāte fīdere, *who can trust the stability of fortune?* Officia dēserunt mollitiā animī, *they shirk their duties from effeminacy of temper;* *Ōdērunt peccāre bonī virtūtis amōre, HOR., *The good hate to sin from love of virtue;* jussū cīvium, *at the bidding of the citizens;* meō rogātū, *at my request,* and other verbal ablatives. So also causā and grātiā, *for the sake of.*

REMARKS.—1. The moving cause is often expressed by a participle with the ablative: addūctus, *led;* ardēns, *fired;* commōtus, *stirred up;* incitātus, *egged on;* incēnsus, *inflamed;* impulsus, *driven on,* īrā, *by anger;* odiō, *by hate.* Metū, metū perterritus, *from fear* — propter metum.

2. The preventing cause is expressed by prae, *for;* *Prae gaudiō ubi sim nēscio, TER., *I know not where I am for joy.*

E. *Ablative Absolute.*

§ 203. The so-called Ablative Absolute is an Ablative of Manner with a participle, and serves to modify the verbal predicate of a sentence. Instead of the participle, a predicative substantive or adjective can be employed.

The Ablative Absolute represents a great variety of relations: Xerxe regnante may mean: WHILE *Xerxes is, was reigning;* BECAUSE *Xerxes is, was reigning;* IF *Xerxes is, were reigning;* ALTHOUGH *Xerxes is, was reigning;* Xerxe victō, *Xerxes being, having been, conquered;* Xerxe rēge, *while Xerxes was king;* Patre vīvō, WHILE *father is, was alive, in father's lifetime.* Examples: see § 459 fol.

REMARKS.—1. As the Latin language has no Perf. Part. Active, except the Deponent, which is thus used, the Passive construction is far more common than in English: Tunc juvenēs veste positā corpora oleō perunxērunt, *Then the youths, (having) laid aside their clothing, anointed their bodies with oil,* or, *laid aside their clothing and anointed their bodies with oil.*

2. The Ablative Absolute is often to be rendered by a co-ordinate sentence: Zeuxis flāgitāvit ut remōtō linteō pictūram ostenderet, *Zeuxis asked him to remove the linen drapery, and show the picture.*

3. As a rule, the Ablative Absolute can stand only when it is not iden-

Digitized by Google

tical with the subject, object, or dependent case of the verbal predicate. *Manlius slew the Gaul and stripped him of his necklace*, is to be rendered: Manlius caesum Gallum torque spoliāvit. The rule is most frequently violated when the dependent case is in the Genitive: Jugurtha frātre meō interfectō regnum *ējus* sceleris suī praedam fēcit, *Jugurtha killed my brother, and* (= after killing my brother) *made his throne the booty of his crime.*

PREPOSITIONS.

§ 204. The Prepositions are local adverbs, which serve to define more narrowly the local ideas of the cases. The only cases that convey local ideas are the Accusative and Ablative. The Accusative, as the case of the Direct Object, represents the relation *whither?* the Ablative represents the relations *whence?* and *where?*

REMARKS.—1. In verbs of motion, the result of the motion is often considered as *rest in a place* (where): pōnere in locō, *to put in a place.* (§ 182 R.)

2. In verbs of rest, the rest is sometimes conceived as the result of motion: habēre in potestātem, *to have* (got) *in* (to) one's power; in carcerem asservāre, *to keep in jail.*

Position of the Preposition.

§ 205. The Preposition generally precedes the case.

REMARKS.—1. VERSUS, *-ward*, and TENUS, *as far as*, are postpositive, and so is CUM, *with*, in combination with the Personal Pronouns and Relative: mēcum, *with me;* * Nec tēcum possum vīvere nec sine tē, MART., *I can't live either with you or without you;* sēcum, *with one's-self;* quōcum (also quīcum), *with whom* (likewise, cum quō); quibuscum, *with whom*, *wherewith* (also, cum quibus).

2. Other prepositions are postponed chiefly after the relative: quem contrā, *against whom;* quōs inter, *among whom;* quō dē, *from whom.*

3. Poets and affected writers are very free in putting the Preposition after its case.

§ 206. The Preposition is often put between the Attribute

Digitized by Google

and the Case: magnō cum metū, *with great fear:* whereas the Genitive and other forms of the Attribute and connecting particles are often put between the Preposition and its case: Post vērō Sullae victōriam, *but after Sulla's victory.*

REMARK.—Especially to be noted is the position of PER, *through* (by), in adjurations: *Lȳdia dīc per omnēs Tē deōs ōrō, HOR., **Lydia, tell, by all the gods, I pray thee.*

Repetition and Omission of the Preposition.

§ 207. With different words which stand in the same connection, the same Preposition is repeated, when the Preposition is emphatic, or the individual words are to be distinguished: et ex urbe et ex agrīs, *both from* (the) *city and from* (the) *country;* otherwise it is omitted: P. Clōdius ā Milōne candidātō cônsulātūs jugulātus est, *P. C. was killed by Milo, a candidate for the consulship;* Cimōn in eandem invidiam incidit (in) quam pater suus, *Cimon fell into the same odium as his father;* *Discite sānārī per quem (= per eum per quem) didicistis amāre, Ov. (§ 199.)

REMARK.—Several Prepositions, such as contrā, *on the other hand*, extrā, *outside*, înfrā, *below*, suprā, *above*, ultrā, *beyond*, are used also as adverbs without a case: *Îliacōs intrā mūrōs peccātur et extrā, HOR., *Inside of the walls of Ilium sin is wrought, and outside (too).*

§ 208. I. Prepositions construed with the Accusative are:—

ante,	apud,	ad,	adversus,
circum,	circā,	çitrā,	cis,
ergā,	contrā,	inter,	extrā,
înfrā,	intrā,	juxtā,	ob,
penes,	pōne,	post and	praeter,
prope,	propter,	per,	secundum,
supra,	versus,	ultrā,	trâns.

Digitized by Google

AD, *at, to* (comp. ad-do, *I put to*).

ADVERSUS, ADVERSUM, [*turned to*], *towards, over against, against.*

ANTE [*over against, facing*], *before.*

APUD, *at, near, in the presence of* (official), *with* (French, *chez*).

CIRCUM, CIRCĀ, *around, about.*

CIRCITER, *about* (with numerals).

CIS, CITRĀ, *this side, short of*, correlative of ULTRĀ.

CONTRĀ (= cum + tra), *opposite to, over against, opposed to, against.*

ERGĀ, *towards*, seldom of place; generally of friendly relations.

EXTRĀ, *without, outside of beside, opposed to* INTRĀ.

INFRĀ, *beneath, lower down, later.*

INTER, *between, within, among.*

INTRĀ, *within.*

JUXTĀ [*adjoining*], *hard by, near, next to.*

OB (*over against, op-posite to*), *right before, with a view to, for.*

PENES, *with = in the power of;* Hōc nōn penes mē est, *this does not lie with me.*

PER (*along*), *through, by way of, owing to, by.*

PŌNE, *behind* (rare).

POST, *behind, after.*

PRAETER, *on before, past, beyond, contrary to.*

PROPE, *near.*

PROPTER, *near, on account of.*

SECUNDUM [*following*], *next to, immediately behind, after, along, according to.*

SUPRĀ, *above, higher up* (*earlier*).

TRÂNS, *on the other side, beyond.*

ULTRĀ, *on that side, beyond.*

VERSUS, *-ward* (always postponed). Rōmam versus, *Romeward.*

§ 209. II. Prepositions construed with the Ablative are: —

Ā, AB, and ABS, *off, of, from, by* (opposed to AD).

Before vowels and h: AB; before consonants: Ā *or* AB; ABS, used chiefly before tē, *thee.*

ABSQUE (*off*), *without* (antiquated).

Digitized by Google

CLAM (*secretly*), *unknown to.*
CŌRAM, *face to face with, in the presence of* (accidental).
CUM, *with.*
DĒ, *down from, from, of* = *about.*
EX, Ē, *out, of, from* (opposed to IN).
Before vowels and consonants, EX; before consonants, Ē.
PRAE, *in front of, side by side with, for* (preventive cause).
PRŌ, *before, for.*
SINE, *without*, opp. to CUM (no local signification).
TENUS (*to the extent of*), *as far as* (occasionally with the Genitive).

§ 210. III. Prepositions construed with the Accusative and Ablative.

	ACCUSATIVE.	ABLATIVE.
IN, *in*,	*into, for* (purpose),	*in.*
SUB, *under*,	*about* (of time),	*about* (of time) [rarely].
SUPER, *over*,	*over, above, over and above*,	*about* = DĒ (in prose, rarely *over*).
SUBTER, *under*,	*under, beneath*,	*under, beneath* [rarely].

The Infinitive as a Noun.

§ 211. The Infinitive is the substantive form of the verb. The Infinitive differs from a verbal substantive, in that it retains the adverbial attribute, the designations of voice and time, and the regimen of the verb: amāre, *to love;* valdē amāre, *to love hugely;* amārī, *to be loved;* amāvisse, *to have loved;* amāre aliquem, *to love a man;* nocēre alicuī, *to hurt a man.*

In consequence of this double nature, the Infinitive may be used as a noun or as a verb.

§ 212. The Infinitive, as a Noun, is used regularly in two cases only—Nominative and Accusative. In the other cases its place is supplied by the Gerund and the Ablative Supine.

Digitized by Google

The Infinitive as a Subject.

§ 213. The Infinitive, as a Subject, is treated as a neuter substantive: Errāre hūmānum est, *to err is human;* Dulce est prō patriā morī, *It is sweet to die for one's country;* *Incipere multō est quam impetrāre facilius, PLAUT., *Beginning is much easier than winning;* Contendisse decōrum est, OV. (§ 3.)

The Infinitive as an Object.

RULE.

§ 214. The Infinitive is used as the Object of Auxiliary verbs which denote WILL, POWER, DUTY, HABIT, INCLINATION, RESOLVE, CONTINUANCE, END, and the like, with their opposites: *Et precor ut *possim* tūtius *esse* miser, OV., *And I pray that I may be more safely wretched;* *Discite sānārī per quem didicistis amāre, OV. (§ 199); *Vulnera quae fēcit *dēbuit* ipse *patī*, OV. (§ 49, R.); *Nōn ego, quod primō meminī *sperāre solēbam*, jam precor ut conjux tū meus *esse velīs*, OV., *I do not now ask (what at first, I remember, I was wont to hope) that you will consent to be my wedded husband;* Cato *esse* quam *vidērī* bonus *mālēbat, Cato preferred being* (good) *to seeming good;* *Maledictīs *dēterrēre* nē scrībat *parat*, TER. (§ 334); Vereor laudāre praesentem, *I feel a delicacy about praising one who is present; Vincere scīs*, Hannibal; victōriā *ūtī nescīs, How to conquer, you know, Hannibal; how to make use of victory, you know not;* *Rēligiōnum animum nōdīs *exsolvere pergo*, LUCR., *I go on to loose the spirit from the bonds of superstitious creeds;* *Atque ut vīvāmus *vīvere dēsinimus*, MART., *And that we may live, we cease to live.*

REMARKS.—1. Habeo scrībere, *I have it* (in my power) *to write* = possum scrībere; Nihil habeo ad tē scrībere, *I cannot write any thing to you.*

2. Verbs which denote RESOLVE take UT, *that*, as well as the Inf.

Digitized by Google

§ 330. So, also, opto, *I desire.* § 330. The poets use the Infinitive freely, like UT, with the Subjunctive, the Accusative Supine, or AD, *to*, with the Gerund or Gerundive. *Nōn ferrō Libycōs populāre penātēs vēnimus, VIRG., *We have not come to lay waste the households of Libya with the sword;* *Semper in Ōceanum *mittit* mē *quaerere* gemmās, PROP., *She is always sending me to the ocean to look for pearls.*

3. Verbs which denote HOPE and PROMISE take the Accusative and Future Infinitive: spēro mē hoc adeptūrum esse, *I hope to, that I shall, obtain this;* prōmittēbat sē ventūrum esse, *he kept promising that he would come, to come.* Doceo, *I teach*, jubeo, *I bid*, veto, *I forbid*, sino, *I let*, take the Infinitive as the Accusative of the Inner Object. (§ 131.) Dionȳsius nē collum tōnsōrī committeret *tondēre* fīliās suās *docuit*, *Dionysius, to keep from trusting his neck to a barber, taught his daughters to shave* (taught them shaving); *Esse bonam facile est ubi quod *vetet esse* remotum est, OV. (§ 320); *Nīl nisi mē patriīs *jussit abesse* focīs, OV., *He only bade me be gone from my ancestral hearthstone.*

Infinitive as a Predicate.

§ 215. The Infinitive, as a verb Substantive, may be used as a Predicate after the copula ESSE, *to be*, and the like: vīvere est cōgitāre, *to live is to think.*

On the Infinitive as a Verb, see § 75 fol.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

§ 216. The other cases of the Infinitive are supplied by the Gerund. With Prepositions, the Gerund, and not the Infinitive, is employed. As a verbal form, the Gerund, like the Infinitive, takes the same case as the verb.

PARADIGM.

§ 217.

NOM. Legere difficile est, *reading, to read, is hard to do.*
GEN. Ars legendī, *the art of reading.*
Puer studiōsus est legendī, *the boy is zealous of reading.*
DAT. [Puer operam dat legendō, *the boy devotes himself to reading.*] (See § 220.)

Digitized by Google

ACC. Puer cupit legere, *the boy is desirous to read.*
Puer prōpēnsus est ad legendum, *the boy has a bent toward reading.*
ABL. Puer discit legendō, *the boy learns by reading.*

The Gerundive for the Gerund.

RULE.

§ 218. Instead of the Gerund, with an Accusative object, the object is generally put in the case of the Gerund, with the Gerundive as an attribute.

PARADIGM.

GEN.	Plācandī	Deī,	*of appeasing God.*
DAT.	Plācandō	Deō,	*for appeasing God.*
ABL.	Plācandō	Deō,	*by appeasing God.*

REMARKS.—1. This construction is invariably employed with Prepositions: —

Ad plācandōs Deōs, *for appeasing the Gods.*
In placandīs Deīs, *in appeasing the Gods.*

2. EXCEPTION: A Neuter Adjective, used as a Substantive, is never changed: studium agendī aliquid, *desire of doing something.*

3. The Gerund is the Substantive of the Gerundive, which is in form a Present Participle Passive. (§ 46, R.) The active sense of the Gerund is only apparent. The English verbal in *-ing*, by which it is translated, is also used as a passive: *the church is building.* The Gerundive, as an attribute, becomes characteristic. As amāns not only = quī amat, but also = quī amet, so amandus = quī amētur.

4. The Gerundive can be formed only from Transitive Verbs, the Gerund from any: EXCEPTIONS: ūtendus, *to be used;* fruendus, *to be enjoyed;* potiendus, *to be possessed;* fungendus, *to be discharged;* vescendus, *to be eaten* (§201 R.), which, however, are used only in the oblique cases. Further, medendus, *to be healed;* paenitendus, *to be regretted.*

Valetūdinī parcendum est, *the health must be spared;* *ūtendum est aetāte, *life must be enjoyed* (but: expetuntur dīvitiae ad perfruendās voluptātēs, *riches are sought for the enjoyment of pleasures*).

Digitized by Google

Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive.

§ 219. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after substantives and adjectives which require a complement: ars vīvendī, the art of living; *Et propter vītam vīvendī perdere causās, Juv., *And on account of life, to lose the reasons for living;* *Raucaque garrulitās studiumque immāne loquendī, Ov., *Hoarse chattiness, and a monstrous love of talking;* *Nōn est plācandī spēs mihi nulla Deī, Ov., *I am not without hope of appeasing God;* perītus nandī, *skilled in swimming;* Neuter suī prōtegendī corporis memor erat, *neither thought of shielding his own body;* nōmen carendī, *the word "carēre"* (go without).

Remarks.—1. As meī, tuī, suī, nōstrī, vestrī, are, in their origin, neuter singulars, from meum, *my being;* tuum, *thy being;* suum, *one's being*, &c., the Gerundive is put in the same form: cônservandī suī, *of preserving themselves;* vestrī adhortandī, *of exhorting you;* *Cōpia plācandī sit modo parva tuī, Ov., *Let* (me) *only have a slight chance of trying to appease you* (feminine). Similar constructions are also found with other words: exemplōrum ēligendī potestās, *power of choosing examples;* facultās agrōrum condōnandī, *competence to give away lands.*

2. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is occasionally used (without causā) to express design: cônservandae lībertātis, *as a matter of preserving liberty, for the sake of preserving liberty;* firmandae concordiae, *to strengthen harmony.* Generally ad with the Accusative, ad firmandam concordiam.

3. Tempus est, *it is time;* cônsilium est, *it is my* (your, his) *plan;* and a few others may be used with the Infinitive: *Tempus abīre tibī est, *It is time for you to go away.* The poets are very free in the use of the Infinitive for the Genitive of the Gerund: *(At) sēcūra quiēs et *nescia fallere* vīta, Virg., *Quiet without a care, and a life ignorant of disappointment.*

Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive.

§ 220. The Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after words which imply capacity and adaptation: aqua ūtilis bibendō, *water good for drinking;* lignum

Digitized by Google

āridum māteria est idōnea ēliciendīs ignibus, *dry wood is a fit substance for striking fire* (sparks). Especially to be noticed is the Dative with ESSE, *to be;* esse solvendō, *to be (ready) for paying, to be solvent;* scit sē esse onerī ferendō, *he knows that he is* (equal) *to bearing the burden;* Decemvirī lēgibus scrībundīs, *Decemvirs for writing laws, charged with writing laws.*

Accusative of the Gerundive.

§ 221. The Gerundive is used in the Accusative of the object effected: Conōn mūrōs reficiendōs cūrat, *Conon has the wall's rebuilt;* Aedem faciendam locāvit, *he let the* (contract of) *building the temple;* patriam dīripiendam relinquimus, *we leave our country to be plundered.*

Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive.

§ 222. The Ablative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used as the ordinary Ablative with or without the Prepositions IN, *in;* AB, *off;* DĒ, *from;* EX, *out of:* standō fessus erat, *he was tired from standing;* in legendīs ōrātōribus, *in reading the orators;* liber dē contemnendā morte, *a treatise on the contempt of death.*

CAUTION: SINE, *without*, is not used with the Ablative of the Gerund or Gerundive.

SUPINE.

§ 223. The Supine is a Verbal Noun, which appears only in the Acccusative and Ablative cases.

The Accusative Supine.

§ 224. The Accusative Supine (Supine in -UM) is used chiefly after Verbs of Motion: gallī gallīnāceī cum sōle eunt cubitum, *chickens go to roost with the sun;* *Stultitia est vēnātum dūcere invītās canēs, PLAUT., *It is folly to take un-*

Digitized by Google

willing dogs a-hunting; **Spectātum* admissī rīsum teneātis amīcī? Hor., (If) *let in to the show, could you keep down a laugh, my friends?* *Hostis est uxor invīta quae ad virum *nūptum* datur, Plaut., *An enemy is the wife who is given to a man in marriage against her will.*

Remark.—Especially common is the use of the Supine after the verb īre, *to go;* perditum īre, *to go a destroying;* bonōrum praemia ēreptum eunt, *they are going to take away the rewards of the good.* The Future Infinitive Passive is actually made up of the Passive Infinitive of īre, *to go*, īrī, and the Supine: Dīcunt rempūblicam perditum īrī, *they say that people are going to destroy the state* (īrī from ītur, § 6, R. 1), *that the state will be destroyed.*

The Ablative Supine.

§ 225. The Ablative Supine (Supine in -ū) is used chiefly with Adjectives as the Ablative of *the point of view from which:* mīrābile dictū, *wonderful to tell, in the telling;* hoc dictū quam rē facilius est, *this is easier in the saying than in fact = easier said than done;* sī hoc fās est dictū, *if it is right to say so.*

Remarks.—1. The use of the Ablative Supine is confined to a few verbs, chiefly: dictū, *to tell;* factū, *to do;* audītū, *to hear;* vīsū, *to see;* cognitū, *to know.*

2. Ad, with the Gerundive, is often used instead: cibus facillimus ad concoquendum, *food* (that is) *easy to digest.*

Participle.

§ 226. The Participle, as a Substantive, is treated as if it had been an Adjective: Nihil est magnum somniantī, *nothing is great to a dreamer;* *Rēgia, crēde mihī, rēs est succurrere *lāpsīs*, Ov., *It is a kingly thing, believe me, to succor the fallen.*

Remarks.—1. The Attribute of the Participle, employed as a Substantive, is generally in the adverbial form: rectē facta, *right actions;* facētē dictum, *a witty remark.*

2. Especially to be noted is the Ablative of the Participle without a

Digitized by Google

Substantive: audītō, *it having been heard;* compertō, *it having been found out.*

§ 227. The Participle, as an Adjective, often modifies its verbal nature so as to be characteristic: Epamīnôndās erat temporibus sapienter *ūtêns*, *Epaminondas was a man who used opportunities wisely.*

REMARK.—On the Participle as a Predicate, see § 123.

ADVERB.

The Predicate may be qualified by an Adverb.

§ 228. Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, and sometimes substantives, when they express or imply verbal or adjective relations: valdē me juvat, *it rejoices me mightily* (greatly); plānē indoctus, *absolutely unlearned;* nimis saepe, *too often;* *Lātē rēx, VIRG., *Wide-ruling;* bis cônsul, *twice consul;* duo simul bella, *two simultaneous wars.*

The form of the Adverb does not admit of any further inflection, and therefore the Adverb requires no rules of Syntax except as to its position.

Position of the Adverb.

§ 229. Adverbs are commonly put next to their verb, and before it when it ends the sentence; and immediately before their adjective or adverb: injûstē facit, *he acts unjustly;* admodum pulcher, *handsome to a degree, very handsome;* valdē dīligenter, *very carefully.* Exceptions occur chiefly in rhetorical passages, in which great stress is laid on the Adverb, or in poetry: Īram bene Ennius initium dixit īnsāniae, *Well did Ennius call anger the beginning of madness;* *Vixit dum vixit bene, TER. (§ 28, R.)

One class of Adverbs demands special notice.

NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

§ 230. The regular Negative of the Indicative and of the Potential Subjunctive is NŌN, the absolute *not.* HAUD, which

Digitized by Google

is also translated *not*, does not imply such entire certainty, and in model prose is used chiefly with Adjectives and Adverbs: haud magnus, *not great;* haud male, *not badly.* In antitheses NŌN is used, and not HAUD: *Nōn est vīvere sed valēre vīta, MARTIAL, *Not living, but being well, is life.*

REMARK.—Other negative expressions are, haudquāquam, nēquāquam neutiquam, *by no means;* nihil, *nothing.* ("Adam, with such counsel *nothing* swayed.")

Subdivision of the Negative.

§ 231. A general negative may be subdivided by NEQUE — NEQUE, or strengthened by NE — QUIDEM, *not even:* Nihil *nec* cārius nec suāvius, *nothing dearer nor sweeter;* Nōn enim praetereundum est *ne* id *quidem*, *For we must not pass by that neither.* (I will give *no* thousand crowns *neither*, SHAKS.) § 264.

POSITION OF THE NEGATIVE.

§ 232. The Negative naturally belongs to the Predicate, and usually stands immediately before it, but may be placed before any emphatic word or combination of words: *Nōn omnis aetās Lȳde lūdō convenit, PLAUT. § 144.

REMARK.—As the Copula esse, *to be*, is, strictly speaking, a Predicate (§ 4), the Negative generally precedes it, contrary to the English idiom, except in contrasts. The difference in position can often be brought out only by stress of voice: fēlīx nōn erat, *he wasn't happy;* nōn fēlīx erat, *he was not happy* (*far from happy*), sed miser, *but wretched.*

§ 233. In English, we say either *no one ever*, or, *never any one*, *nothing ever*, or, *never any thing;* in Latin, the former turn is invariably used: nēmo unquam, *no one ever;* Verrēs *nihil unquam* fēcit sine aliquō quaestū, *Verres never did any thing without some profit or other.* Comp. § 262.

§ 234. NEGO (*I say no*, *I deny*) is commonly used instead of dīcō non, *I say—not:* *Negat Phānium esse hanc sibi cognātam, TER., *He says that this Phanium is not of kin to him.*

Digitized by Google

§ 235. Two Negatives in the same sentence destroy one another, and make an affirmative: nōn nego, *I do not deny, I admit.*

§ 236. The double Negative is often stronger than the opposite Positive: Nōn indoctus, *a highly educated man;* nōn sum nēscius, *I am well aware;* *Nōn indecōrō pulvere sordidī, Hor., *Soiled with honorable dust;* *Nōn ignāra malī miserīs succurrere disco, Virg., *Not unacquainted* (= *but too well acquainted*) *with misfortune, I learn to succor the wretched.*

§ 237. Of especial importance is the position of the Negative in the following combinations:—

Indefinite Affirmative.	*General Affirmative.*
nōnnihil, *somewhat;*	nihil nōn, *every thing.*
nōnnēmo, *some one;*	nēmo nōn, *everybody.*
nōnnullī, *some people;*	nullī nōn, *all.*
nōnnunquam, *sometimes;*	nunquam nōn, *always.*
nōnnusquam, *somewhere;*	nusquam nōn, *everywhere.*

In ipsā cūriā nōnnēmo hostis est, *In the senate-house itself there are enemies;* nēmo nōn hostis est, *everybody is an enemy;* nēmo nōn videt, *everybody sees;* **Nōn* est plācāndī spēs mihi *nulla* Deī, Ov., *I have some hope of appeasing God;* nulla spēs nōn est, *I have every hope.*

§ 238. Nec nōn, *nor not*, in the best prose authors, is not simply equivalent to et, *and:* nec belongs to the sentence, nōn to the particular word, § 232. *Nec* hoc Zēno *nōn* vīdit, *Nor did Zeno fail to see this.*

§ 239. Nōn possum nōn = *I cannot but* = *I must:* Quī mortem in malīs pōnit nōn potest eam nōn timēre, *He who classes death among misfortunes must fear it.*

§ 240. Nē is the Negative of the Imperative and of the

Digitized by Google

Optative Subjunctive: *Nē cēde malīs, *Do not yield to misfortunes;* nē scrībās, *do not write;* nē trânsieris Ibērum, *do not cross the Ebro;* nē vīvam, *may I cease to live.* (See §§ 55, 64.)

REMARK.—The Negative NŌN is sometimes used instead of NĒ, when contrast is emphasized: *Aut nōn tentārīs aut perfice, Ov., *Either attempt not, or achieve.*

§ 241. NĒ is continued by NĒVE or NEU. § 64.

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

An interrogative sentence is necessarily incomplete. The answer is the complement.

§ 242. Interrogative sentences are divided into *simple* and *compound* (disjunctive). *Am I?* (simple) *Am I, or am I not?* (disjunctive).

§ 243. Interrogative sentences are further divided into *direct* and *indirect*, or *independent* and *dependent*. *Am I?* (direct), *He asks whether I am* (indirect).

Direct Simple Questions.

§ 244. Direct simple questions sometimes have no interrogative sign. Such questions are chiefly passionate in their character. When they are *affirmative* they expect a *negative* answer; when *negative* they expect an *affirmative* answer: Infēlix est Fabricius? *Fabricius unhappy?* (No.) Nōn pudet philosophum glōriārī? *A philosopher not ashamed to boast?* (Of course he is.)

Interrogative Particles.

§ 245. The Interrogative Particles are as follows:

1. -NE (enclitic) is always appended to the emphatic word, and generally serves to denote a question, without indicating the expectation of the speaker: relinquāsne? *will you give it up?* *Nunquamne repōnam? JUV., *Shall I never requite?*

Digitized by Google

2. NÔNNE expects the answer *Yes:* Canis nônne similis lupō? *Is not a dog like a wolf?* *Nônne fuit melius dominae pervincere mōrēs? § 49.

3. NUM (in the direct question) expects the answer *No:* *Num* mē fefellit diēs? *Did the day escape me* (= was I mistaken in the day?) **Num* tibi quum faucēs ūrit sitis aurea quaeris pōcula? HOR., *When thirst burns your throat, do you ask for golden cups?* [No.]

4. AN (*or*) belongs to the second part of a disjunctive question. Sometimes, however, the first part of the disjunctive question is suppressed: *An nêscīs longās rēgibus esse manūs? (Is it not so?) *Or perhaps you do not know that kings have long hands* (arms).

REMARK.—Especially to be noted, in connection with AN, are the phrases, nêscio an, haud scio an, *I do not know but;* dubito an, *I doubt, I doubt but,* = *I am inclined to think;* which give a modest affirmation. Negative particles, added to these expressions, give a mild negation: *Haud scio an* ita sit, *I do not know but it is so; Nêscio an* melius patientiam possim dīcere, *I do not know but I may better call it endurance; Dubito an* Thrasybūlum prīmum omnium pōnam, *I doubt but I should* (= I am inclined to) *put Thrasybūlus first of all; Haud scio an* nulla senectūs beātior esse possit, *I do not know but it is impossible for any old age to be happier.*

Direct Disjunctive Questions.

§ 246. Direct Disjunctive Questions have the following forms:—

First Clause.	*Second and Subsequent Clauses.*
utrum, *whether,*	an, *or* (anne),
utrumne,	an,
-ne,	an,
———	an (anne),
———	ne (chiefly in indirect questions).

Utrum nêscīs quam altē ascenderis *an* id prō nihilō habēs? *Are you not aware how high you have mounted, or do you*

Digitized by Google

count that as nothing? Vōsne Lūcium Domitium *an* vōs Lūcius Domitius dēseruit? *Have you deserted Lucius Domitius, or has Lucius Domitius deserted you?* *Ēloquar an sileam? VIRG., *Shall I speak, or hold my peace? Utrum* hoc tū parum meminîstī *an* ego nōn satis intellexī *an* mūtâstī sententiam? *Do you not remember this, or did I misunderstand you, or have you changed your view?* *Quōmodo habeās illud rēfert jūre*ne anne* injūriā, PLAUT., *How you have it, that makes the difference, whether it be by right or wrong.*

REMARK.—AUT (OR), in questions, is not to be confounded with AN. Aut gives another part of the same question, or another form of it (*or in other words*). Voluptās meliōremne efficit aut laudābiliōrem virum? *Does pleasure make a better or more praiseworthy man?* *Quem virum *aut* hērōa lyrā vel âcrī tībiā sūmēs celebrāre Clīō? HOR., *What man or hero wilt thou undertake to celebrate on harp or shrilly flute, O Clio?*

§ 247. *Or not*, in the second part of a disjunctive sentence, is expressed by ANNŌN or NECNE: Is*ne* est quem quaero, *annōn? Is that the man I am looking for or not?* Sunt haec tua verba *necne? Are these your words or not?*

Indirect Questions.

§ 248. Indirect questions have the same particles as the direct, with the following modifications:—

1. NUM loses its negative force, and becomes simply *whether:* Speculārī jussī sunt *num* sollicitātī animī sociōrum essent, *They were ordered to spy out whether the allies had been tampered with;* Quaesīvērunt *num* sē etiam morī prohibitūrus esset? *They asked whether he was going to keep them from dying, too.*

2. SĪ, *if*, is used for *whether* chiefly after verbs and sentences implying trial: Tentāta rēs est si prīmō impetū capī Ardea posset, *An attempt was made* (to see) *if Ardea could be taken by a dash* (coup-de-main).

Digitized by Google

3. AN is sometimes used for NUM and NE: Cônsuluit deinde Alexander *an* tōtīus orbis imperium sibi dêstināret pater, *Alexander then asked the oracle whether his father destined for him the empire of the whole world.*

4. The form ——— NE is found chiefly in the indirect question: Tarquinius Prîscī Tarquiniī rēgis fīlius nepōsne fuerit parum liquet, *Whether Tarquin was the son or grandson of king Tarquin the Elder, does not appear.*

REMARK.—The form NE—NE is poetical.

§ 249. PARADIGM.

Direct: *Is the last syllable short or long?*

Postrēma syllaba *utrum* brevis est *an* longa?
brevis*ne* est *an* longa?

Indirect: *In a verse it makes no difference whether the last syllable be short or long.*

In versū nihil rēfert { *utrum* postrēma syllaba brevis sit *an* longa.
postrēma syllaba brevis*ne* sit *an* longa.
postrēma syllaba brevis *an* longa sit.
postrēma syllaba brevis sit longa*ne*.

MOODS IN INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

§ 250. The Indicative is used to ascertain a fact: ubinam herī fuîstī? *where were you yesterday?*

§ 251. The Subjunctive is used:—

1. In the First Person, to denote indecision: *Quid faciam? rogar anne rogem? quid deinde rogābō? Ov., *What shall I do, shall I ask or be asked? what then shall I ask* (him)?

2. In rhetorical questions, which expect no definite answer, and imply a negative opinion on the part of the speaker: Quis hoc crēdat? *Who would believe this?* [No one.] Quid faceret

Digitized by Google

aliud? *What else was he to do?* [Nothing.] *Quis tulerit Gracchōs de sēditiōne querentēs? Juv. § 54.

§ 252. The Dependent Interrogative is always in the subjunctive.

Examples: §§ 299, foll. **Sitque* memor nōstrī necne referte mihī, Ov., § 7; *Inspice quid portem, Ov., *Examine what I am bringing;* *Cernis ut Admētī cantētur ut Hectoris uxor? Ov., *You perceive how Admetus's wife is sung, how Hector's?*

On the sequence of tenses, see § 295.

Remarks.—1. When the leading verb is disconnected from the interrogative, the Indicative form is employed: So often with dīc, *say*, vidē, *see*, quaere, *ask:* Dīc, quid est? *Tell me, what is it?* (Dīc quid sit, *Tell me what it is*); *Quīn tū ūnō verbō dīc: quid est quod mē velīs? Ter., *Won't you tell me in one word: What is it you want of me?* *Dīc mihi quid fēcī nisi nōn sapienter amāvī, Ov., *Tell me what have I done, save that I have loved unwisely.*

2. Nēscio quis, nēscio quid, nēscio quī, nēscio quod, *I know not who, what, which*, are used exactly as indefinite pronouns, and have no effect on the construction: So, also: nēscio quōmodo, *I know not how = strangely;* mīrum quantum, *it* (is) *marvellous how much = wonderfully*, are used as adverbs: *Nēscio quid majus nascitur Īliade, Ov., *Something, I know not what, is rising greater than the Iliad;* Mīrum quantum prōfuit, *It was of wonderful advantage.* The position excludes the assumption of an ellipsis of the subjunctive.

Position in Interrogative Sentences.

§ 253. *a.* The subject of the dependent clause is often treated as the object of the leading clause: Nōstī Marcellum quam tardus sit, *You know Marcellus, what a slow creature he is;* *Nōvī ego hōc saeculum mōribus quibus sit, Plaut., *I know these times*, (and) *what a character they have.*

§ 253. *b.* Contrary to our idiom, the interrogative is often used in participial clauses: Solōn Pīsistratō tyrannō quaerentī

Digitized by Google

quā tandem *spē frētus* sibi tam audāciter resisteret respondîsse dīcitur, senectūte, *Solon, to Pisistratus the usurper, asking him* (= when P. the usurper asked him) *on what earthly hope relying* (= on what hope he relied that) *he resisted him so boldly, is said to have answered "old age."*

YES AND NO.

§ 254. *a.* YES is represented:

1. By sānē, (literally) *soundly*, sānē quidem, *yes indeed*, etiam, *even* (so), vērō, *of a truth*, ita, *so*, omnīnō, *by all means*, certē, *surely*, certō, *for certain*, admodum, *to a degree.*

2. By Immō or Īmō, which conveys a correction, and either removes a doubt or heightens a previous statement—*yes indeed, nay but:* *Ecquid placeant aedēs mê rogās? Immō. PLAUT., *Do I like the house, you ask me? Yes, indeed.* Causa igitur nōn bona est? Immō optima. *The cause, then, is a bad one? Nay, it is an excellent one.*

3. By cênseo, *I think so.*

4. By repeating the emphatic word either with or without confirmatory particles: Estisne? Sumus. *Are you? We are.* Dāsne? Dō sānē? *Do you grant? I do indeed.*

§ 254. *b.* No is represented:

1. By nōn, nōn vērō, nōn ita, minimē, *by no means*, nihil, *nothing*, minimē vērō, nihil sānē, nihil minus.

2. By repeating the emphatic word with the negative: Nōn īrāta es? Nōn sum īrāta, *You are not angry? I am not.*

Yes, for, no, for, are often expressed by NAM and ENIM: Tum Antōnius: Herī *enim* inquit hoc mihi prōposueram, *Then, quoth Antony, Yes, for I had proposed this to myself yesterday.*

Digitized by Google

SYNTAX OF THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

§ 255. A compound sentence is one in which the necessary parts of the sentence occur more than once, one which consists of two or more clauses.

Coördination is that arrangement of the sentence in which the different clauses are merely placed side by side.

Subordination is that arrangement of the sentence in which one clause depends on the other.

He became poor and we became rich is a coördinate sentence. *He became poor that we might be rich* is a subordinate sentence.

The sentence which is modified is called the Principal clause, that which modifies is called the subordinate clause. "*He became poor*" is the Principal clause, "*that we might be rich*" is the subordinate clause.

REMARK.—Logical dependence and grammatical dependence are not to be confounded. In the conditional sentence: vīvam sī vīvet, *I shall live if she lives*, my living depends on her living; yet "vīvam" is the principal, "sī vīvet" the subordinate clause. It is the dependence of the introductory particle that determines the grammatical relation. § 293.

COÖRDINATE SENTENCES.

Coördinate sentences are divided into various classes, according to the particles by which the separate clauses are bound together.

Copulative Sentences.

The following Particles are called Copulative Conjunctions:—

§ 256. 1. ET is simply *and*, the most common and general particle of connection, and combines likes and unlikes: Caesare *et* Bibulō cônsulibus, *in the consulship of Caesar and Bibulus;* *Probitās laudātur *et* alget, JUV., *Honesty is be-praised and—freezes.*

On ET, for ETIAM, see § 260, R.

Digitized by Google

§ 257. 2. -QUE (enclitic) unites things that belong closely to one another. The second member serves to *complete* or *extend* the first: Senātus populus*que* Rōmānus, *The Senate and people of Rome;* *Nītimur in vetitum semper cupimus*que* negāta, Ov., *We are ever pressing on to the forbidden, and so desiring what is denied* (us).

REMARK.—COMBINATIONS: ET — ET;
QUE — ET;
ET — QUE;
QUE — QUE, chiefly in poetry:
*Rauca*que* garrulitās studium*que* immāne loquendī, Ov. (§ 219.)

§ 258. 3. ATQUE (compounded of AD and QUE) adds a more important to a less important member. AC (a shorter form, which does not stand before a vowel) is fainter than ATQUE, and almost equivalent to ET. ATQUE or AC is often used to connect the parts of a clause in which ET has been already employed: Rem difficilem *atque* omnium (§ 117) difficillimam, *A difficult matter, indeed a matter of the very greatest difficulty;* Hebetī ingeniō *atque* nullō, *Of dull genius, in fact, of none at all;* Venetī et nāvēs habent plūrimās et scientiā *atque* ūsū nauticārum rērum reliquōs antecēdunt, *The Venetians* (*both*) *have most ships, and in the knowledge and practice of naval matters are superior to all the rest.*

§ 259. Adjectives and Adverbs of *likeness* and *unlikeness* may take ATQUE or AC: Date operam nē similī fortūnā ūtāmur *atque* anteā ūsī sumus, *Do your endeavors that we suffer not* (*ill*)*-luck like that we suffered before;* Similiter facis *ac* sī mē rogēs cūr tē duōbus contuear oculīs, *You are acting* (*like*) *as if you were to ask me why I am looking at you with two eyes;* Nōn dixī secus (aliter) *ac* sentiēbam, *I did not speak otherwise than I thought.* On Īdem, *the same*, see § 97.

REMARKS.—1. The construction rests on an ellipsis: Aliter dixī atque [aliter] sentiēbam, *I spoke one way and yet I was thinking another way.*

2. SUBORDINATION INSTEAD OF COÖRDINATION.—Instead of coördinating

Digitized by Google

by means of the copulative conjunctions, the Romans are prone to subordinate by means of the participle: Gruēs, quum loca calidiōra *petentēs* maria trânsmittunt triangulī efficiunt formam, *Cranes, when they seek a warmer climate and cross seas, make a triangular figure;* Domitius flūmen Albim trânscendit longius *penetrātā Germāniā* quam quisquam priōrum, *Domitius crossed the river Elbe and* (thus) *penetrated further* (into) *Germany than any of his predecessors.* (§ 203 R. 2.)

§ 260. ETIAM, *even (now), yet, still,* exaggerates (heightens) and generally precedes the word to which it belongs: Nōbīs rēs familiāris *etiam* ad necessāria deest, *We lack means even for the necessaries of life;* Etiam perīculosa petunt, *They seek even that which is dangerous.* Of time: Nōn satis pernôstī mē *etiam* quālis sim, *You still do not know well enough* (= little know) *what manner of person I am.*

REMARK.—ET is sometimes used for ETIAM, but sparingly. So ET IPSE, and kindred expressions. (§ 99).

§ 261. QUŎQUE (literally, *in which way too*), *so also,* complements (compare -QUE) and always follows the words to which it belongs: Quum patrī Tīmotheī populus statuam posuîsset, fīliō *quoque* dedit, *The people, having erected a statue in honor of the father of Timotheus, gave one to the son also (likewise).*

REMARK.—The difference between ETIAM and QUOQUE is not to be insisted on too rigidly: *Grande et cônspicuum nôstrō quoque tempore mônstrum, JUV., *A huge and conspicuous prodigy, even in our day.*

§ 262. NEQUE, NEC, *neither, nor,* is often used as: *And not:* Opīniōne vulgī rapimur in errōrem *nec* vēra cernimus, *By the prejudice of the rabble we are hurried into error, and do not distinguish the truth.*

RULE.

Instead of ET and the negative, NEQUE (NEC) and the positive, is the rule in Latin.

Digitized by Google

PARADIGM.

And no one,	neque quisquam,	*nor any one.*
And nothing,	neque quidquam,	*nor any thing.*
And never,	neque unquam,	*nor ever.*

**Neque* amet *quemquam nec* amētur ab *ullō*, JUV., *May he neither love any one nor be loved of any.*

REMARKS.—1. EXCEPTION. ET — NŌN, *and . . . . not*, is used when the negation is confined to a single word, or is otherwise emphatic: **Et* mīlitāvī *nōn* sine glōriā, HOR., *And I have been a soldier not without* (=with) *glory.*

2. COMBINATIONS. NEQUE (NEC) — NEQUE.
NEQUE ——— QUE.
ET ——— NEQUE.

§ 263. NEC NŌN, *nor not*, is the opposite of ET — NŌN, *and — not*, and is stronger than ET (§236): *Neque* haec tū *nōn* intelligis, *And this you know full well.*

Negative Subdivided.

§ 264. A Negative may be subdivided by NEQUE — NEQUE, or AUT — AUT: *Nihil* unquam *neque* insolēns *neque* glōriōsum ex ōre Tīmoleontis prōcēssit, *Nothing insolent or boastful ever came out of the mouth of Timoleon;* Nēmo *aut* mīles *aut* eques ā Caesare ad Pompējum trānsierat, *No one*, (common) *soldier or knight, had gone over from Caesar to Pompey.*

Insertion and Omission of Copulatives.

§ 265. When MULTUS, *much, many*, is followed by another attribute, the two are often combined by copulative particles: *many renowned deeds*, multa *et* praeclāra facinora; *many good qualities*, multae bonae*que* artēs.

§ 266. Several subjects or objects, standing in the same relations, either take ET throughout or omit it throughout. The omission of it is common in emphatic enumeration: Phryges et Pisidae et Cilices, or: Phryges, Pisidae, Cilices, *Phrygians, Pisidians,* AND *Cilicians.*

Digitized by Google

§ 267. ET is further omitted in *climaxes*, in *antitheses*, in *phrases*, and in *formulae:* Turpe est virō dēbilitārī dolōre, frangī, succumbere, *It is disgraceful for a man to allow himself to be weakened by grief, to be broken-spirited, to succumb;* bona, mala, *blessings* (and) *evils;* dignī, indignī, *the worthy* (and) *the unworthy;* *Difficilis facilis, jūcundus acerbus es īdem (§ 97); Patrēs Cônscriptī, *Fathers* (and) *Conscript* (Senators); Jŭppiter Optimus Maximus, *Father Jove, supremely good* (and) *great.*

Other Particles employed.

§ 268. Temporal: TUM — TUM, *then — then;* NUNC — NUNC, MODO — MODO, *now — now;* SIMUL — SIMUL, *at the same time; tum* Graecē — *tum* Latīnē, *partly in Greek, partly in Latin;* Horātius Coclēs *nunc* singulōs prōvocābat, *nunc* increpābat omnēs, *Horatius Cocles now challenged them singly, now taunted them all;* modo hūc modo illūc, *now hither, now thither, hither and thither;* simul spernēbant, simul metuēbant, *they despised and feared at the same time, they at once despised and feared.* (Comp. 251, R. 1.)

REMARK.— On QUUM — TUM, see § 375.

§ 269. Comparative: UT — ITA, *as — so:* Dolābellam *ut* Tarsēnsēs *ita* Lāodicēnī ultrō arcessiērunt, *As the people of Tarsus so did the people of Laodicea* (=Both the people of Tarsus and those of Laodicea) *sent for Dolabella of their own accord.* Often, however, there is an adversative idea: *sīcut* breviōra *ita* arrectiōra, *while shorter, yet steeper;* Haec omnia *ut* invītīs *ita* nōn adversantibus patriciīs trânsacta, *All this was done, the patricians, though unwilling, yet not opposing* (= against the wishes, but without any opposition on the part, of the patricians).

§ 270. Adversative: NŌN MODO, NŌN SŌLUM, NŌN TANTUM, *not only;* SED ETIAM, VĒRUM ETIAM — *but even* (sometimes simply SED). In the negative form, NŌN MODO NŌN, *not only*

Digitized by Google

not, SED NE . . . QUIDEM, *but, not even;* Urbēs maritimae *nōn sōlum* multīs perīculīs oppositae [sunt] *sed etiam* caecīs, *Maritime cities are liable not only to many dangers, but even to hidden* (ones); Ego *nōn modo* tibi *nōn* īrâscor sed *ne* reprehendo *quidem* factum tuum, *I not only am not angry with you, but I do not even find fault with your action.*

REMARK.—Instead of NŌN MODO (SŌLUM) NŌN — SED NE — QUIDEM, the latter NŌN is generally omitted, when the two negative clauses have a verb in common, the negative of the first clause being supplied by the second: Pīsōne cônsule senātuī nōn sōlum juvāre rempûblicam sed ne lūgēre quidem licēbat, *When Piso was consul, it was not only not left free for the senate* (= the senate was not only not free) *to help the commonwealth, but not even to mourn* (for her).

Adversative Sentences.

The adversative particles are as follows:—

§ 271. AUTEM (postpositive, generally after the first word in the sentence or clause) is the weakest form of *but*, and indicates merely a *difference* from the foregoing, and not a *contradiction*. It serves as a particle of *transition* and *explanation* (= *moreover, furthermore, now*), and of resumption (= *to come back*): Gygēs ā nullō vidēbātur, ipse *autem* omnia vidēbat, *Gyges was seen by no one, but* (whereas) *he himself saw every thing.*

§ 272. SED is used partly in a stronger sense, to denote *contradiction*, partly in a weaker sense, *to introduce a new thought, or to revive an old one:* Nōn est vīvere *sed* valēre vīta, MART. § 230.

§ 273. VĒRUM, *it is true, true*, always takes the first place in a sentence, and is practically equivalent to SED: *Sī certum est facere, faciās; *vērum* nē post cônferās culpam in mē, TER., *If you are determined to do it, you may do it; but you must not afterward lay the blame on me.*

§ 274. VĒRŌ, *of a truth*, is generally put in the second

Digitized by Google

place, asserts with conviction, and is used to heighten the statement: Platōnem Diōn adeō admīrātus est ut sē tōtum eī trāderet. Neque *vērō* minus Plato dēlectātus est Diōne, *Dion admired Plato to such a degree that he gave himself wholly up to him; and indeed Plato was no less delighted with Dion.*

§ 275. AT (another form of AD = *in addition to*) introduces *startling transitions, lively objections, remonstrances, questions, wishes* (often = *Well — but*): *At* vidēte hominis intolerābilem audāciam! *Well, but see the fellow's insufferable audacity! At* vōbīs male sit! *And ill luck to you!*

REMARK.—AST = AT + SET (sed) is antiquated and poetic.

§ 276. ATQUĪ is still stronger than AT, and is used chiefly in argument: *atquī* sīc habet, *but it is so* . . igitur, *therefore*. . . .

§ 277. TAMEN (literally, *even thus*), *nevertheless*, is often combined with AT, VĒRUM, SED: Examples, § 370.

§ 278. CĒTERUM, *for the rest*, is used by the historians as an adversative particle.

REMARK.—In lively discourse, the adversative particles are often omitted.

Disjunctive Sentences.

The disjunctive particles are as follows:

§ 279. AUT, *or*, denotes absolute exclusion or substitution: Vincēris *aut* vincis, *You are conquered or conquering.* AUT often = *or at least* (aut saltem). Cûnctī *aut* magna pars fidem mūtāvîssent, *All, or at least a great part, would have changed their allegiance.*

§ 280. AUT — AUT, *either — or:* Aut frīgore rigent aut ūruntur calōre, *They are either frozen with cold or burnt with heat.*

Digitized by Google

Aut nōn tentārīs *aut* perfice, Ov., § 67, R.; *Aut* dīc *aut* accipe calcem, Juv., *Either speak, or take a kick.*

§ 281. Vel (literally, *you may choose*) gives a choice, often with etiam, *even*, potius, *rather:* Ego *vel* Cluviēnus, *I, or, if you choose Cluvienus;* *Ego *vel* Prochytam praepōno Subūrae, Juv., *I prefer even Prochyta to the Subura;* satis *vel etiam* nimium multa, *enough or even too much;* homo minimē malus *vel potius* vir optimus, *a person by no means bad, or, rather, a man of excellent character.*

§ 282. Vel — vel, *either — or* (whether — or): Miltiadēs dixit ponte rescissō rēgem *vel* hostium ferrō *vel* inopiā paucīs diēbus interiturum, *Miltiades said that if the bridge were cut, the king would perish in a few days, whether by the sword of the enemy, or for want of provisions.*

§ 283. Sīve, *if you choose* (seu), gives a choice between two designations of the same object: Urbem mātrī seu novercae relīquit, *He left the city to his mother, or (if it seems more likely) to his step-mother.*

§ 284. Sīve — sīve (seu — seu) *whether — or* (indifference): **Seu* vīsa est catulīs cerva fidēlibus *seu* rūpit teretēs Marsus aper plagās, Hor., *Whether a doe hath appeared to the faithful hounds, or a Marsian boar hath burst the tightly-twisted toils; Sīve* tū medicum adhibueris *sīve* nōn adhibueris nōn convalēscēs, *Whether you employ a physician, or do not employ* (one), *you will not get well.*

§ 285. -Ve (enclitic) is a weaker form of vel (with numerals, *at most*): *Cūr timeam dubitemve locum dēfendere? Juv., *Why should I fear or hesitate to maintain my position?* duōbus tribusve hōrīs, *within two or at most three hours.*

Causal and Illative Sentences.

A. The *causal* particles are nam, *for*, enim, namque, and etenim, *for.*

Digitized by Google

§ 286. NAM is always put at the beginning of a sentence; ENIM is always postpositive: NAMQUE and ETENIM are commonly put in the first place: *For what can you do? Num* quid agās? Quid *enim* agās? *Namque* quid agās? *Etenim* quid agās?

REMARKS.—1. These particles are often used not only to furnish a reason, but also to give an explanation or illustration — *as for instance.* Nam quid agās? *What, for instance, can you do?* So also NEMPE, *to wit, that is,* often used ironically — *forsooth:* Sed quālis rediit? Nempe ūnā nāve, JUV., *But in what style did he return? With one ship, forsooth.*

2. In ATENIM, SED ENIM, VĒRUMENIM, ENIMVĒRŌ, VĒRUMENIMVĒRŌ, the particle ENIM is so weak as hardly to bear translation.

B. *Illative* particles are ITAQUE, IGITUR, ERGŌ, IDEŌ, IDCIRCŌ, PROINDE.

§ 287. ITAQUE (literally, *and so*), *therefore,* is put at the beginning of the sentence by the best writers, and is used of *facts* that follow from the preceding statement: Nēmo ausus est līber eum sepelīre. *Itaque* ā servīs sepultus est. *No free man dared to bury him, and so he was buried by slaves.*

§ 288. IGITUR, *therefore,* is generally postpositive, and is used of *opinions* which have their natural ground in the preceding statement. Quid *igitur* cēnsēs? *What therefore* (= in view of all this) *is your judgment?* In historical writers, IGITUR is used both in position and signification as ITAQUE.

§ 289. ERGŌ, *consequently,* denotes *necessary consequence,* and is used especially in arguments. IDEŌ, IDCIRCŌ = *on that account.*

§ 290. PROINDE, *accordingly,* is employed in *exhortations, appeals,* and the like: *Proinde* aut exeant aut quiēscant, *Let them then either depart or be quiet.*

Digitized by Google

SYNTAX OF THE SUBORDINATE TENSE.

§ 291. Subordinate sentences are only extended forms of the simple sentence, and are divided into *Adjective* and *Substantive* sentences, according as they represent *adjective* and *substantive* relations.

§ 292. Adjective sentences express an attribute of the subject in an expanded form: uxor quae bona est (§ 419) = uxor bona.

§ 293. Substantive sentences are introduced by particles, which correspond in their origin and use to the Oblique Cases, Accusative and Ablative. These two cases furnish the mass of adverbial relations, and hence we make a subdivision for this class, and the organization of the subordinate sentence appears as follows:—

A. Substantive sentences.
  I. Object sentences.
  II. Adverbial sentences:
    1. Of Cause.
    2. Of Design and Tendency.
    3. Of Time.
    4. Of Condition.

B. Adjective sentences (Relative).

Before considering the subordinate sentences, it is necessary to exhibit the so-called Sequence of Tenses, and the use of the Reflexive in dependent clauses.

Sequence of Tenses.

§ 294. In those dependent sentences which require the subjunctive, the choice of the tenses of the dependent clause is determined by the form of the principal clause.

Digitized by Google

§ 295. RULE.

All forms that relate to the Present and Future	are followed by	the Present Subjunctive (for continued action); the Perfect Subjunctive (for completed action).
All forms that relate to the Past	are followed by	the Imperfect Subjunctive (for continued action); the Pluperfect Subjunctive (for completed action).

PARADIGMS.

PRESENT, cognôsco,	*I am finding out,*	quid faciās, *what you are doing;*
PURE PF., cognōvī,	*I have found out (I know),*	
FUTURE, cognôscam,	*I shall* (try to) *find out,*	quid fēceris, *what you have done (what you did).*
FU. PERF., cognōvero,	*I shall have found out (shall know),*	
IMPERF., cognôscēbam,	*I was finding out,*	quid facerēs, *what you were doing;*
PLUPERF., cognōveram,	*I had found out (I knew),*	quid fēcissēs, *what you had done.*
HIST. PERF., Caesar cognōvit	*Caesar found out,*	quid facerent hostēs, *what the enemy was doing;* quid fēcissent hostēs, *what the enemy had done.*

§ 296. Sentences of Design have, as a rule, only the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive. The design is not accomplished, but only in the process of accomplishment.

PARADIGMS.

PRESENT,	edunt,	*they are eating,*	ut vīvant, *that they may live* (to live).
PURE PERF.,	ēdērunt,	*they have eaten,*	
FUTURE,	edent,	*they will eat,*	
FUT. PERF.,	ēderint,	*they will have eaten,*	

Digitized by Google

IMPERFECT, edēbant, *they were eating*,
PLUPERFECT, ēderant, *they had eaten*,
HIST. PER., ēdērunt, *they ate*,
} ut vīverent, *that they might live* (to live).

REMARKS.—1. The Historical Present is treated either according to its form as a present, or according to its signification as an historical tense:—

PARADIGMS.

Caesar cognōscit quid hostēs *Caesar finds out* (found out) *what the enemy* { 1. faciant, fēcerint, *is doing, has done;* 2. faĕrent, fēcissent, *was doing, had done.*

2. The Pure Perfect is often treated as an Historical Perfect in the matter of sequence: Quoniam quae subsidia habērēs exposuī, *Now that I have set forth what resources you have.*

Representation of the Subjunctive in the Future and Future Perfect Tenses.

§ 297. The Subjunctive has no Future or Future Perfect which are represented either by the other Subjunctives, or by the Subjunctive of the Periphrastic Conjugation.

§ 298. 1. After a Future or Future Perfect Tense, the Future relation is represented by the Present Subjunctive—the Future Perfect by the Perfect Subjunctive, according to the rule.

Cognōscam, *I shall* (try to) *find out;* quid faciās, *what you are doing* (will be doing).
Cognōvero, *I shall have found out* (shall know), quid fēceris, *what you have done* (will have done).

REMARK.—But whenever the interval between the dependent future and the leading future is to be marked, the Periphrastic Tense must be employed.

Cognōscam, *I shall* (try to) *find out*, Cognōvero, *I shall have found out* (shall know) } quid facturus sīs, *what you are going to do* (*what you will do*).

Digitized by Google

§ 298. 2. After the other tenses the future relation is expressed by the Subjunctive of the Periphrastic Tense, which follows the ordinary rule.

Cognôsco, *I am finding out,*	quid factūrus sīs, *what you will do,*	(*what you are going to do*);
Cognōvī, *I have found out* (know),	quid factūrus fueris, *what you would have done,*	(*what you have been going to do*).
Cognoscēbam, *I was trying to find out,*	quid factūrus essēs, *what you would do,*	(*what you were going to do*);
Cognōveram, *I had found out,*	quid factūrus fuissēs, *what you would have done,*	(*what you had been going to do*).

Remarks.—1. In Ōrātio oblīqua (§ 439) and kindred constructions, the attraction of tenses applies also to the representatives of the Future and Future Perfect Subjunctive.

In [scytalā] erat scriptum nisi domum *reverterētur* sē capitis eum damnātūrōs, *It was written in the scytale that if he did not return home, they would condemn him to death.* (Oratiō Recta: Nisi domum revertēris tē capitis damnābimus, *unless you* (shall) *return home, we will condemn you to death.*) Pȳthia praecēpit ut Miltiadem sibi imperātōrem sūmerent; id sī *fēcissent* incepta prôspera futūra, Nep., *The Pythia instructed them to take Miltiades for their general; that if they did that, their undertakings would be successful.* (O. Recta: sī id fēceritis, *if you do* (shall have done) *that*).

2. When the preceding verb has a future character (fear, hope, power, will, and the like), the simple subjunctive is sufficient: Quid hostēs cônsiliī caperent exspectābant, *They were waiting to see what plan the enemy would adopt;* multa pollicêns sī sē servâsset, *promising many things* (making many promises), *if he saved him.*

Sequence of Tenses after an Infinitive or Participle.

§ 299. When a subordinate clause depends on an Infinitive or Participle, the tense of that clause follows the tenses of the Finite verb.

Cupio scīrē, *I am desirous of knowing,*	quid agās,	*what you are doing.*
	quid ēgeris,	*what you have done.*
	quid actūrus sīs,	*what you are going to do* (will do).

Digitized by Google

Cupiēbam scīre, *I was desirous of knowing,*	quid agerēs,	*what you were doing.*
	quid ēgîssēs,	*what you had done.*
	quid actūrus essēs,	*what you were going to do* (would do).

Mihi interrogantī, *when I ask him,* (literally: to me asking),	quid agat,	*what he is doing,*	nōn respondet, *he gives no answer.*
	quid ēgerit,	*what he has done,*	
	quid actūrus sit,	*what he is going to do* (will do),	
Mihi interrogantī, *when I asked him,* (literally: to me asking.)	quid ageret,	*what he was doing,*	nōn respondit, *he gave no answer.*
	quid ēgîsset,	*what he had done,*	
	quid actūrus esset,	*what he was going to do,*	

EXCEPTION: A Perfect Infinitive or Participle, dependent on a Present Tense, commonly takes the sequence of the Past Tenses: Satis mihi multa verba fēcîsse videor quārē esset hoc bellum necessārium, *I think I have said enough* (to show) *why this war* IS *necessary.*

EXAMPLES.

Sequence after Present and Perfect Tenses.

§ 300. 1. Quae tam firma cīvitās *est*, quae nōn *possit* ēvertī? *What state is so firm that it cannot be overturned; Laudat* Âfricānum Panaetius quod *fuerit* abstinēns, *Panaetius praises Africanus for having been abstinent;* *Forsitan et Priamī *fuerint* quae fāta *requīrās*, VIRG., *Perhaps you may ask what was the fate of Priam, too;* Vēnîstis ut condemnēuis? *Are you come to condemn?* Multī *fuērunt* quī tranquillitātem expetentēs ā negōtiīs pûblicīs sē *remōverint, There have been many who, in the search for quiet, have withdrawn themselves from public engagements;* *Quid *sim* quid *fuerim*que subit, OV., *It comes up* (to my mind) *what I am and what I was;* *Nōn *precor* ut coniux tū meus esse *velīs*, OV., (§ 214); *Nēscīs* quam altē *ascenderis* (§ 246); Înspice quid portem (§ 252). Other examples, §§ 325, 329, 334.

Sequence after Historical Tenses.

§ 301. 2. Ūnum illud *extimēscēbam* nē quid turpiter *facerem* vel dīcam jam *effēcissem, The only thing I feared was, lest I should act disgracefully,*

Digitized by Google

or I should (rather) *say* (lest) *I had already acted disgracefully;* Tanta opibus Etrūria *erat* ut jam nōn terrās sōlum sed mare etiam fāmā nōminis suī *implēsset, So great in means* (= so prosperous) *was Etruria, that she had already filled not only the land, but even the sea, with the reputation of her name.* Other examples, §§ 325, 329, 334.

Expression of Future Relations.

§ 302. 3. [Cônsīderābimus], [*we will consider*],

a. Quid *fēcerit* aut quīd ipsī *acciderit* aut quid *dixerit, What he has done, or what has happened to him, or what he has said.*

b. Aut quid *faciat*, quid ipsī *accidat*, quid *dīcat, or, what he is doing, what is happening to him, what he is saying;*

c. Aut quid *factūrus sit*, quid ipsī *cāsūrum sit*, quā *sit ūsūrus* ōrātiōne, *or what he is going to do* (will do), *what is going to* (will) *happen to him, what plea he is going to employ* (will employ).

Incertum *est* quam longa cûjusque nôstrum vīta *futūra sit. It is uncertain how long the life of each one of us is going to be* (will be); Tū quid *sīs actūrus* sī ad mē *scrīpseris* pergrātum erit, *It will be a great favor if you will write to me what you are going to do;* Anteā *dubitābam ventūraene essent* legiōnēs, *Before I was doubtful whether the legiones would come* (or no); Nunc mihi nōn *est* dubium quīn *ventūrae* nōn *sint, Now I have no doubt that they will not come;* Quae vīta Priamō fuîsset, sī ab adolêscentiā *scîsset* quos ēventūs vītae *esset habitūrus? What sort of life would Priam have led if he had known, from early manhood, what issues of old age he would have* (= what were to be the closing scenes of his old age).

Sequence after Verbal Nouns.

§ 303. 4. Apellēs pictōrēs eōs *peccāre dīcēbat* quī nōn *sentīrent* quid *esset* satis, *Apelles used to say that those painters blundered who did not perceive what was* (is) *enough;* Cupīdo *incêssit* animōs juvenum *scîscitandī* ad quem eorum regnum Rōmānum *esset* ventūrum, *The minds of the young men were seized by the desire of inquiring to which of them the kingdom of Rome would come.*

Sequence of Tenses in Sentences of Result.

§ 304. 5. In Sentences of Result, the Present Subjunctive is used after Past Tenses to denote continuance into the Present, the Perfect Subjunc-

Digitized by Google

tive to imply final result, the latter especially with the negative. (The action happened once for all or not at all.) Siciliam Verrēs per triennium ita vexāvit ut ea restituī in antīquum statum nullō modō *possit*, *Verres so harried Sicily for three years as to make it utterly impossible for it to be restored to its original condition;* [Thorius erat] ita nōn timidus ad mortem ut in aciē *sit* ob rempūblicam *interfectus*, *Thorius was so far from being fearful in view of death as to have been killed in battle for the state;* Mūrēna Asiam sīc obiit ut in eā neque avāritiae neque luxūriae vestīgium *relīquerit*, *Murena so administered Asia as not to have left in it a trace either of greed or debauchery;* Epamīnōndās pecūniae adeō parcus fuit ut sumptus fūnerī *dēfuerit*, *E. was so sparing of money* (= acquiring money) *that means were lacking for his funeral* (expenses.)

Equitēs hostium ācriter cum equitātū nōstrō *conflixērunt* tamen ut nōstrī eōs in silvās collēsque *compulerint*, *The cavalry of the enemy engaged the cavalry on our side briskly, and yet* (the upshot was) *that our men forced them into the woods and hills;* Neque vērō tam remissō ac languidō animō quisquam omnium *fuit* quī eā nocte *conquiēverit*, *And indeed there was no one at all of so slack and indifferent a temper as to take (a wink of) sleep that night;* (Nec fuit quisquam quī *dubitāret*, *And there was no one who entertained doubts*, quī *dubitāverit*, *who had a doubt*).

Remark.—After accidit, contigit, &c., the Imperfect is always used, the result being already emphasized in the Indicative form; accidit ut ūnā nocte omnēs Hermae dējicerentur, *It happened that in one night all the Hermae were thrown down.*

The Potential of the Past.

§ 305. The Potential of the Past may depend on a Present Tense: *Video* causās *esse* permultās *quae* Titum Roscium *impellerent*, *I see that there are very many causes which might have impelled Titus Roscius;* *Quaero* ā tē cūr Gâjum Cornēlium nōn *dēfenderem*, *I ask you why I was not to defend G. Cornelius.*

Use of the Reflexive in Subordinate Sentences.

§ 306. In subordinate clauses, the reflexive ĭs used with reference either to the subject of the principal, or to the subject of the subordinate, clause; and sometimes first to the one and then to the other.

Digitized by Google

Rule.

§ 307. The Reflexive is used of the principal subject when reference is made to the thought or will of that subject; hence, *in infinitive sentences, in indirect questions, in sentences of design, and sentences which partake of the oblique relation:* Animus sentit *sē* vī *suā*, nōn aliēnā movērī, *The mind feels that it moves by its own force*, (and) *not by that of another;* Quaesīvērunt num *sē* esset etiam morī *prohibitūrus*, *They asked whether he was going to prevent them from dying too;* Pompējus ā mē petīvit ut *sēcum* et apud *sē* essem quotidiē, *Pompey asked me to be with him, and at his house, daily;* Paetus omnēs librōs quōs frāter *suus* relīquisset mihi dōnāvit, *Paetus presented to me all the books* (as he said) *that his brother had left* (quos frāter *ējus* relīquerat, *statement of the narrator*).

Remarks.—1. Sentences of tendency and result have is: Quintus Ligārius ita sē gessit ut *ei* pācem esse expedīret, *Quintus Ligarius so conducted himself that it was to his interest there should be peace;* Tam fortis erat ut omnēs *eum* admīrārentur, *He was so gallant that all admired him.*

2. The reflexive may refer to the real agent, and not to the grammatical subject of the principal clause: A Caesare invītor sibi ut sim lēgātus, *I am invited by Caesar* (— Caesar invites me) *to be lieutenant to him.*

3. The reflexive is used in general sentences, as *one, one's-self, &c.:* Dēforme est dē sē praedicāre, *It is loathsome to be bragging about one's-self.*

4. Examples of reflexives pointing both ways: Rōmānī lēgātōs mīsērunt quī ā Prūsiā peterent nē inimīcissimum *suum* (= Rōmānōrum) apud *sē* (Prūsiam) habēret, *The Romans sent ambassadors to ask Prusias not to keep their bitterest enemy at his court;* Agrippa Atticum flēns ōrābat atque obsecrābat ut *sē sibi suīsque* reservāret, *Agrippa begged and conjured Atticus with tears to save himself* [Atticus] *for him* [Agrippa] *and for his own family* [Atticus].

Digitized by Google

PARADIGMS.

§ 308. Alexander moriēns ânnulum *suum* dederat Perdiccae;

Alexander, [when] *dying, had given his ring to Perdiccas.*

Perdiccās accēperat *ējus* ânnulum;

Perdiccas had received his ring.

Quārē Alexander dêclārāverat *sē* regnum *eī* commīsîsse;

Thereby, Alexander had declared that he had intrusted the kingdom to him.

Ex quō Perdiccās conjēcerat *eum* regnum *sibi* commīsîsse;

From this, Perdiccas had gathered that he had intrusted the kingdom to him.

Ex quō omnēs conjêcerant *eum* regnum *eī* commīsîsse;

From this, all had gathered that he had intrusted the kingdom to him.

Perdiccās postulāvit ut *sē* rēgem habērent quum Alexander ânnulum *sibi* dēdîsset;

Perdiccas demanded that they should have him to king, as Alexander had given the ring to him.

Amīcī postulāvērunt ut omnēs *eum* rēgem habērent quum Alexander ânnulum *eī* dedîssent;

(His) *friends demanded that all should have him to king, as Alexander had given the ring to him.* (Lattmann and Müller.)

Ita sē gesserat Perdiccās ut *eī* regnum ab Alexandrō committerētur;

Perdiccas had so behaved himself that the kingdom was intrusted to him by Alexander.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. In Indicative relative sentences, which are mere circumlocutions, the Reflexive is sometimes put contrary to the rule: Metellus in eīs urbibus quae ad *sē* dēfēcerant, praesidia impōnit, *Metellus put garrisons in those towns which had gone over to him;* regularly, ad eum.

2. Sometimes the Demonstrative is used instead of the Reflexive, because the narrator presents his point of view: Verrēs Milēsiōs nāvem poposcit, quae *eum* praesidiī causā Myndum prōsequerētur, *Verres demanded of the Milesians a ship to convoy him to Myndus, for the purpose of protection.*

OBJECT SENTENCES.

§ 309. Verbs of DOING, PERCEIVING, CONCEIVING, of THINKING and SAYING, often take their object in the form of a sentence.

REMARK.—These sentences are regarded, grammatically, as neuter substantives. The accusative of neuter substantives is employed as a Nomina-

Digitized by Google

tive. Hence, a Passive or Intransitive Verb may take an object sentence as a subject.

I. *Object Sentences introduced by* QUOD.

§ 310. Clauses which serve merely as periphrases (circumlocution) of elements in the leading sentence are introduced by QUOD, *that.*

REMARKS.—1. The leading sentence often contains a demonstrative, such as HOC, *this;* ILLUD, ID, *that;* and then the whole structure may be considered as a relative.

2. In some of the combinations, QUOD may be considered an adverbial accusative of extent (Inner object). QUOD, *in that* (= because).

RULE.

§ 311. QUOD is used to introduce independent clauses chiefly after a demonstrative, after verbs of DOING and HAPPENING with an adverb, and after verbs of ADDING and DROPPING: **Hōc* sōlō propior *quod* amīcōs conjugis ōdit, JUV., *In this alone nearer, that she hates the friends of her husband;* Bene facis *quod* me adjuvās, *You do well (in) that you help me;* *Nīl habet infēlix paupertās dūrius in sē quam *quod* rīdiculōs hominēs facit, JUV., *Unhappy poverty hath in itself nothing harder* (to bear) *than that it makes people ridiculous;* **Adde quod* ingenuās didicîsse fidēliter artēs Ēmollit mōrēs nec sinit esse ferōs, OV., *Add* (the fact) *that to have acquired faithfully the accomplishments* (education) *of a gentleman, softens the character, and does not let it be savage;* Magnum beneficium est nātūrae *quod* necesse est morī. § 3.

The reigning mood is the Indicative. The Subjunctive is only used as in Orātio Oblīqua.

REMARKS.—1. A sentence with QUOD often precedes as an adverbial accusative: *Quod* mē Agamemnonem aemulārī putās falleris, *In that you think that I am emulating Agamemnon, you are mistaken.*

2. With several of the above-mentioned verbs, UT can be employed, as well as QUOD: UT, of the tendency—QUOD, of the fact: Accēdit ut, quod, (To this) *is added that* (§ 347); invītus facio *ut* recorder ruīnās reīpūblicae (§ 341); *quod* recordor, *in that I am recalling.* The difference is unessential.

Digitized by Google

3. Verbs of FEELING, REJOICING, SORROWING, &c., take QUOD with the Indicative or Subjunctive. See Causal Sentences (§ 327).

II. *Object Sentences, with Accusative and Infinitive.*

§ 311. PRELIMINARY OBSERVATION: On the simple infinitive as an object, see § 214.

The Infinitive, as a verbal predicate, has its subject in the Accusative.

REMARK.—The Accusative is the most general form of the noun; the Infinitive (as its name implies) the most general (unbounded) form of the verb. The two together give the outline, and not the details, of the thought; present an idea, and not a fact, as such.

RULE.

§ 312. Active verbs of SAYING, SHOWING, THINKING, PERCEIVING, and similar expressions, take the Accusative and Infinitive: Thalēs Milēsius *aquam* dixit *esse* initium rērum, *Thales of Miletus said that water was the first element of things;* Solōn *furere sē* simulāvit, *Solon pretended that he was mad;* Medicī causā morbī inventā *cūrātiōnem esse inventam* putant, *Physicians think that,* (when) *the cause of disease* (is) *discovered, the method of treatment is discovered;* Video *tē velle* in coelum migrāre, *I see that you wish to remove to heaven;* Opīnio est *Antōnium* plānē indoctum *fuîsse, It is the common opinion that Antony was absolutely unlearned.*

REMARKS.—1. FACERE, *to assume,* and FACERE, *to represent,* take the same construction: Plato ā Deō *aedificārī* mundum *facit, Plato assumes that the universe is built by God;* Īsocratem Plato *laudārī fēcit* ā Sōcrate, *Plato has represented Isocrates as praised by Socrates; Fac,* quaeso, quī ego sum tē *esse, Suppose, I pray, yourself to be what I am.*

2. When the subject of the Infinitive is a personal or reflexive pronoun, that subject is sometimes omitted—chiefly with Future Infinitive—and then ESSE is also dropped: refractūrōs carcerem minābantur, *they threatened to break open the jail.*

3. CAUTION: The English language is very free in omitting the subject of the Infinitive when it is the same as the subject of the leading verb, e. g., *I hope to be,* spēro mē futūrum esse; *I claim to have been,* Ajo mē fuisse; (*Ait esse parātus, *He claims to be ready,* and the like, are poetical expressions, and not to be imitated).

Digitized by Google

Rule.

§ 313. Passive verbs of SAYING, SHOWING, BELIEVING, and PERCEIVING, prefer the personal construction, in which the Accusative Subject of the Infinitive appears as the Nominative Subject of the leading verb.

Paradigm.

Active: Trādunt Homērum caecum fuîsse;
They say that Homer was blind.

Passive: Trāditur Homērus caecus fuîsse;
Homer is said to have been blind.

(Trāditur Homērum caecum fuîsse);
It is said that Homer was blind.

But when the leading verb is a form compounded with ESSE, *to be*, the impersonal construction is preferred:

Trāditum est Homērum caecum fuîsse;
There is a tradition that Homer was blind.

EXAMPLES.—Aristaeus inventor oleī *fuîsse dīcitur*, *Aristaeus is said to have been the discoverer of oil;* Lūna sōlis lūmine *collûstrārī* putātur, *The moon is thought to be lighted up by the sunlight;* *Amīsîsse* patriam *vidēbimur*, *We shall seem to have lost our country;* *Possunt quia *posse videntur*, VIRG., *They have the power, because they seem to have the power;* **Crēditur* ōlim vēlificātus [*fuîsse*] Athōs, JUV., *It is believed that Athos was once opened to sails;* (*Crēditur* Pȳthagorae audītōrem *fuîsse* Numam, *It is believed that Numa was a hearer of Pythagoras*); Venerem Adōnidi *nûpsîsse* *prōditum* est, *There is a tradition that Venus married Adonis.*

REMARK.—In verbs of saying, except DĪCO, the personal construction is confined to the third person.

Tenses of the Infinitive after Verbs of Saying, Showing, Thinking, and Perceiving.

The Infinitive denotes only the stage of the action, and de-

Digitized by Google

termines only the relation to the time of the leading verb, (§ 75.)

RULE.

§ 314. After verbs of SAYING, SHOWING, THINKING, PERCEIVING, and the like:—

The Present Infinitive expresses contemporaneous action;

The Perfect Infinitive expresses prior action;

The Future Infinitive expresses future action.

REMARK.—The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English: *I have been studying, I had been studying.* Hence, the Imperfect Indicative (*I was studying*) is represented in this dependent form by the Perfect Infinitive, because it is prior to the leading verb.

§ 315. PARADIGM.

Contemporaneous Action.

Dīcit tē errāre, *He says that you are going wrong;*
Dīcet tē errāre, *He will say that you are going wrong;*
Dīcēbat tē errāre, *He was saying that you were going wrong.*

Prior Action.

Dīcit tē errâsse, *He says that you have gone wrong;*
that you went wrong;
that you have been going wrong;
Dīcet tē errâsse, *He will say that you have gone wrong, &c.;*
Dīcēbat tē errâsse, *He was saying that you had gone wrong;*
that you went wrong;
that you had been going wrong.

Subsequent Action.

Dīcit tē errātūrum esse, *He says that you will be going wrong;*
Dīcet tē errātūrum esse, *He will say that you will be going wrong;*
Dīcēbat tē errātūrum esse, *He was saying that you would be going wrong.*

(Periphrastic Form.)

Dīcit fore ut errēs, *He says that you will be going wrong;*
errāveris, *that you will have gone wrong;*
Dīcet fore ut errēs, *He will say that you will be going wrong;*
errāveris, *that you will have gone wrong;*
Dīcēbat fore ut errārēs, *He was saying that you would be going wrong;*
errâssēs, *that you would go wrong.*

Digitized by Google

REMARK.—The Periphrastic form is necessary when the verb forms no Supine (§ 44), and is often advisable for the sake of exactness.

Ambiguity.

§ 316. When an Accusative with the Infinitive is followed by a dependent accusative, ambiguity may arise: *Ajō tē Aeacidā Rōmānōs vincere posse, in which tē may be subject or object. Real ambiguity is to be avoided by giving the sentence a passive turn: Ajo ā tē Aeacidā Rōmānōs vincī posse, *I affirm that the Romans can be conquered by thee, son of Aeacus*, or, Ajo tē, Aeacidā ā Rōmānīs vincī posse, *I affirm that thou, son of Aeacus, canst be conquered by the Romans.* When the context shows which is the real subject, formal ambiguity is of no importance.

Accusative and Infinitive with Verbs of Will and Desire.

RULE.

§ 317. Verbs of WILL and DESIRE take a dependent Accusative and Infinitive: **Tē superesse* velim: tua vītā dignior aetās, VIRG., *I should wish thee to survive: thy age is worthier of life;* Est mōs hominum ut (§ 344) nōlint *eundem* plūribus rēbus *excellere*, *It is the way of the world to be unwilling for the same person to excel in more things* [than one]; *Tē fruī* virtūte cupimus, *We desire you to have the fruit of your worth;* Germānī *vīnum* ad sē omnīno *importārī* nōn sinunt, *The Germans do not permit wine to be imported into their country at all.*

REMARKS.—1. IMPERO, *I command*, takes only the Passive Infinitive: Hannibal imperāvit serpentēs vīvās colligī, *Hannibal ordered living serpents to be collected.* Permitto, *I allow*, takes UT, only.

2. After JUBEO, *I bid*, and VETO, *I forbid*, the Infinitive Active can be used without an imaginary or indefinite subject: jubet reddere, *he bids return, orders the returning;* vetat adhibēre medicīnam, *he forbids the administration of medicine.* *Infandum rēgīna jubēs renovāre dolōrem, VIRG., *Unutterable, O queen,* (is the) *anguish* (which) *you bid* (me, us) *revive.*

Digitized by Google

3. On the construction of these verbs with UT, see § 331.

4. When the subject of the Infinitive is the same as the subject of the leading verb, the subject of the Infinitive is not necessarily expressed: *Nī *pārēre velīs* pereundum erit ante lucernās, JUV., *Unless you resolve to obey, you will have to perish before candlelight;* *Et jam *mallet* equōs nunquam *tetigisse* paternōs, OV., *And now he could have wished rather never to have touched his father's horses.* But it may be expressed, and, commonly, is expressed, when the action of the Infinitive is not within the power of the subject: Tīmoleōn māluit *sē* dīligī quam metuī, *Timoleon preferred to be loved rather than to be feared;* *Et fugit ad salicēs et *sē* cupit ante vidērī, VIRG., *And flees to the willows, and desires that she should first be seen.*

Accusative and Infinitive with Verbs of Emotion.

RULE.

§ 318. Verbs of EMOTION take a dependent Accusative and Infinitive, inasmuch as these verbs may be considered as verbs of SAYING and THINKING: Salvum *te advenīre* gaudeo, I rejoice at your safe arrival (quod salvus *advenīstī*, *that you have arrived safe*, quod salvus *advēneris*, *that* (as you say) *you have arrived safe.*

Accusative and Infinitive in Exclamations.

RULE.

§ 319. The Accusative with the Infinitive is used in EXCLAMATIONS and ASTONISHED INTERROGATIONS as the object of an unexpressed thought or feeling: Tē sīc vexārī, *That you should be so harassed!* (For you to be so harassed!) *Mēne inceptō dēsistere — ? VIRG., *I — desist from my undertaking?* Comp. § 311.

REMARKS.—1. Different is QUOD, which gives the ground: *Hei mihi *quod* nullīs amor est medicābilis herbīs, OV., *Woe's me that* (*in that, because*) *love is not to be cured by any herbs.*

2. On UT, with the subjunctive, in a similar sense, see § 345.

The Accusative and Infinitive as a Subject.

§ 320. The Accusative with the Infinitive may be the

Digitized by Google

subject of a sentence. The Predicate is a substantive or neuter adjective, an impersonal verb or abstract phrase.

Virum bonum *esse* semper *est ūtile*, *To be a good man is always useful;* **Esse* bonam *facile est* quum quod vetet esse remōtum est, Ov., *To be a good woman is easy, when what there is to prevent it is taken away;* **Necesse est facere* sūmptum quī quaerit (= eum qui q.) lucrum, PLAUT., *He must needs make an outlay who seeks an income;* Tuā interest *tē valēre*, *It is to your interest that you be in good health, for you to be in good health;* *Tē* hilarī animō *esse* valdē mē *juvat*, *That you should be (for you to be) in high spirits, rejoices me greatly* (mightily); *Fās est* et ab hoste *docērī* (§ 18).

REMARKS.—1. Oportet, *it behooves*, and necesse est, *must needs*, are often used with the Subjunctive. So also several other phrases with UT. (§ 344, and R.)

2. When the indirect object of the leading verb is the same as the subject of the Infinitive, the adjective of the subject is put in the case of the object: So with licet, *it is left (free)*.

Mihi *negligentī* esse nōn licet, *I am not free to be negligent.*

The Accusative may also be used:

Mihi *negligentem* esse nōn licet.

The Accusative is regularly used when the Dative is not expressed:

Negligentem esse nōn licet, *One is not free to be negligent.*

In poetry, the Dative is allowable even then:

**Negligentī* esse licet; *Licet esse beātīs, *They are free to be happy.* *Sōlus erō quoniam non *licet* esse *tuo*, PROP., *I shall be alone, since I may not be thine.* On licet with the subjunctive, see § 401.

Object Sentences represented by the Participle.

RULE.

§ 321. The Participle is used after verbs of PERCEPTION and REPRESENTATION to express the actual condition of the object of perception or representation: Nōn *audīvit* Alexander dracōnem *loquentem*, *Alexander did not hear the serpent speak(ing);* Adolēscentium gregēs Lacedaemone *vīdimus* ipsī *certantēs*, *We have seen ourselves* (with our own eyes) *in*

Digitized by Google

Lacedaemon shoals of young men contend(ing); Polyphēmum Homērus cum ariete *colloquentem facit, Homer represents Polyphemus* (as) *talking with the ram; Homer makes Polyphemus talk, &c.* (also: colloquī facit, see § 312, R.); *Gaudē quod *spectant* oculī tē mille *loquentem*, Hor. (§ 328).

RULE.

§ 322. The Perfect Participle Passive is used after verbs of CAUSATION and DESIRE, to denote impatience of any thing except entire fulfilment: Caligula Lolliam *missam fēcit, Caligula had Lollia dismissed;* *Prūdentī mandēs sī quid rectē *cūrātum velīs*, Ter., *You must intrust to a sensible man whatever you want properly attended to.*

REMARK.—Compare the Perfect Participle Passive with OPUS EST, ŪSUS EST, *there is need of;* factō opus, ūsus est, *we want action, we want it done.*

CAUSAL SENTENCES.

Causal sentences are introduced:—

1. By QUIA, QUOD, *because* (in that).
2. By QUONIAM, *now that*, QUANDO QUANDŌQUIDEM, *since.* } (Cause Proper.)
3. By QUUM, *as* (§ 365). (Inference.)
4. By the Relative Pronoun, partly alone, partly with UT, UTPOTE, QUĪPPE, &c. (§ 427).

Causal Sentences with Quia, Quod, and Quoniam.

RULE.

§ 323. Causal sentences with QUIA, QUOD, and QUONIAM are put in the Indicative, except when the cause is assigned by another than the speaker or writer, or is merely assumed.

§ 324. INDICATIVE: *Quia* nātūra mūtārī (617) nōn *potest* idcircō vērae amīcitiae sempiternae sunt, *Because nature cannot change, therefore true friendships are everlasting;* Torquātus fīlium suum *quod* is contrā imperium in hostem *pugnā-*

Digitized by Google

verat necārī jussit, *Torquatus bade his son be put to death because he had fought against the enemy contrary to order*(s) [quod pugnâsset = *because* (as Torquatus said or thought)]; Neque mē vixîsse poenitet *quoniam* ita *vixī* ut nōn frûstrā me nātum existîmem, *And I am not sorry for having lived, since I have so lived that I think I was born not in vain;* *Sōlus erō *quoniam* nōn *licet* esse tuō (§ 320, R. 2).

§ 325. SUBJUNCTIVE: Noctû ambulābat in forō Themistoclēs *quod* somnum capere nōn *posset*, *Themistocles used to walk about in the market-place at night because* (as he said) *he could not sleep;* *[Nē] compōne comās quia *sīs ventūrus* ad illam, Ov., *Do not arrange* (your) *hair because* (you think) *you are going to visit her;* *Quae *quia* nōn *liceat* nōn facit, illa facit, Ov., *She who does it not because* (she thinks) *she may not* (do it), *does it.*

§ 326. With NŌN QUOD (NŌN QUŌ), NŌN QUIA, *not that*, SED QUIA, SED QUOD, *but that*, the Indicative or Subjunctive can be used, according to the general rule, *i. e.*, according as the inadmissible ground is absolutely or potentially (§ 54) stated.

INDICATIVE: *Nōn quia* multīs dēbeo *sed quia* saepe concurrunt, *Not because I am in debt to many* [which is true], *but because they* (= their claims) *often conflict; Nōn quia multīs dēbeam, Not that I am in debt to many;* the inference is, *I am not.*

SUBJUNCTIVE: Nōn *quia* salvōs *vellet* sed *quia* perīre causā indictā *nōlēbat*, *Not because he wished them to escape* (he did not), *but because he did not wish them to perish with their case not pleaded* (unheard).

REMARK.—Verbs of SAYING and THINKING are put in the subjunctive with QUOD by a kind of attraction: Impetrāre nōn potuī *quod* religiōne sē impedīrī *dicerent, I could not obtain permission, because they said they were embarrassed* (prevented) *by a religious scruple* (= quod *impedīrentur*, *because* (as they said) *they were prevented*).

Digitized by Google

Quod with Verbs of Emotion.

RULE.

§ 327. QUOD is used to give the ground of EMOTIONS and EXPRESSIONS OF EMOTION, such as verbs of JOY and SORROW, SATISFACTION and ANGER, PRAISE and BLAME, THANKS and COMPLAINT.

§ 328. INDICATIVE: **Gaudē quod spectant* oculī te mīlle loquentem, HOR., *Rejoice that a thousand eyes are gazing at you* (while you are) *speaking;* Dolet mihi *quod* tū nunc *stomachāris, It pains me that you are angry now;* *Tristis es? *indignor quod sum* tibi causa dolōris, OV., *Are you sad? I am provoked* (with myself) *that I am a cause of pain to you;* Tibi *grātiās ago, quod* mē omnī molestiā *līberās, I thank you that you free me from all annoyance.*

§ 329. SUBJUNCTIVE: *Laudat* Panaetius Africānum *quod fuerit* abstinēns, *Panaetius praises* (Scipio) *Africanus for having been abstinent;* Sōcratēs *accūsātus est quod corrumperet* juventūtem, *Socrates was accused of corrupting youth;* Nēmo ōrātōrem *admīrātus* est *quod* Latīnē *loquerētur, No one* (ever) *admired an orator for speaking* (good) *Latin;* **Gaudet* mīles *quod vīcerit* hostem, OV., *The soldier rejoices at having conquered the enemy;* Meminī *glōriārī* solitum esse Quintum Hortēnsium *quod* nunquam bellō cīvīlī *interfuīsset, I remember that Q. Hortensius used to boast of never having engaged in civil war.*

REMARK.—All these verbs may be construed with the Accusative and Infinitive: Salvum *tē advenīre* gaudeo (see § 318); Mīrāmur *tē laetārī, We wonder at your rejoicing;* *Amō tē et nōn nēglexīsse habeo grātiam, TER., *I love you* (= much obliged), *and I am thankful to you for not having neglected it;* *Grātulor *ingenium* nōn *latuīsse* tuum, OV., *I congratulate* (you) *that your genius has not lain perdu.*

FINAL SENTENCES.

§ 330. 1. Final sentences are those which convey the idea of *end* and *aim*, *Design* and *Tendency*. *Result* is readily in-

Digitized by Google

ferred from *Tendency*, and hence, in Dependent sentences, Result is expressed only as a Tendency. In other words, the Latin language uses *so as* throughout, and not *so that*, although *so that* is often a convenient translation. The result is only implied, not stated.

2. Design and Tendency are both expressed by the Subjunctive.

3. The proper negative of sentences of Design is NĒ, of sentences of Tendency NŌN, because Design is the Optative, and Tendency the Potential Subjunctive.

4. The common introductory particle of the whole group is the Relative particle UT (*how*), *in order that*, *so as*.

Sentences of Design.

RULE.

§ 331. Sentences of Design follow the verbs of WILLING and WISHING, of WARNING and BESEECHING, of URGING and DEMANDING, of RESOLVING and ENDEAVORING, of FORCING and PERMITTING: *Volo uti* mihi respondeās, *I wish you to answer me;* Phaëthōn *ut* in currum patris tollerētur *optāvit*, *Phaethon desired to be lifted up into his father's chariot;* *Admoneo ut* quotidie meditēre resistendum esse īrācundiae, *I admonish you to reflect daily that resistance must be made to anger;* *Sed *precor ut* possim tūtius esse miser, Ov., *But I pray that I may be more safely wretched;* **Exigis ut* Priamus nātōrum fūnere lūdat, Ov., *You exact that Priam sport at* (his) *sons' funeral;* Athēniēnsēs quum *statuerent ut* nāvēs cōnscenderent, Cyrsilum quendam *suādentem ut* in urbe manērent lapidibus cooperuērunt, *The Athenians, resolving to embark on board their ships, covered with stones* (= stoned) *one Cyrsilus, who tried to persuade them to remain in the city;* Publium Lentulum *ut* sē abdicāret praetūrā *coēgistis*, *You* forced *P. Lentulus to resign the praetorship;* Illud nātūra *nōn patitur ut*

Digitized by Google

aliōrum spoliīs nōstrās cōpiās augeāmus, *Nature does allow us to increase our wealth by the spoils of others.*

So also any verb used as a verb of WILLING or DEMANDING: Pȳthia *respondit ut* moenibus ligneīs sē mūnīrent, *The Pythia answered that they must defend themselves with walls of wood;* Caesar Dolābellae *dīxit ut* ad mē scrīberet, *Caesar told Dolabella to write to me.*

REMARKS.—1. Instead of UT with the Subjunctive, the Infinitive is frequently used with this class of verbs. So, generally, with jubeo, *I order*, see § 317.

2. When verbs of WILLING and WISHING are used as verbs of SAYING and THINKING, PERCEIVING and SHOWING, the Infinitive must be used. The English translation is *that*, and the Indicative: volo, *I will have it* (maintain), moneo, *I remark*, persuadeo, *I convince*, dēcerno, *I decide*, cōgo, *I conclude: Moneo* artem sine assiduitāte dīcendī nōn multum *juvāre*, *I remark that art without constant practice in speaking is of little avail.*

3. When the idea of WISHING is emphatic, the simple Subjunctive, without UT, is employed: Sine dīcam, *Let me tell you; Mālo* tē sapiēns hostis *metuat* quam stultī cīvēs *laudent*, *I prefer that a wise enemy should fear you rather than that dull citizens should praise you;* *Excūsātum *habeās* mē *rogo*, coeno domī, MART., *I pray you have me excused, I dine at home;* *Hūc ades, insānī *feriant sine* lītora fluctūs, VIRG., *Come hither* (and) *let the mad waves lash the shores;* *Tam fēlix *essēs* quam formōsissima *vellem*, OV. (§ 116).

Introductory Particles with Sentences of Design.

§ 332. 1. UT UTĪ (often preceded by a demonstrative expression such as: IDCIRCŌ, *therefore*, EŌ, *on that account*, EŌ CŌNSILIŌ, *with the design*).

§ 333. 2. QUŌ = UT EŌ, *that thereby*, with comparatives *that the . . . – . . .:* Obdūcuntur cortice truncī *quo* sint ā frīgoribus (§ 3. R. 6) et ā calōribus *tūtiōrēs*, *Trunks* (of trees) *are covered with bark that they may be the safer from cold seasons and warm;* Lēgem brevem esse oportet, *quō facilius* ab imperītīs

Digitized by Google

teneātur, *A law ought to be brief, that it may the more easily be grasped by the uneducated.*

REMARK.—Both UT and QUŌ are relatives (§ 405), and may both be considered as Ablatives.

Negatives of Sentences of Design.

Negatives of sentences of design are as follows:—

§ 334. NĒ, UTNĒ, *that not, lest,* QUŌNĒ, *that thereby not:* negatives are added by NĒVE (NEU) and rarely (in prose) after UT by NEQUE, *nor.*

Gallīnae pennīs fovent pullōs *nē* frīgore *laedantur, Hens keep* (their) *chickens warm with* (their) *feathers, that they may not be injured with cold;* Caesar suīs imperāvit *nē* quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs *rejicerent, Caesar commanded his* (men) *not to throw back any missile at all at the enemy;* Cautum erat, *quōnē* plūs aurī et argentī factī domī *haberēmus, Measures had been taken to prevent our having more wrought gold or silver at home* (Cautum erat = *It had been guarded*); Pompējus suīs praedīxerat *ut* Caesaris impetum *exciperent nēve* sē locō *movērent, Pompey had told his men beforehand to receive Caesar's charge and not to move from their position;* Peto *ut* id ā mē *nē* requīrās, *I beg you not to ask that of me.* (UTNĒ is not used after verbs of negative signification, such as impedio, *I hinder,* recūso, *I refuse.*)

On the sequence of tenses, see § 295.

REMARK.—UT NŌN is used when a particular word is negatived: Cōnfer tē ad Mallium *ut nōn* ējectus ad aliēnōs sed invītātus ad tuōs esse videāris, *Betake yourself to Mallius, that you may seem not thrust out to strangers, but invited to your own* (friends).

RULE.

§ 335. Verbs signifying TO PREVENT, TO FORBID, TO REFUSE, and TO BEWARE, take NĒ with the Subjunctive: Impedior *nē* plūra *dīcam, I am hindered from saying more;* Interdictum erat (§ 15) *nē* fabā (§ 3. R. 8) *vescerentur, They were forbid-*

Digitized by Google

den to eat beans; Histiaeus obstitit *nē* rēs *cônficerētur*, *H. opposed the thing being done;* Rēgulus *nē* sententiam *dīceret* recūsāvit, *Regulus refused to pronounce an opinion;* *Cave *nē* portūs occupet alter, HOR., *Beware lest another get into the harbor beforehand;* *Tantum *nē noceās* dum vīs prōdesse vidētō, OV., *Only see* (to it) *that you do not do harm while you wish to do good;* *Maledictīs dēterrēre *nē scrībat* parat, TER., *He is preparing* (trying) *to frighten* (him) *from writing, by abuse.*

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of PREVENTING also take QUŌMINUS (§ 338), and some of them the Infinitive (§ 317): Nēmo *īre* quemquam pûblicā *prohibet viā*, PLAUT., *No one forbids any one to go by the high road.*

2. After caveo, *I beware*, nē is often omitted: Cavē crēdās, *Beware of believing* (Cave ut crēdās, *Be sure to believe*).

3. With verbs of FEARING and FRIGHTENING, NĒ, *lest*, shows that the negative is wished and the positive feared; UT (NĒ NŌN) shows that the positive is wished and the negative feared:—

Timeo *nē* hostis veniat, } *I fear lest the enemy come* (*I wish he may not come*).
Timeo *ut* amīcus veniat } *I fear lest my friend come not*
nē " *nōn* " } (*I wish he may come*).

Compare UTINAM (§ 55).

*Sed vereor *nē* cuī dē tē plūs quam tibi *crēdās*, HOR., *But I am afraid that you will* (lest you) *trust some one more than yourself about yourself* (Nē crēdās, *Don't trust*); *Firmae hae vereor *ut sint* nûptiae, TER., *I am afraid that this marriage will not be valid* (Utinam sint firmae!).

§ 336. 2. QUĪN (= quī + nē, *how not*), *so as not.*
Quī is a virtual ablative: quîcum = quōcum.

RULE.

§ 337. QUĪN is used when verbs and phrases of OMITTING, REFRAINING, PREVENTING, REFUSING and DELAYING, DOUBT and UNCERTAINTY, are negatived or questioned: *Nullum* adhūc *intermīsī diem quīn* aliquid ad tē līterārum ad tē darem, *I have thus far not allowed a day to pass without dropping you*

Digitized by Google

a line or two (literally: *on which I did not give to you something of a letter*); **Vix* nunc *obsistitur* illīs (§ 15) *quīn* lanient mundum, Ov., *They are now hardly to be kept from rending the universe; Nihil abest quīn* sim miserrimus, *There is nothing wanting that I should be* (= to make me) *perfectly miserable; Paulum abfuit quīn* Fabius Vārum interficeret, *There was little lacking but Fabius* (had) *killed Varus* (= Fabius came near killing Varus); *Fierī nullō* modō *potērat quīn* Cleomenī (§ 15) parcerētur, *It could in no wise happen but that Cleomenes should be spared* = *Cleomenes had to be spared; Nōn possum quīn* exclāmem, *I cannot but* (I must) *cry out; Facere nōn possum quīn* quotidiē ad tē mittam, *I cannot do without, I cannot help sending to you daily;* **Nōn dubium est quīn* uxōrem nōlit fīlius, TER., *There is no doubt that* (my) *son does not want a wife; Quis dubitet* (= nēmo dubitet) *quīn* in virtūte dīvitiae sint? *Who can doubt that there is wealth in virtue?* [*No one*]; *Nōn abest* suspicio *quīn* Orgetorix ipse sibī (§ 100) mortem *cônscīverit, There is a suspicion that Orgetorix killed himself* (cônscīscere sibi mortem, *to procure death for one's self*).

REMARKS.—1. Dubito, *I hesitate*, is commonly followed by an Infinitive (generally nōn dubito, or a question): **Et dubitāmus* adhūc virtūte *extendere* vīrēs? *And do we still hesitate to extend* (our) *power by* (our) *prowess?* So also timeo, vereor, *I fear, hesitate to.*

2. Dubito num = *I am doubtful whether.*
Dubito an = *I doubt but.*
Dubito an nōn = *I doubt but not,* §

RULE.

§ 338. 3. QUŌMINUS (= UT EŌ MINUS), *that thereby the less*, is used with verbs of PREVENTING: impedīre, *to hinder*, prohibēre, *to keep from*, tenēre, *to hold*, dēterrēre, *to frighten off*, obstāre, *to be in the way*, recūsāre, *to refuse*, and the like: Aetās nōn *impedit quōminus* agrī colendī studia teneāmus, *Age does not hinder our retaining interest in agriculture;* Nōn *dēterret*

Digitized by Google

sapientem mors *quōminus* reī pūblicae (§) *cônsulat*, *Death does not deter the sage from consulting the interest of the state; Quid obstat quōminus* deus sit beātus? *What is in the way of* God's being happy?

REMARK.—Impedīre, *to hinder*, deterrēre, *to frighten off*, recūsāre, *to refuse*, sometimes take the Infinitive. Prohibēre, *to keep from*, generally (§ 335, R.): Quid est quod mē *impediat sequī? What is there to prevent me from following?* Frāter meus prînceps *esse* nōn *recūsavit*, *My brother did not refuse to be the leader;* Commemorāre deterreor, *I am deterred from relating.*

§ 339. Sentences of Design may be represented:—

1. By the Infinitive; §

2. By AD, *to*, and OB, *on account of*, with Gerund and Gerundive; §

3. By the Gerund or Gerundive, with or (more rarely) without CAUSĀ or GRĀTIĀ, *for the sake*: §

4. By the Future Participle Active (later Latin): Marobŏduus mīsit lēgātōs ad Tiberium *ōrātūrōs* auxilia, *Marbod sent commissioners to Tiberius to beg for auxiliary troops*;

5. By the Accusative Supine after verbs of motion; §

6. By the Relative sentence with the Subjunctive: *Semper habē Pyladēn quī cônsōlētur Orestēn, Ov., *Always have a Pylades to console Orestes.* § 425.

Sentences of Tendency and Result.

RULE.

§ 340. Sentences of Tendency and Result have the Subjunctive mood.

On the sequence of tenses, see § 295.

The introductory particle is UT.

In the leading clause, demonstratives are often employed in correlation with UT, which is a relative.

Digitized by Google

Sentences of Tendency and Result are used after—

1. Transitive, and

2. Intransitive verbs;

3. Demonstratives, and

4. A number of phrases all implying the creation or existence of conditions which tend to a result.

EXAMPLES.

§ 341. 1. Temperantia *efficit ut* [appetītiōnēs] rectae ratiōnī pareant, *Temperance makes the appetites obey right reason;* Invītus ( ) *facio ut recorder* ruīnās (§ 3. R. 6) reīpublicae, (It is) *against my will that I (am doing so as to) recall the ruined condition of the commonwealth.*

§ 342. 2. Persaepe *ēvenit ut* ūtilitās cum honestāte certet, *It very often* (so) *happens that profit is at variance with honor;* Ad Appiī Claudiī senectūtem *accēdebat* etiam *ut* (§ 311, R. 2) caecus esset, [*To Appius Claudius's old age was also added his being blind; Tantum* abest ab eō *ut* malum mors sit *ut* verear nē hominī sit nihil bonum aliud, *So far is it from death being an evil* (= so far is death from being an evil) *that I fear a man has no other blessing.*]

§ 343. 3. *Tanta* vīs probitātis est *ut* eam in hoste etiam dīligāmus, *So great is the virtue of uprightness that we love it even in an enemy;* Quis est *tam* dēmēns *ut* suā voluntāte *moereat? Who is so much beside himself as to grieve of his own accord?* Nōn *is* es *ut* tē pudor unquam ā turpitūdine revocārit, *You are not the man for shame ever to have recalled you* (= ever to have been recalled by shame) *from baseness.*

REMARK.—Very common are the periphrases: FORE UT, FUTŪRUM UT, with the Subjunctive instead of the Future Infinitive: Spēro *fore ut* contingat id nōbīs, *I hope that we shall have that good fortune* (contingit

Digitized by Google

mihi, *I have the good fortune)*; In fātīs scrīptum Vējentēs habēbant *fore ut* brevī ā Gallī Rōmas caperetur, *The Veientes had it written down in their prophetic books that Rome would shortly be taken by the Gauls.* FORE UT is necessary when the Future Infinitive cannot be formed (§ 44. R.).

§ 344. 4. *Mōs* est hominum *ut* nōlint eundem plūribus excellere (§ 317); *Omnibus hoc *vitium* est cantōribus . . . *ut* nunquam indūcant animum cantāre rogatī, HOR., *All singers have the fault of never consenting to sing* (when) *asked;* **Rectum* est ego *ut* faciam nōn est tē *ut* dēterream, TER., *It is right for me to do it, it is not* (right) *for me to prevent you* (from doing it); *Est* miserōrum (§) *ut* malevolentēs sint atque invideant bonīs, *It is* (characteristic) *of the wretched to be ill-natured and envy the good.*

REMARKS.—1. Necesse est, *it is necessary*, generally, and oportet, *it behooves*, always, omit UT: *Sed nōn effugiēs; mēcum *moriāris oportet*, PROP., *But you shall not escape; you must die with me;* Leuctrica pugna *immortālis sit necesse* est, *The battle of Leuctra must needs be immortal.*

2. The comparative with QUAM UT, *than that, than to*, denotes disproportionate action or condition. §

3. ITA — UT (sometimes UT alone), *so that*, often serves to restrict and condition: *Ita* probanda est mānsuētūdo *ut* adhibeātur reīpūblicae causā sēvēritās, *Mildness is to be approved, so that* (provided that) *strictness be used for the sake of the commonwealth;* Pythagorās et Plato mortem *ita* laudant *ut* fugere vītam vetent, *Pythagoras and Plato so praise death that* (= praise death but) *they forbid fleeing from life;* **Ut* dēsint vīrēs tamen est laudanda voluntās (§ 402).

Astonished Interrogations.

§ 345. UT with the Subjunctive is used in astonished interrogations parallel with the Accusative and Infinitive (§ 319): Egone *ut* tē *interpellem? I interrupt you?* Tū *ut* unquam tē *corrigās? You—ever reform yourself?*

REMARK.—There is no conscious ellipsis.

Digitized by Google

Negative of Sentences of Tendency and Result.

§ 346. The regular negative of sentences of Tendency and Result is UT NŌN. If the leading sentence is negative, QUĪN may be used as well as UT NŌN, or its equivalent, QUĪ NŌN: *Nēmo adeō ferus est *ut nōn* mītescere *possit*, HOR., *No one is so savage that he cannot* (be made to) *soften;* *Nīl tam difficile est *quīn* quaerendō investīgārī *possiet*, TER., *Nothing is so difficult but it can* (= that it cannot) *be traced out by search;* Nunquam tam male est Siculīs *quīn* aliquid facētē et commodē *dīcant*, *The Sicilians are never so badly off as not to* (have) *something clever and pat* (to) *say.*

§ 347. NĒ, *lest*, is sometimes irregularly used instead of NŌN, especially when the idea of *design* or *wish* intrudes: Ita mē gessī *nē* tibi pudōrī essem, *I behaved myself so as not to be a disgrace to you;* Quīdam *nē* unquam *rīdērent* cônsecutī sunt, *Some have accomplished* (the object) *never to laugh;* Pȳthagorās Lacedaemonius ūnus *nē caperētur* urbs Lacedaemōn causa fuit, *P. the Lacedaemonian alone was the cause that the city* (of) *Lacedaemon was not taken.*

Sentences of Tendency and Result introduced by the Relative.

§ 348. UT itself is a Relative, and hence it is natural that Sentences of Tendency and Result should be introduced by the relative QUĪ = UT IS. In some combinations the relative is the common construction; so with dignus, *worthy:* Digna fuit illa nātūra *quae* meliōra vellet, *That nature was worthy of willing better things* (= of better aims), § 425. Likewise indignus, *unworthy*, idōneus, *fit.*

TEMPORAL SENTENCES.

§ 349. The action of the Temporal or Dependent clause may stand to the action of the Principal clause in one of three relations:—

I. It may be *antecedent:*

Digitized by Google

Conjunctions: POSTQUAM, *after that, after*, UT, *as*, UBI, *when* (literally, *where*), SIMULAC, *as soon as;* UT PRĪMUM, QUUM PRĪMUM, *the first moment that.*

II. It may be *contemporaneous:*

Conjunctions: DUM, DŌNEC, *while, until*, QUOAD, *up to* (the time) *that*, QUAMDIŪ, *as long as*, QUUM, *when.*

III. It may be *subsequent:*

Conjunctions: ANTEQUAM, PRIUSQUAM, *before that, before.*

Moods in Temporal Sentences.

§ 350. The mood of Temporal clauses is regularly the Indicative.

§ 351. The Subjunctive is used only—

1. In Orātio Oblīqua (§ 439), or when reference is had to the thoughts or wishes of another than the speaker or writer:

2. When the idea of design or condition is introduced.

I. *Antecedent Action.*

RULE.

§ 352. In historical narrative, Temporal Clauses with POSTQUAM, UBI, UT, SIMULAC, UT PRĪMUM, and QUUM PRĪMUM commonly take the Historical Perfect or the Historical Present Indicative: *Postquam* Caesar *pervēnit* obsidēs poposcit, *After Caesar arrived, he demanded hostages;* Quae *ubi nūntiantur* Rōmam, senātus extemplō dictātōrem dīcī jussit, *When these tidings were carried to Rome, the senate forthwith ordered a dictator to be appointed;* Pompējus *ut* equitātum suum pulsum *vīdit* aciē excēssit, *As Pompey saw his cavalry beaten, he left the line of battle;* Pelopidās nōn dubitāvit *simulac cōnspexit* hostem, cōnflīgere (§ 352), *As soon as he caught sight of the enemy, Pelopidas did not hesitate to engage* (him).

Digitized by Google

§ 353. The Imperfect is used to express an action continued into the time of the Principal clause: Postquam nēmo prōcēdere *audēbat* intrat, *After no one had the courage to come forth, he entered;* Postquam nox *aderat*, revertitur, *After night was there* (came on), *he returned;* Ubi nēmo obvius *ībat* ad castra hostium tendunt, *When* (it was seen that) *no one was coming to meet them, they proceeded to the camp of the enemy.*

§ 354. The Pluperfect is used to express an action completed before the time of the principal clause: with POST QUAM when a definite interval is mentioned. POST and QUAM are often separated. An Ablative of Measure requires QUAM only:—

Līterās scrīpsī statim *ut* tuās *lēgeram, I wrote a letter immediately after I had finished reading yours;* Aristīdēs dēcessit ferē *post* ânnum quartum *quam* Themistoclēs Athēnīs *erat expulsus, Aristides died about four years after Themistocles had been* (was) *banished from Athens;* Hamilcar nōnō ânnō *postquam* in Hispāniam *vēnerat* occīsus est, *Hamilcar was killed nine years after he came to Spain;* Aristīdēs sextō ferē ânnō *quam* erat expulsus in patriam restitūtus est, *Aristides was restored to his country about six years after he was exiled.*

REMARK.—The Historical Perfect is also in frequent use: Nero nātus est Antiī *post* novem mēnsēs *quam* Tiberius *excēssit, Nero was born at Antium nine months after Tiberius departed* (this life).

§ 355. POSTQUAM and the like, with the Present Indicative, assume a causative signification (compare QUONIAM, *now that* = since): Plānē relēgātus mihi videor *posteāquam* in Formiānō sum, *I seem to myself absolutely banished now that I am in* (my) *Formian villa.*

Digitized by Google

Frequentative Use of the Tenses of Completion.

§ 356. The Perfect is used of frequentative action in the present; the Pluperfect, of frequentative action in the past; the Future Perfect, of frequentative action in the future.

PARADIGM.

Quotîēs *cecidit*, surgit, *As often as he falls, he rises,*
Quotîēs *ceciderat*, surgēbat, *As often as he fell, he rose,*
Quotîēs *ceciderit*, surget, *As often as he falls, he will rise.*

Simul *înflāvit* tībīcen ā perītō carmen *agnôscitur*, *As soon as the fluter blows, the song is recognized by the connoisseur;* Ut quisque mē *vīderat nârrābat*, *As each one saw me, he would tell me;* Alcibiadēs simul sē *remīserat* luxuriōsus *reperiēbātur*, *As soon as Alcibiades relaxed, he was found a debauchee;* **Rīdēbat quotiēs* dē līmine *mōverat* ūnum prōtuleratque pedem, flēbat contrārius auctor, JUV., *He used to laugh as often as he put out one foot from his threshold,* (while) *the opposite authority used to weep.* Other examples in Conditional and Relative sentences, see §§ 367, 380, 418.

REMARKS.—1. The frequentative idea comes from the idea of completion contained in the verb of the dependent clause, combined with the idea of continuance contained in the leading verb, which must be a tense of continuance, Present, Imperfect, Future.

2. The Pluperfect Subjunctive is also used by later historians, either on the general principle of Orātiō Oblīqua, or perhaps in imitation of the Greek optative: Id ubi *dîxisset* fētiālis hastam in fīnēs eōrum ēmittēbat, *When he said that the fetial used to hurl* (his) *spear within their boundaries.*

II. *Contemporaneous Action.*

RULE.

§ 357. DUM, DŌNEC, QUOAD, QUAMDIŪ, *so long as, while,* take the Indicative of all the tenses.

REMARK.—QUUM demands a separate treatment.

Digitized by Google

In narrative, DUM, *while*, usually takes the Historical Present.

EXAMPLES.

**Dum vītant* stultī vitia in contrāria currunt, HOR., *Fools, while they avoid* (one set of) *faults, run into the opposite.*

*Sibi vērō hanc laudem relinquunt, "Vixit *dum vixit* bene," TER., *They leave indeed this praise for themselves, "He lived well while he lived;"* **Dum* juga montis aper, fluviō *dum* piscis *amābit*, semper honōs nōmenque tuum laudēsque manēbunt, VIRG., *While the wild boar shall love* (loves) *the mountain ridges, while the fish the river, Thy honor and name and praises shall always abide;* Fuit haec gēns fortis *dum* Lycûrgī lēgēs *vigēbant, This nation was brave so long as the laws of Lycurgus were in force; Dum* haec Rōmae *aguntur*, cônsulēs ambo in Liguribus gerēbant bellum, *While these things are going on at Rome, both consuls were carrying on war in Liguria.*

**Dōnec* grātus *eram* tibī, Persārum viguī rēge beātior, HOR., *While I was acceptable in your sight, I threw more blessed than Persia's king; Quoad* potuit, restitit, *As long as he could, he withstood.*

RULE.

§ 358. DUM, DŌNEC, QUOAD, *up to the time that, until*, have the Present and Perfect and Future Perfect Indicative: The Present is either an Historical Present or looks forward to the Future: *Tītyre *dum redeō*, brevis est via, pasce capellās, VIRG., *Tityrus, while I am returning* (= *till I return*)*—the way is short—feed my kids;* Epamīnôndās ferrum in corpore usque eō retinuit, *quoad* renûntiātum est (§ 313) vīcîsse Boeōtiōs, *E. retained the iron in his body until word was brought back that the Boeotians had conquered; Dōnec rediit* Marcellus, silentium fuit, *Until Marcellus returned, there was silence;*

Digitized by Google

*Haud dēsinam dōnec perfēcerō, *I will not cease until I have* (shall have) *accomplished* (it); *Exspectābo *dum venit, I will wait until he comes.*

DUM, DŌNEC, QUOAD, *with the Subjunctive.*

RULE.

§ 359. DUM, DŌNEC, and QUOAD, *until*, take the Subjunctive when suspense and design are involved: Virginius *dum* collēgam *cônsuleret* morātus est, *Virginius delayed until he could consult his colleague;* *At tibi sit tantī (§) nōn indulgēre theâtrīs, *Dum* bene de vacuō pectore *cēdat* amor, OV., *But let it be worth the cost to you* (= Deem it worth the cost) *not to indulge in playgoing until love is fairly gone from* (your) *untenanted bosom.* Often with exspecto: *Rûsticus exspectat *dum* dēfluat amnis, HOR., *The clown waits for the river to run off* (dry).

REMARK.—The Subjunctive is sometimes used in narrative with DUM, *while*, and DŌNEC, *while, until*, to express subordination (like QUUM, § 368).

RULE.

§ 360. DUM, DUMMODO, MODO, *so long as, provided that, only*, with the Subjunctive, are used in conditional wishes: Oderint *dum metuant, Let them hate so long as they fear, provided that, if they will only fear.* Examples: § 396.

III. *Subsequent Action.*

ANTEQUAM and PRIUSQUAM *with the Indicative.*

RULE.

§ 361. ANTEQUAM and PRIUSQUAM, *before*, take the Present, Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative, when the limit is stated as a fact.

REMARK.—The present is used in anticipation of the future. The elements ANTE, ANTEĀ, PRIUS — QUAM, are often separated.

Antequam ad sententiam *redeo* dē me pauca dīcam, *Before I return to the subject, I will say a few things of myself;*

Digitized by Google

*Omnia experīrī certum est *priusquam pereo*, TER., *I am determined to try every thing before I perish* (priusquam *peream* = *sooner than perish, to keep from perishing*); Membrīs ūtimur *priusquam didicimus* (§ 356) cûjus ea ūtilitātis causā habeāmus, *We use our limbs before we learn for what use we have them;* Nōn *ante* fīnītum est proelium *quam* tribūnus mīlitum *interfectus* est, *The engagement was not finished before* (= until) *the tribune of the soldiers was killed;* Neque dēfatīgābor *antequam* illōrum viās ratiōnēsque *percēpero*, *And I will not let myself grow weary before* (until) *I learn* (*shall have learned*) *their ways and means* (via ratioque = *scientific method*).

ANTEQUAM *and* PRIUSQUAM *with the Subjunctive.*

RULE.

§ 362. ANTEQUAM and PRIUSQUAM are used with the Subjunctive when an ideal limit is given, when the action is expected, contingent, designed, or subordinate.

REMARK.—The translation is often *before*, and the verbal in *-ing*.

Ante vidēmus fulgurātiōnem *quam* sonum *audiāmus*, *We see the flash of lightning before hearing the sound;* In omnibus negōtiīs *priusquam aggrediāre* adhibenda est praeparātio dīligēns, *In all affairs, before addressing yourself* (to them), *you must make use of careful preparation;* Collem celeriter *priusquam* ab adversāriīs *sentiātur* commūnit, *He speedily fortified the hill before he was perceived by the enemy* [priusquam = priusquam ut (§), *too soon to be perceived by the enemy;*] Hannibal omnia *priusquam excēderet* pugnā erat expertus, *Hannibal had tried everything before withdrawing from the fight* (= to avoid withdrawing from the fight); Inde nōn *prius* ēgressus est *quam* (nōn priusquam = dōnec) rēx eum in fidem *reciperet*, *He did not go away until the king took him under his protection* (*i. e.*, He stayed to make the king take him under his protection); *Anteā* mortuus est *quam* tū nātus *essēs*, *He died before you were born, your birth* (mere

Digitized by Google

subordination); Ducentīs annīs *antequam* urbem Rōmam *caperent* in Italiam Gallī dēscendērunt, (It was) *two hundred years before their taking Rome* (that) *the Gauls came down into Italy.*

REMARK.—POTIUS QUAM, like PRIUSQUAM, does not require UT: Depugnā potius quam serviās, *Fight* (it) *out rather than be a slave.*

§ 363. IV. *Constructions of Quum.*

RULE.

I. Temporal QUUM (*when — then*) takes the Indicative;

II. Historical QUUM, *as*, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

III. 1. Causal QUUM, *as, since;* and

2. Concessive QUUM, *whereas, although*, take the Subjunctive.

PARADIGM.

I. *Quum* vēr *appetit*, mīlitēs ex hībernīs movent, *When spring approaches, soldiers move out of winter-quarters.*

II. *Quum* vēr *appeteret*, Hannibal ex hībernīs mōvit, *As spring was approaching (spring approaching), Hannibal moved out of winter-quarters.*

III. 1. *Quum* vēr *appetat*, ex hībernīs movendum est, *As* (since) *spring is approaching, we must move out of winter-quarters.*

2. *Quum* vēr *appeteret*, tamen hostēs ex hībernīs nōn movērunt, *Whereas (although) spring was approaching, nevertheless the enemy did not move out of winter-quarters.*

I. *Temporal Quum.*

RULE.

§ 364. QUUM, *when*, is used with all the tenses of the Indicative, to designate merely temporal relations. In the Principal clause, a temporal adverb or temporal expression is frequently employed, such as TUM, TUNC, *then*, NUNC, *now*, DIĒS, *day*, TEMPUS, *time*, and the like: Animus nec *quum*

Digitized by Google

adest nec *quum discēdit* appāret, *The soul is not visible either when it is there (comes) or when it goes;* Sex librōs *tunc* dē Rēpûblicā scrîpsimus *quum* gubernācula reīpûblicae *tenēbāmus, I wrote the six books about the state at the time when I held the helm of the state;* Recordāre *tempus illud quum* pater Cūrio maerēns *jacēbat* in lectō, *Remember the time when Curio the father lay grieving in bed;* Longum *illud tempus quum* nōn *ero* magis mē movet quam hoc exiguum, *That long time* (to come), *when I shall not exist, has more effect on me than this brief* (present time); Jam vēr appetēbat quum Hannibal ex hībernīs mōvit, *Spring was already approaching when H. moved out of winter-quarters.*

Coincident Action.

§ 365. When the actions of the two clauses are coincident, QUUM is almost equivalent to its kindred relative QUOD, *in that: Quum* tacent clāmant, *when* (= in that) *they are silent, they cry aloud;* Improbus fuîstī *quum* accēpîstī, *You were dishonest when* (= in that) *you received.*

This is true even when the temporal relation is emphasized: **Quum* patriam *āmīsī tum* mē perîsse putātō, Ov., *When I lost my country, then* (it was) *you must think I perished.*

Conditional use of QUUM.

§ 366. QUUM with the Future, Future Perfect, or Present, used as a Future (§ 27), is often almost equivalent to sī (*if*), with which it is sometimes interchanged: **Quum veniet,* contrā digitō compesce labellum, JUV., *When* (If) *he meets you, padlock your lip with your finger;* Nēmo mē vestrum *quum* hinc *excêssero* cônsequētur, *None of you will catch up with me when I shall have departed* (depart) *hence.*

Quum as a Generic Relative.

§ 367. QUUM = QUOTIĒS, *as often as*, is used in the same way as the generic relatives (§ 418). When one action is re-

Digitized by Google

peated before another in the Present, the Perfect is employed; in the Past, the Pluperfect; in the Future, the Future Perfect: Ager *quum* multōs ânnōs *requiēvit* ūberiōrēs efferre frūgēs solet, *When a field has rested* (rests) *many years, it usually produces a more abundant crop; Quum* pālam ējus ânnulī ad pālmam *converterāt* Gygēs ā nullō vidēbātur, *When*(ever) *Gyges turned the set of the ring toward the palm* (of his hand) *he was seen by no one.*

REMARK.—In this frequentative sense the Pluperfect Subjunctive is frequently employed, chiefly by later historians; § 356, R. 2.

II. *Historical* QUUM.

RULE.

§ 368. QUUM, *when* (*as*), is used in narrative with the Imperfect Subjunctive of contemporaneous action, with the Pluperfect Subjunctive of antecedent action.

REMARK.—The subordinate clause generally precedes and often indicates causal as well as temporal relation. The English participle is often a convenient translation. Quum essem — *being;* Quum fuissem — *having been* (also: *being*).

Quum hanc jam epistolam *complicārem* tabellāriī ā vōbīs vēnērunt, *As I was already in the act of folding this letter, couriers from you came; Quum* Caesar Ancōnam *occupâsset,* urbem relīquimus, *When* (as) *Caesar had occupied Ancōna* (C. having occupied A.), *I left the city;* Agēsilāus *quum* ex Aegyptō *reverterētur* dēcêssit, *Agesilaus died as he was returning from Egypt;* Zēnōnem *quum* Athēnīs *essem* audiēbam frequenter, *When I was at Athens, I heard Zeno* (lecture) *frequently.*

Causal and Concessive QUUM.

RULE.

§ 369. QUUM, *when, whereas, since,* with the Subjunctive, is used to denote the reason, and occasionally the motive, of an action: Quae *quum* ita *sint* effectum est nihil esse malum quod turpe nōn sit, *Since these things are so, it is made out*

Digitized by Google

(proved) *that nothing is bad that is not dishonorable; Quum* Athēnās tamquam ad mercātūram bonārum artium *sīs prŏfectus* inānem redīre turpissimum est, *As* (since) *you set out for Athens as if to a market of good qualities, it would be utterly disgraceful to return empty* (handed); Dolō erat pugnandum *quum* pār *nōn esset* armīs, *He had to fight by stratagem, as he was not a match in arms.*

REMARKS.—The Subjunctive is used because the relation is a mere conception: that it is a mere conception is emphasized by QUĪPPE and UTPOTE, as in the relative sentence. (§ 427.)

RULE.

§ 370. Causal QUUM, *whereas*, becomes concessive QUUM, *whereas, although*, when the cause is not sufficient: Nihil me adjūvit *quum posset, He gave me no assistance, although he had it in his power;* **Quum sit* turpe magis nôstrīs nêscīre Latīnē, JUV., *Whereas it is more disgraceful for natives not to know Latin; Quum* prīmī ordinēs hostium *concidissent,* tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant, *Whereas* (*although*) *the first ranks of the enemy had fallen* (been cut to pieces), *nevertheless the rest resisted most vigorously;* **Quum* tē tam multī *peterent* tū mē ūna petîstī, PROP., *Though so many sought you, you alone sought me.*

QUUM — TUM.

§ 371. When QUUM, *when*, TUM, *then* (both—and especially), have the same verb, the verb is put in the Indicative; when they have different verbs, the verb with QUUM may be in the Subjunctive, which often has a concessive force: Multum *quum* in omnibus rebus *tum* in rē mīlitārī *potest* fortūna, *Chance has great potency in every thing, and especially in war;* Plēna exemplōrum *est* nôstra rēs pûblica *quum* sæpe *tum* maximē bellō Pūnicō secundō, (The history of) *our state is full of examples* (which have occurred), *often and most* (of all) *in the second Punic war;* Sīsennæ historia *quum* facile omnēs

Digitized by Google

superiōrēs *vincat* tum *indicat* tamen quantum absit ā summō, *Although the history of Sisenna easily surpasses all former histories, yet it shows how far it is from the highest* (mark).

Conditional Sentences.

§ 372. In conditional sentences the clause which contains the condition (supposed cause) is called the Prótăsis, that which contains the consequence is called the Apódŏsis. For practical purposes Protasis may be translated *premise*, and Apodosis, *conclusion*. The Apodosis is grammatically the *Principal*, the Protasis the *Dependent* clause.

§ 373. The common conditional particle is sī, *if* (a locative case, literally *so, in those circumstances* (comp. sī-c, *so*). Hence, conditional clauses with sī may be regarded as adverbs in the ablative case, and are often actually represented by the ablative with a participle, adjective, or substantive (§ 161).

REMARKS.—1. With sī compare English *so*: "So I were a man" (SHAKS.) — *If I were a man: so it be*, dummodo sit.

2. The temporal particles QUUM and QUANDO, *when*, and the locative UBI, are also used to indicate conditional relations in which the idea of time or space is involved.

Sign of the Conditional omitted.

§ 374. The sign of the Conditional is sometimes omitted, and the relation expressed by an interrogative or imperative: Tristis es? indignor quod sum tibi causa dolōris, Ov. (§ 328); Cēdit amor rēbus: rēs age, tūtus eris, Ov., *Love yields to business; do business, (if you plunge into) business, you will be safe.*

Negative of sī.

§ 375. The negative of Sī is either sī NŌN or NISI.

Sī NŌN negatives a particular word, *if not*; NISI, *unless*, negatives the whole idea:

1. Quod *sī nōn* possumus facere, moriāmur, *If we cannot do it, let us die;* Sī fēceris, magnum habēbo grātiam; *sī nŏn* fēceris, ignōscam, *If you do it, I will be very grateful to you;*

Digitized by Google

if you do not, I will forgive (you); *Sī mihi *nōn* parcis, fortūnae parcere dēbēs, Ov., *If you do not spare me, you ought to spare* (my) *fortune.*

2. *Nisi* id confestim *facis*, ego tē trādam magistrātuī, *Unless you do it at once, I will give you up to the magistrate;* Parvī sunt forīs arma *nisi est* cônsilium domī, *Of little* (value) are arms *abroad, unless there is wisdom at home.*

REMARKS.—1. Sometimes the difference is unessential. Observe the phrases: Sī ille nōn fuīsset and nisi ille fuīsset — *If it not been for him.*

2. NĪ for NISI is antiquated or poetical: **Nī* pārēre velīs pereundum erit ante lucernās, JUV. (§ 317, R. 4).

3. If the verb is to be supplied from the context, sī MINUS, *if less*, (not) SĪN MINUS, SĪN ALITER, *if otherwise*, are commonly used, rarely sī nōn: Edūc tēcum omnēs tuōs; *sī minus*, quam plūrimōs, *Take out with you all your* (followers); *if not, as many as possible;* *Ōdero sī poterō *sī nōn* invītus amābo, Ov., § 30 R.

Two Conditions excluding each the other.

§ 376. When two conditions exclude each the other, sī is used for the first; SĪN, *if not* (but if), for the second. SĪN is further strengthened by AUTEM, *but*, MINUS, *less*, (*not*), SECUS, *otherwise*, ALITER, *else:* Mercātūra, sī tenuis est, sordida putanda est; *sīn* magna et cōpiōsa, nōn est admodum vituperanda, *Mercantile business, if it is petty, is to be considered dirty* (work); *if* (it is) *not* (petty, but) *great and abundant* (= conducted on a large scale), *it is not to be found fault with much.*

Correlatives of Sī.

§ 377. The correlatives of sī are: Sīc, *so*, ITA, *thus;* but they are commonly not expressed. Occasionally TUM, *then*, and EĀ CONDITIŌNE, *on those terms*, are employed.

Classification of Conditional Sentences.

§ 378. Conditional sentences may be divided into three classes, according to the character of the Protasis:—

Digitized by Google

I. Logical Conditional Sentences: Sī, with the Indicative.
II. Ideal Conditional Sentences: Sī, with Present and Perfect Subjunctive.
III. Unreal Conditional Sentences: Sī, with Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

I. *Logical Conditional Sentences.*

§ 379. The Logical Conditional Sentence simply states the elements in question. (If this is so, then that is so; if this is not so, then that is not so.) The Protasis is in the Indicative; the Apodosis is either in the Indicative or an equivalent (the Potential Subjunctive or Imperative).

PARADIGMS.

Sī id crēdis, errās, *If you believe that, you are going wrong;*

Sī id crēdēbās, errābās, *If you believed that, you were going wrong;*

Sī id crēdidīstī, errāstī, *If you have believed that, you have gone wrong;*

Sī id crēdēs, errābis, *If you (shall) believe that, you will be going wrong;* §§ 36, 38.

Sī id crēdideris, errāveris, *If you (shall have) believe(d) that, you will have gone* (will go) *wrong.*

Sī quid crēdidīstī, errās, *If you have believed any thing* (= *when you believe any thing*), *you go wrong.* Comp. § 356.

Sī quid crēdiderās, errābās, *If you had believed any thing* (= *when you believed any thing*), *you went wrong.*

§ 380. *Sī* spīritum *dūcit, vīvit, If he is drawing* (his) *breath* (breathing), *he is living;* Nātūram *sī sequēmur* ducem, nunquam *aberrābimus, If we follow nature* (as our) *guide, we shall never go astray; Stomachābātur* senex *sī* quid asperius *dīxeram, The old man used to be fretted if I said any thing* (that was) *rather harsh;* *Vīvam sī vīvet; *sī cadet* illa cadam,

Digitized by Google

PROP., *I shall live if she lives; if she falls I shall fall;* *Flectere *sī nequeō* superōs, Acheronta *movēbō*, VIRG., *If I cannot bend heaven, I will rouse hell;* **Sī* animum *vicīstī est* quod gaudeās, PL., *If you have conquered* (your) *temper, there is reason for your rejoicing;* *Nunc *sī* forte *potes*, sed nōn potes optima conjux; Fīnītīs *gaudē* tot mihi morte malīs, Ov., *Now, if haply you can, but you cannot, noble wife; Rejoice that so many evils have been finished for me by death.*

REMARK.—In the Ōrātio Oblīqua the Protasis of the Logical Conditional takes the Subjunctive, according to the rule. § 440.

II. *Ideal Conditional Sentence.*

§ 381. The Ideal Conditional sentence represents the matter as still in suspense. The Protasis is put in the Present Subjunctive for continued action, and in the Perfect Subjunctive for completion or attainment. The Apodosis is in the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, Imperative, or some other equivalent of the Future. §§ 27, 30, R. 2.

Sī id crēdās, errēs, *If you should, were to, believe that, you would be going wrong.*

Sī id crēdās, errāveris, *If you should, were to, believe that, you would go wrong.*

Sī id crēdideris, errēs, 1. *If you should* (*prove to*) *have believed that, you would be going wrong.*

2. *If you should* (come to) *believe that you would be going wrong.*

§ 382. *Sī* vīcīnus tuus equum meliōrem *habeat* quam tuus est, tuumne equum *mālīs* an illīus? *If your neighbor were to have a better horse than yours is, would you prefer your horse or his?* *Sī* gladium quis apud tē sānā mente *dēposuerit*, repetat īnsāniēns, reddere peccātum *sit*, officium nōn reddere, *If a man in sound mind were to deposit a sword with you,* (and) *reclaim it* (when) *mad, it would be wrong to return it, right not to return it;** *Sī* vērum *excutiās*, faciēs nōn uxor *amātur*,

Digitized by Google

Juv., *If you (were to) get out the truth, it is the face, not the wife, that is loved;* Ōtia *sī tollās perīēre* Cupīdinis arcūs, Ov. (§ 3, R. 6); **Sī valeant* hominēs, ars tua Phoebe *jacet*, Ov., *Should men keep well, your art, Phoebus, is naught;* **Sī* nunc mē *suspendam*, meīs inimīcīs voluptatem *creāverim*, Plaut., *If I were to hang myself now, I should get up a pleasure for mine enemies;* **Sī* ā corōnā relictus *sim* nōn *queam* dīcere, *If I were to be left by the ring* (the outside crowd), *I should not be able to speak.*

III. *Unreal Conditional Sentence.*

§ 383. The Unreal Conditional sentence is used *of that which is unfulfilled or impossible*, and is expressed by the Imperfect Subjunctive for continued action—generally, in opposition to the Present, and by the Pluperfect Subjunctive for completed action—uniformly in opposition to the Past.

Sī id crēderēs, errārēs, *If you believed that*, [you do not], *you would be going wrong;*

Sī id crēdidissēs, errāvissēs, *If you had believed that*, [you did not], *you would have gone wrong.*

§ 384. Sapientia nōn *expeterētur*, *sī* nihil *efficeret*, *Wisdom would not be sought after, if it accomplished nothing;* *Sī* ibi tē esse *scissem*, ad tē ipse *venissem*, *If I had known you were there, I should have come to you myself;* *Hectora *quis* nōsset *sī* fēlix Troja *fuisset?* Ov., *Who would know* (of) *Hector if Troy had been happy;* *Nisi* ante Rōmā *prōfectus essēs*, nunc eam certē *relinquerēs*, *If you had not departed from Rome before, you would certainly leave it now.*

Remarks.—1. The Imperfect denotes opposition to the Present, and hence it may be used in opposition to a continued present or future. At certain points, then, the Ideal and Unreal conditions may be interchanged according to the conception of the speaker: Haec *sī* tēcum patria *loquātur* nōnne impetrāre *dēbeat? If your country should* (were to) *speak thus with you, ought she not to get* (what she wants)? *Si* ūniversa prōvincia loquī *posset*, hāc vōce *ūterētur*, *If the whole province could speak, it would*

Digitized by Google

use this language; Sī exsistat hodiē ab înferīs Lycûrgus, *gaudeat, If Lycurgus were to rise from the dead this day, he would rejoice.* (Sī exsisteret, *if he were rising.*)

2. The Imperfect Subjunctive may also denote opposition to the past (Comp. § 54): Nōn tam facile opēs Carthāginis tantae *concidîssent* nisi Sicilia clâssibus nôstrīs *patēret, The great resources of Carthage* (Carthage with her great resources) *would not have fallen so readily if Sicily had not been open to our fleets.*

3. In Unreal Conditions, the Apodosis is sometimes expressed by the Imperfect Indicative when the action is represented as interrupted (§ 316), by the Pluperfect and Historical Perfect when the conclusion is confidently anticipated (§ 51). This is the regular construction with verbs which signify *possibility* or *power*, *obligation* or *necessity* (§ 49, R.). *Lābēbar* longius, nisi mē retinuîssem, *I was gliding* (should have glided) *too far if I had not checked myself; Peractum erat* bellum sī Pompêjum opprimere Brundusiī potuîsset, *The war was* (had been) *finished if he had been able to crush Pompey at Brundusium;* Cônsul esse quī *potuī* nisi eum vītae cursum tenuîssem? *How could I have been consul if I had not kept that course of life?* *Antōnī *potuit* gladiōs contemnere sī sīc omnia dixîsset, Juv., *He might have despised Antony's swords if he had thus said all* (that he did say); **Ēmendatūrus* sī licuîsset *eram*, Ov., *I should have removed the faults if I had been free* (to do it); *In bona *ventūrus* sī paterēre (R. 2) *fuit*, Ov., *He would have come into* (my) *property if you had permitted it.*

§ 385. When the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional is made to depend on a sentence which requires the Subjunctive, the Pluperfect is turned into the Periphrastic Perfect Subjunctive: the Imperfect form is unchanged.

Nōn dubito, *I do not doubt,*	quīn sī id crēderēs, errārēs, *that if you believed that, you would be going wrong.*
Nōn dubitābam, *I did not doubt,*	*quīn* sī id crēdidîssēs *erratūrus fueris, that if you believed that, you would have gone wrong.*

§ 386. Honestum tale est ut vel *sī ignōrārent id hominēs esset* laudābile, *Virtue is a thing to deserve praise, even if men did not know it.* Nec dubium erat *quīn sī* tam paucī simul obīre omnia *possent*, terga *datūrī* hostēs *fuerint, There was no doubt that if it had been possible for so small a number to have*

Digitized by Google

managed every thing, the enemy would have turned their backs; Dīc quidnam *factūrus fueris sī* eō tempore cēnsor *fuisēs? Tell* (*me*) *what you would have done, if you had been censor at that time?* Adeō inopiā coactus est Hannibal, *ut* nisi tum fugae speciem abeundō timuîsset Galliam *repetītūrus fuerit, Hannibal was so hard pressed by want of provisions, that had he not at the time feared* (presenting) *the appearance of flight by retreating, he would have gone back to Gaul* (less usual: repetītūrus fuîsset).

REMARKS.—1. Potuī (§ 49, R.) commonly becomes potuerim, and the Periphrastic Passive with fuī fuerim:

Haud dubium fuit *quīn* nisi ea mora intervēnîsset castra eo diē Pūnica capī *potuerint, There was no doubt that had not that delay interfered the Punic camp could have been taken on that day.* Compare § 456, R. 2.

2. The Passive Conditional is unchanged: Id ille sī repudiâsset, dubitātis *quin* eī vīs *esset allata? If he had rejected that, do you doubt that force would have been brought* (to bear) *on him?*

INCOMPLETE CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

Omission of the Protasis.

§ 387. When the Protasis is omitted, either the precise verb or the general idea of the verb is to be supplied from the Apodosis: Sī *quisquam*, Cato sapiēns *fuit* = Sī quisquam fuit, *If any one was wise, Cato was;* Magnus ōrātor est, sī nōn maximus, *He is a great orator, if not the greatest.*

Omission of the Apodosis.

§ 388. The Apodosis is omitted in *wishes:* *O, mihi praeteritōs referat *sī* Jûppiter ânnōs, VIRG. (§ 56.)

REMARK.—No definite ellipsis is to be supplied.

Apodosis omitted in Comparisons.

§ 389. The Apodosis is omitted in comparisons with UT SĪ, VELUT SĪ, AC SĪ, QUAM SĪ, TAMQUAM SĪ, QUASI, or simply VELUT and TAMQUAM, *as if.* The verb is to be supplied from the Protasis. The mood is the Subjunctive. The tenses follow the rule of sequence, rather than the ordinary use of the conditional. In English the translation implies the unreality of the comparison.

Digitized by Google

§ 390. Parvī prīmō ortū sīc *jacent tamquam* [= jaceant sī] omnīnō sine animō *sint, Babies, when first born, lie* (there) *as if they were wholly lifeless;* Hīc est obstandum, mīlitēs, *velut sī* ante Rōmāna moenia *pugnēmus, Here* (is the place) *we must oppose them, Soldiers, as if we were fighting before the walls of Rome* (velut obstēmus sī pugnēmus, *as we would oppose them, if we were to fight*); Mē juvat *velut ipse* in parte labōris ac perīculī *fuerim* ad fīnem bellī Pūnicī pervēnīsse, *I am delighted to have reached the end of the Punic war, as if I had shared in the toil and danger* (of it); *Suspectus *tamquam* ipse suās *incenderit* aedēs, Juv., *Suspected as if he had* (of having) *set his own house on fire;* Tantus patrēs metus cēpit *velut sī* jam ad portās hostis *esset, As great fear caught* (came upon) *the senators as if the enemy were already at their gates;* Dēlēta est Ausŏnum gēns perinde *ac sī* internecīvō bellō *certâsset, The Ausonian race was blotted out, just as if it had engaged in an internecine war* (war to the knife).

Remark.—Occasionally the sequence is violated out of regard to the conditional: Massiliēnsēs in eō honōre audīmus apud Rōmānōs esse *ac sī* medium umbilīcum Graeciae *incolerent, We hear that the people of Marseilles are in as high honor with the Romans as if they inhabited the mid-navel* (= the heart) *of Greece.*

Omission of the Conditional Sign.

§ 391. Occasionally the members of a Conditional sentence are put side by side without a Conditional sign: An ille mihi (§ 149) līber, cuī mulier imperat; *poscit;* dandum est; *vocat;* veniendum; *ējicit;* abeundum; *minātur;* extimēscendum, *Or is he free,* (tell) *me, to whom a woman gives orders; she asks; he must give; she calls; he must come; she turns out* (of door); *he must go; she threatens; he must be frightened;* *Ūnum cognōris, omnēs nōris, Ter., *You know one, you know all.*

Nisi.

§ 392. Nisi and Nisi sī are often used after negative sentences in the signification of *except, besides, only:* *Īnspice

Digitized by Google

quid portem; *nihil* hīc *nisi* triste vidēbis, Ov., *Examine what I am bringing; you will see nothing here except* (what is) *sad;* **Nīl nisi* mē patriīs jussit abesse focīs (§ 214, R. 3).

§ 393. Nisi quod introduces an actual limitation—*with the exception, that:* Nihil acciderat [Polycratī] quod nôllet (§ 426) *nisi quod* ânnulum quō delectābātur in marī abjēcerat, *Nothing had happened to Polycrates that he could not have wished, except that he had thrown into the sea a ring in which he took delight* (= a favorite ring).

§ 394. Nisi forte, *unless perhaps*, nisi vērō, *unless indeed*, with the Indicative, either limits a previous statement, or makes an ironical concession: Nēmo fẹrē saltat sôbrius *nisi forte insānit, There is scarce any one that dances* (when) *sober, unless perhaps he is mad;* Licet honestā morte dēfungī, *nisi forte* satius *est* victōris expectāre arbitrium, *We are free to die an honorable death, unless perhaps it is better to await the pleasure of the conqueror.*

Other Forms and Phases of the Conditional Sentence.

§ 395. Sīve, sīve (seu, seu), leaves a choice between two (§ 283). It stands with the Indicative: *Sīve habēs* quid (§ 104), *sīve* nihil *habēs*, scrībe tamen, *If you have any thing, or if you have nothing* (= whether you have any thing to write or not), *still write.*

Concessive Sentences.

§ 396. Dum, dummodŏ, modo, *provided, provided only, only* (negative: nē), are used to limit a previous expression, and to imply at the same time a wish, always in the Subjunctive (§ 360): *Dum* dōs *sit*, nullum vitium vitiō (§ 148) vertitur, Plaut., *Provided there be a dowry, no fault can be counted as a fault;* **Dummodo* mōrāta rectē (§ 229) *veniat*, dōtāta est satis, Plaut., *Provided only she come with a good character, she is endowed* (= her dowry is) *enough;* Multa [in eō] admī-

Digitized by Google

randa sunt: ēligere modo cūrae (§ 148) sit, *Many things in him are to be admired, only you must be careful to choose;* **Dumnē* ob malefacta peream parvī id aestimo, PLAUT. (§ 176); *Cōpia plācandī *sit modo* parva tuī, OV. (§ 219, R.).

§ 397. ETSĪ, ETIAMSĪ, TAMETSĪ, QUAMQUAM, QUAMVIS, QUAMTUMVĪS, LICET, correspond generally to the idea *although.*

REMARK.—On QUUM, *when, whereas,* as a concessive particle, see § 370.

§ 398. ETSĪ, literally: *even if,* ETIAMSĪ, *even now if,* TAMETSĪ, *yet even if,* take the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the general principles which regulate the use of SĪ, *if.* The Indicative is more common, especially with ETSĪ and ETIAMSĪ: De futūrīs rēbus *etsī* semper difficile *est* dīcere, tamen interdum conjectūrā possīs accēdere, *Although it is always difficult to tell about the future, nevertheless you can sometimes come near it by guessing;* Hamilcar *etsī flagrāvit* bellandī cupiditāte, tamen pācī serviendum putāvit, *Although Hamilcar was on fire with the desire of war, nevertheless he thought that he ought to subserve* (to work for) *peace;* Inops ille *etiamsī* referre grātiam nōn *potest,* habēre certē potēst, *The needy man* (spoken of), *if he cannot return a favor, can at least feel it; Etsī* meum ingenium nōn *monēret* necessitās cōgit, *Even if my heart did not bid* (me), *necessity compels* (*me*).

§ 399. QUAMQUAM, *to what extent soever,* falls under the head of generic relatives (§ 59), and, in the best authors, is construed with the Indicative: Hostēs *quamquam vīcerant* sē recēpērunt, *The enemy, although he had conquered, retired.*

REMARK.—The Potential Subjunctive is sometimes found with QUAM QUAM: *Quamquam* exercitum quī in Volscīs erat, *māllet,* nihil recūsāvit, *Although he would have preferred the army which was in the Volscian country, nevertheless he made no objection.*

§ 400. QUAMVĪS, *to what extent you choose,* QUANTUMVĪS, *to what amount you choose,* after the analogy of VOLO, *I will,*

Digitized by Google

take the Subjunctive: *Quamvīs *sint* sub aquā, sub aquā maledīcere tentant, Ov., *Although they be under the water, under the water they try to rail;* **Quamvīs* ille niger, *quamvīs* tū candidus *essēs*, VIRG., *Although he was black, although you were fair;* Vitia mentis, *quantumvīs* exigua *sint*, in mâjus excēdunt, *Mental ailings, no matter how slight they be, go on increasing.*

REMARKS.—1. ETSĪ, TAMETSĪ, and QUAMQUAM are often used at the beginning of sentences, in the same way as the English, *And yet, Although, However*, in order to limit the whole preceding sentence.

2. The Indicative with ETSĪ and QUAMQUAM are of course liable to attraction into the subjunctive in ōrātio oblīqua (§ 440).

§ 401. LICET, *it is left free* (Intransitive of linquo, *I leave*) retains its verbal nature, and, according to the sequence of Tenses, takes only the Present and Perfect Subjunctive: *Licet irrīdeat* sī quī vult, *Let any one laugh who will;* **Ardeat* ipsa licet, tormentīs gaudet amantis, JUV., *Though she herself is aglow, she rejoices in the tortures of her lover;* **Sim licet* extrēmum sīcut sum *missus* in orbem, Ov., *Although I be sent, as I have been, to the end of the world.*

§ 402. UT and NĒ are also used concessively: **Ut* dēsint vīrēs, tamen est laudanda voluntās, Ov., *Granted that strength be lacking, nevertheless you must praise* (my) *good-will;* *Nē *sit* summum malum dolor, malum certē est, *Granted that pain be not the chief evil, an evil it certainly is.*

§ 403. The Concessive sentence may be represented further by a participle:

Although seeing,	vidēns;
Although not seeing, it does not see,	nōn vidēns.
☞ *Without seeing.* (§ 221.)	

Although seen,	vīsus.
Although not seen,	nōn vīsus.
☞ *Without being seen,*	(§ 461.)

Digitized by Google

RELATIVE SENTENCES.

Preliminary Observations.

§ 404. 1. The Latin language uses the relative construction far more than the English: so in the beginning of sentences, and in combination with Conjunctions and other Relatives. The awkwardness or impossibility of a literal translation may generally be relieved by the substitution of a demonstrative with an appropriate conjunction, or the employment of an abstract noun: *Quae quum* ita sint, *Now since these things are so;* Epicūrus nōn satis polītus iīs artibus *quās quī tenent*, ērudītī appellantur, *Epicurus is not sufficiently polished by those accomplishments, from the possession of which people are called cultivated;* Futūra modo exspectant *quae quia* certa esse nōn possunt, cônficiuntur et angōre et metu, *They only look forward to the future, and because that cannot be certain, they are worn out by distress and fear.* Notice especially QUOD in combination with SĪ, UBI, in which QUOD means *and as for that*, and is sometimes translated by *and, but, therefore*, sometimes not at all.

§ 405. 2. The Relative is the fertile source of many of the introductory particles of the compound sentence, and is therefore put last on account of the multiplicity of its uses.

§ 406. Relative sentences are introduced by the Relative Pronouns in all their forms: Adjective, Subjunctive, and Adverbial. (See Tables, p. 44.)

REMARKS.—1. The relative adverbs of Place and their correlatives may be used instead of a preposition with a relative. UNDE, *whence*, is frequently used of persons, the others less frequently. ibi = in eō, &c; ubi = in quō, &c.; inde = ex quō, &c.; unde = ex quō, &c.; eō = in quem, &c.; quō = in quem, &c.

Potest fierī ut is *unde* tē audisse dīcis īrātus dīxerit, *It may be that he from whom you say you heard* (it) *said it in anger.*

2. The relative is not to be confounded with the dependent interrogative sentence. Dīcam quid sentiam, *I will tell what opinion I have.* Dīcam quod sentio, *I will tell the opinion that I have*, Et quid ego tē velim et tu quod quaeris sciēs, *You shall know both what I want of you and what* (the thing which) *you are asking* (=the answer to your question.)

Digitized by Google

Position of the Relatives.

§ 407. The Relative and Relative forms are put at the beginning of sentences and clauses. The Preposition, however, generally, though not invariably, precedes its relative. (§ 205.)

RULE.

§ 408. The Relative agrees with the word to which it refers (its antecedent) in Gender, Number, and Person: **Is* minimō eget mortālis *quī* minimum cupit, SYRUS, *That mortal is in want of least, who wanteth least;* **Uxor* contenta est *quae* bona est ūnō virō, PLAUT. (§ 170 R. I.); *Malum est *cônsilium quod* mūtārī nōn potest, SYRUS, *Bad is the plan that cannot be changed;* *Pugnābant *armīs quae* post fabricāverat ūsus, HOR., *They fought with arms which need had fashioned afterward; Ego quī* tē *cônfirmo*, ipse mē nōn possum, *I, who reassure you, cannot reassure myself; Tū es* is *quī* mē saepissimē *ornâstī*, *Thou art he who hast most frequently honored me.*

REMARKS.—1. When the relative refers to a sentence, ID QUOD, *that which*, is commonly used (parenthetically): Sī ā vōbīs dēserar (id quod nōn spēro) tamen animō nōn dēficiam, *If I should be deserted by you (which I do not expect), nevertheless I should not become faint-hearted.*

2. The gender and number of the Relative may be determined:

1. By the sense, and not by the form.
2. By the predicate or the apposition, and not by the antecedent.

EXAMPLES: 1. Sex mīllia *quī* Pydnam perfūgerant, *Six thousand who had fled to Pydna;* Equitātum omnem praemittit, *quī* videant, *He sent all the cavalry ahead, who should see, that they might see* (to see).

2. Thēbae, *quod* caput Boeōtiae est, *Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia;* Flūmen Scaldis, *quod* influit in Mosam, *The river Scheldt, which empties into the Maas;* Jûsta glōria, *quī* est fructus virtūtis, *True glory, which is the fruit of virtue.*

3. The apposition may be incorporated into the relative: Testārum suffrāgiīs, quod illī ostracismum vocant, *By potsherd votes* — (a thing) *which they call "ostracism."*

4. When the Relative refers to combined antecedents of different gender, the strongest gender is preferred (p. 81); Pater et māter *quī mortuī* sunt; mūrus et porta *quae tactae* erant.

Digitized by Google

§ 409. When the Relative has the same preposition as the Antecedent, the preposition is repeated only for the purpose of emphasis: Cimōn in *eandem* invidiam incidit *quam* (= in quam) pater (§ 207).

Repetition of the Antecedents.

§ 410. The Antecedent of the Relative is often repeated in the Relative clause, with the Relative as its attributive: Caesar intellexit diem īnstāre, *quo diē* frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, *Caesar saw that the day was at hand, on which* (day) *provant was to be measured out to the soldiers.*

Incorporation of the Antecedent.

§ 411. The Antecedent and the adjective, or the apposition, of the Antecedent, are often incorporated into the Relative clause: *Quam* quisque nōrit artem, in *hāc* sē exerceat, *What trade each man understands, in that let him practise himself* (= every man to his trade): In *quem prīmum* ēgressī sunt *locum* Troja vocātur, *The first place they landed at was called Troy;* Amānus Syriam ā Ciliciā dīvidit *quī mōns* erat hostium plēnus, *Syria is divided from Cilicia by Amanus, a mountain which was full of enemies;* Themistoclēs dē servīs suīs *quem* habuit *fidēlissimum* ad Xerxem mīsit, *Themistocles sent the most faithful slave he had to Xerxes.*

Remarks.—1. Especially to be noted are the phrases: quae tua prūdentia est, *which* (such) *is your prudence;* quā prūdentiā es, *of which* (such) *prudence are you*, equivalent to: prō tuā prūdentiā, *in accordance with your prudence.*. The most simple explanation is that quae = quoniam ea, quā = quoniam eā (§ 420).

2. So-called Inverted Attraction is found only in poetry, and then in the Accusative case, which may be considered as an object of thought or feelings: **Urbem quam* statuo, vestra est, Verg., (As for) *the city which I am rearing*, (it) *is yours;* **Istum quem* quaeris, ego sum, (As for) *that man* whom you are looking for, *I am he.* ("*He* that hath ears to hear, let *him* hear").

Attraction of the Relative.

§ 412. The Accusative of the Relative is occasionally attracted into the Ablative of the Antecedent, rarely into any

Digitized by Google

other case: Nōs tamen hoc confirmāmus *illō* auguriō *quō* dīximus, *Nevertheless, we confirm this by the augury which we mentioned.*

REMARK.—This attraction takes place chiefly when the verb of the relative clause must be supplied from the principal sentence: Quibus sauciīs potērat sēcum ductis, *All the wounded he could* (take) *having been taken with him.*

§ 413. The usual Correlative of QUĪ is IS, more rarely, HIC, *this*, ILLE, *that*; **Is* minimō eget mortālis, *quī* minimum cupit (§ 408); *Hīc* sapiēns, de *quō* loquor (§ 89); **Illa* diēs veniet mea *quā* lūgubria pōnam (§ 93).

§ 414. The Correlative IS, is often omitted, especially when it would stand in the same case as the Relative: *Postume nōn bene olet, *quī* bene semper olet, MART., *Postumus, he does not smell sweet, who always smells sweet; Quem* arma nōn frēgerant vitia vīcērunt, *Him, whom arms had not crushed did vices overcome;* Xerxēs praemium prōposuit *quī* [= eī quī] invēnīsset novam voluptātem, *Xerxes offered a reward to him who should invent a new pleasure;* Miseranda vīta *quī* [= eōrum quī] sē metuī quam amārī mālunt, *Pitiable is the life of those who would prefer being feared to being loved;* *Discitē sanārī *per quem* [= per eum, per quem] didicīstis amāre, Ov. (§ 199); *learn how to be healed from him from whom you have learned how to love.*

§ 415. The indefinite antecedent is generally omitted: *Ēlige cuī dīcās: tu mihi sōla placēs, Ov., *Choose some one to whom you may say: You alone please me.*

§ 416. The Relative clause often precedes the Correlative; incorporation is common: Male rēs sē habet quum *quod* virtūte efficī dēbet *id* tentātur pecūniā, *It is a bad state of affairs when what ought to be accomplished by worth, is attempted by money;* **Quam* quisque nōrit artem in *hāc* sē exerceat (§ 411). The Correlative omitted: *Quod* nōn dedit fortūna nōn ēripit, *What fortune has not given* (does not give), *she does not take away.*

Digitized by Google

Tenses and Moods in Relative Sentences.

Tenses.

§ 417. The Future and Future Perfect are used with greater exactness than in current English: *Sit līber dominus quī *volet* esse meus, Mart., *He must be free who wishes* (shall wish) *to be my master;* Quī prior *strinxerit* ferrum, ējus victōria erit (§§ 36, 39).

Frequentative Action.

§ 418. The Perfect is used of frequentative action in the Present, the Pluperfect of frequentative action in the Past, and the Future Perfect of frequentative action in the Future, when the action in the relative clause precedes the action in the principal clause: Terra nunquam sine ūsūrā *reddit*, quod *accēpit*, *The earth never returns without interest what it has received* (receives); *Quod* nōn *dedit* fortūna nōn *ēripit* (§ 416); *Nōn *coenat quotiēs* nēmo *vocāvit* eum, Mart., *He does not dine as often as* (when) *no one has invited* (invites) *him; Haerēbant* in memoriā *quaecumque audierat* et *vīderat* [Themistoclēs], *Whatever Themistocles had heard and seen* (= heard and saw) *remained fixed in his memory.* Comp. § 356.

Remark.—The frequentative idea lies in the combination with the leading verb, which must be a verb of continuance. The mood is the Indicative. The Pluperfect Subjunctive, however, is used by the later historians. § 357, R. 2.

Moods.

§ 419. The Relative clause, as such—that is, as the representative of an adjective—takes the Indicative mood: Uxor *quae* bona *est*, *A wife who is good, a good wife.* The Relative in this use often serves as a circumlocution for a Substantive, with this difference: that the Substantive expresses a permanent relation; the Relative clause, a transient relation: Eī, *quī* docent = *those who teach* = *the teachers* (inasmuch as they are exercising the functions).

Digitized by Google

Rule.

§ 420. The Indicative is used in Relative clauses when the particle into which the Relative can be resolved (§ 404) requires the Indicative: (Quī = is enim, *for he*, is often strengthened by ut, ut pote, quippe:) Habeo senectūtī magnam grātiam, *quae* mihi sermōnis aviditātem *auxit*, *I am very thankful to old age, which* (= for it) *has increased me* (= in me) *the appetite for talk.*

Remark.—Quī with the Subjunctive gives *an argument*, quī with the Indicative *a fact*; hence the latter is nearly = quoniam.

§ 421. Quī = sī quis, has the Indicative when the Conditional is logical: Terra nunquam sine ūsūrā reddit, *quod accēpit* (sī quid accēpit). So also in Generic Relative sentences; § 418.

§ 422. The Subjunctive is employed in Relative clauses when it would be used (potentially) in a simple sentence, chiefly in phrases: quod sciam, *for all I know*; quōs cognōverim, *so far as I know them.*

Remark.—The sphere of this rule may be extended by embracing the sentences of character which are potential (§§ 330, 425-6), and the ideal second person, which attracts its dependencies into the Subjunctive (§ 424).

Rule.

§ 423. The Subjunctive is used in Relative clauses which form a part of the utterance or the view of another than the narrator (Ōrātio Oblīqua): Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelēs ait bestiolās quāsdam nāscī *quae* ūnum diem *vīvant*, *Aristotle says that on the river Bog there are little creatures that live* (only) *one day* ("that live a day" is a part of Aristotle's statement); Paetus omnēs librōs quōs frāter suus *relīquisset* mihi dōnāvit, *Paetus presented to me all the books that his brother had left* (this is Paetus's statement; otherwise: quōs frāter *ējus* (§ 307) *relīquerat*); Multī suam vītam neglexērunt ut eōs

Digitized by Google

quī hīs cāriōrēs quam ipsī sibi *essent* līberārent, *Many have neglected their own lives, that they might free those who were dearer to them than they were to themselves;* Xerxēs praemium prōposuit quī [— eī quī] *invenīsset* novam voluptātem (§ 414). See § 439.

REMARKS.—Even in Ōrātio Oblīqua the Indicative is retained:

1. In mere circumlocutions (§ 419): Efficitur ab ōrātōre ut *sī quī audiunt* ita afficiantur ut ōrātor velit, *It is brought about by the orator that those who hear him* (— his auditors) *are affected as he wishes* (them to be).

2. In explanations of the narrator: Apud Hypanim fluvium quī in Pontum īnfluit Aristotelēs ait, etc. (§ 423), *On the river Bog, which* (*the Bog, a river which*) *empties into the Black Sea.*

RULE.

§ 424. Relative sentences which depend on Infinitives and Subjunctives, and form an integral part of the thought, are put in the Subjunctive: Plūris putāre *quod* ūtile *videātur* quam quod honestum turpissimum est, *To deem of more value that which seems useful than that which* (seems) *honorable, is utterly disgraceful;* Nihil indignius est quam eum *quī* culpā *careat* suppliciō nōn carēre, *There is nothing more outrageous than that he who is free from fault should not be free from punishment;* Quis eum dīligat *quem metuat* aut eum a *quō* sē metuī *putet? Who could love a man whom he fears, or by whom he deems himself feared?* *Nam quod *ēmās* possīs jūre vocāre tuum, MART., *For what you buy, you may rightly call your own;* Sī sōlōs eōs dīcerēs miserōs quibus moriendum *esset*, nēminem eorum quī *vīverent* exciperēs, moriendum enim est omnibus, *If you called only those wretched who had* (have) *to die, you would except none who lived* (live), *for all have to die.*

REMARK.—Of individual facts the Indicative is employed: **Quod habēs*, nē habeās, et illud *quod* nunc *nōn habēs*, habeās, malum, PLAUT., *The evil that you have, may you not have, and that which now you have not, may you have.* So also in circumlocutions and in the older language: *Necesse est facere sūmptum *quī quaerit* lucrum (§ 320.)

Digitized by Google

Rule.

§ 425. Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive when QUĪ = UT IS as design or tendency; §§ 339 and 348.

DESIGN: Sunt multī quī aliīs ēripiunt *quod* aliīs *largiantur*, *There are many who snatch from some to lavish on others;* Senex serit arborēs *quae* alterī sēculō *prōsint*, *The old man sets out trees to do good to the next generation;* Conōn nōn quaesīvit *ubi* ipse tūtō *vīveret*, sed *unde* praesidiō esse *posset* cīvibus suīs (§ 136); *Semper habē Pyladēn *quī cônsōlētur* Orestēn.

TENDENCY (character), § 339, 6: Damna nulla tanta sunt *quae nōn* virī fortēs ferenda *arbitrentur*, *There are no losses so great, that brave men should not think them endurable* (great enough to keep brave men from thinking them endurable); Ego is sum *quī fēcerim*, *I am the man to have done it;* *Nīl prōdest *quod* nōn laedere *possit* idem (§ 97); **Quem* mea Calliopē *laeserit* ūnus ego, Ov., *I am the only one that my Calliope* (= my Muse) *has hurt.* On QUAM QUĪ = QUAM UT, see § 113; on DIGNUS QUĪ, *worthy of* . . . . see § 348.

§ 426. This construction is especially common after the general expressions: Est quī, sunt quī, *there is, there are some who;* nēmo est quī, *there is none to;* nihil est quod, *there is nothing;* habeo quod, *I have to*, and the like: *Sunt qui* discēssum *animī* ā corpore *putent* esse mortem, *There are some who think that the departure of the soul from the body is death;* *Fuit quī suādēret* appellātiōnem mênsis Augustī in Septembrem transferendam, *There was a man who urged that the name of the month* (of) *August should be transferred to September;* **Sunt quae* tortōribus annua *praestent*, JUV., *There are some women who give salaries to torturers;* *Nec mea *quī* digitīs lūmina *condat* erit, Ov., *And there will be no one to close mine eyes with his fingers;* *Post mortem in morte *nihil* est *quod metuam* malī, PLAUT., *After death there is no ill in death for me to dread;* *Miserrimus est *quī* quum êsse cupit *quod*

Digitized by Google

edat nōn hābet, PLAUT., *He is a poor wretch who, when he wants to eat, has not any thing to eat.* So also: Reperiuntur quī, *Persons are found who* (to) . . . . Quis est quī? who is there *who* (to) . . . . ? Est cūr, *there is reason for, &c.* (Nihil habeo *quod* dīcam, *I have nothing to say;* Nōn habeo *quid* dīcam, *I do not know what to say.*)

REMARKS.—1. QUĪ NŌN, QUAE NŌN, QUOD NŌN, &c., are represented after negative clauses by QUĪN (§ 336): Sunt certa vitia quae *nēmo est quīn* effugere cupiat, *There are certain faults which there is no one but* (— everybody) *desires to escape;* *Nīl tam difficile est *quin* quaerendō investīgarī *possiet* (— possit) TER., *Nothing is so difficult but it can be tracked out by search.* But as QUĪN — UT NŌN the demonstrative may be expressed, and generally is expressed when in the Accusative case.

2. The Indicative is used in poetry and in the statements of definite facts, and not of general characteristics:—

Multī sunt quī *ēripiant*,
There are many to snatch away.
Multī sunt quī *ēripiunt*,
Many are they who snatch away.

**Sunt quōs* genus hoc minimē *juvat*, HOR., *There are some who do not like this style* (of mine) *at all.*

3. When a definite predicate is negatived, the Indicative may stand on account of the definite statement, the Subjunctive on account of the negative:

A. Nihil bonum est quod nōn eum quī id possideat meliōrem *facit*; or,
B. Nihil bonum quod nōn eum quī id possideat meliōrem facīat.
A. *Nothing that does not make its owner better is good.*
B. *There is nothing good that does not make its owner better*

RULE.

§ 427. When QUĪ = QUUM IS, *as he*, the Subjunctive is employed. The particles UT, UTPOTE, QUĪPPE, *as*, are often used in conjunction with the Relative: [Canīnius] fuit mīrificā vigilantiā *quī* suō tōtō cōnsulātū somnum nōn *vīderit*, *Caninius was a man of marvellous watchfulness, as he did not see, not to have seen* (= taken a wink of) *sleep in his whole consulship);* Ō fortūnāte adolēscēns *quī* tuae virtūtis Homērum

Digitized by Google

praecōnem *invēneris! Lucky youth! to have found a crier* (= trumpeter) *of your valor* (in) *Homer!* Magna pars Fīdēnātium, *ut quī* colōnī *additī* Rōmānīs *essent*, Latīnē sciēbant, *A great part of the Fidenates, inasmuch as they had been mixed as colonists with the Romans, understood Latin;* Convīvia cum patre nōn inībat, *quippe quī* ne in oppidum quidem nisi perrārō *venīret, He was not in the habit of going to parties with his father, for he did not even come to town but very rarely.*

REMARK.—On the relative in a causal or illative sense with the Indicative, see § 420.

Accusative Relative and Infinitive.

§ 428. The Accusative Relative, with the Infinitive, may be used in Ōrātio Oblīqua when the Relative is to be resolved into a Coördinating Conjunction and the Demonstrative: Philosophī cênsent ūnumquemque nôstrum mundī esse partem, *ex quō* illud nātūrā cônsequī ut commūnem ūtilitātem nostrae anteponāmus, *Philosophers think that every one of us is a part of the universe, and that the natural consequence of this is for us to prefer the common welfare to our own.*

REMARK.—So also sometimes sentences with the relative particles QUIA, QUUM, UT, QUAMQUAM, &c.: quia trucīdāre — quia trucīdārent, *because they butchered* (only in the later historians).

Combination of Relative Sentences.

§ 429. Relative sentences are combined by means of Copulative Conjunctions only when they are actually coördinate. When the second Relative would stand in the same case as the first, it is commonly omitted. When it would stand in a different case, the Demonstrative is often substituted; or, if the case be the Nominative or Accusative, the Relative may be omitted altogether.

Digitized by Google

PARADIGM.

Dumnorix *quī* prîncipātum obtinēbat *cuīque* plēbs favēbat,
D., who held the chieftaincy, and whom the commons favored;
Dumnorix quī prîncipātum obtinēbat ac plēbī acceptus erat,
D., who held the chieftaincy, and (who) *was acceptable to the commons;*
Dumnorix quī prîncipātum obtinēbat *eī*que plēbs favēbat,
D., who held the chieftaincy, and whom the commons favored;
Dumnorix quī prîncipātum obtinēbat et plēbs dīligēbat,
D., who held the chieftaincy, and (whom) *the commons loved;*
Dumnorix quem plēbs dīligēbat et prîncipātum obtinēbat,
D., whom the people loved, and (who) *held the chieftaincy.*

REMARK.—The relative is not combined with adversative or illative conjunctions (*but who, who therefore*), except at the beginning of a sentence as the representative of a demonstrative.

On the Participle as the representative of a relative sentence, see § 462.

Comparative Sentences.

§ 430. A peculiar phase of the Relative sentence is the comparative, which is introduced in English by the relative particle "*as*"—in Latin, by a great variety of relative forms: 1, by correlatives; 2, by ATQUE or AC (§259); 3, by QUAM.

§ 431. The mood of the Dependent clause is the Indicative, unless the Subjunctive is required by the laws of oblique relation, or by the conditional idea (§ 389).

RULE.

§ 432. When the dependent clause (or standard of comparison) borrows its verb from the leading clause, the dependent clause is treated as a part of the leading clause; and if the first or leading clause stands in the Accusative with the Infinitive, the second or dependent clause must have the Accusative

Digitized by Google

likewise: Ita sentio Latīnam linguam locuplētiōrem esse quam *Graecam*, *It is my opinion that the Latin language is richer than the Greek;* Ego Gâjum Caesarem nōn eadem dē rēpûblicā sentīre quae *me* scio, *I know that Gaius Caesar has not the same views with regard to the state as I have.*

§ 433. CORRELATIVES.

1. Pronominal correlatives:

TOT TOTIDEM =	QUOT,	(so) *as many*	} *as.*
TANTUS =	QUANTUS,	(so) *as great*	
TĀLIS	QUĀLIS,	*such*	
ĪDEM	QUĪ,	*the same*	

2. Adverbial correlatives:

TAM	QUAM,	so, *as much*	} *as.*
TANTOPERE	QUANTOPERE,	so, *as much*	
TOTIĒS	QUOTIĒS,	*as often*	
TAMDIŪ	QUAMDIŪ,	*as long*	

ITA, SĪC / ĪTEM ITIDEM } UT, UTI, SĪCUT, / QUEMADMODUM, } *so* (as) = *as.*

§ 434. *Quot* hominēs, *tot* sententiae, (as) *many men*, (so) *many minds;* Frūmentum *tantī* fuit *quantī* iste aestīmavit, *Corn was worth as much as he valued it; Quālem* invēnī *tālem* relīquī, *Such as I found* (him), *I left* (him); Cimōn incidit in *eandem* invidiam *quam* pater (§ 97); Nihil tam populāre *quam* bonitās, *Nothing is so winning as kindness; Tamdiū* requiêsco *quamdiū* ad tē scrībo, *I rest as long as I am writing to you.*

REMARKS.—1. On other forms with IDEM see § 97, R. 1.

2. UT QUISQUE with the superlative is more common than QUŌ QUISQUE with the comparative, and is translated in the same way: *Ut quisque* sibi *plūrimum* cônfidit, ita maximē excellit, *The more a man trusts himself, the more he excels.*

3. UT — ITA is often used concessively (§ 269).

Digitized by Google

4. UT and PRO EŌ UT are frequently used in a limiting or causal sense, *so far as, inasmuch as: Prō eō ut* temporum difficultās tulit, *So far as the hard times permitted; ut* tum rēs erant, *as things were then; ut* temporibus illīs, *for those times; ut* erat furiōsus, *as he was stark mad.*

5. On QUAM, QUANTUS, and the superlative, see § 117.

Notice in this connection QUAM QUĪ with the superlative: Tam sum amīcus reīpūblicae *quam quī* maximē (— est), *I am as devoted a friend to the state as he who is most* (— as any man).

Comparative Sentences with ATQUE (AC).

§ 435. These sentences have been explained under the head of those "Copulative Sentences," to which they properly belong (§ 259), although the form —QUE connects them with the Relative. ET and QUE are rarely used instead of ATQUE (AC).

REMARK.—ALIUS, ALITER, SECUS, seldom have QUAM: NŌN ALIUS and other negative combinations seldom have ATQUE, commonly QUAM or NISI. (§ .)

Comparative Sentences with QUAM.

§ 435. Comparative sentences with QUAM follow the comparative degree or comparative expressions (§ 111).

The verb of the dependent clause is commonly to be supplied from the leading clause; hence the

RULE.

§ 436. In Comparative Sentences QUAM takes the same case after it as before it: Melior tūtiorque est certa *pâx quam spērāta victōria* (§ 92); Exīstīmēs velim *nēminem* cuīquam cāriōrem unquam fuīsse quam *tē* mihi, *I wish you to think that no one was ever dearer to any one than you to me.*

EXCEPTION.—When the second member is a subject, and the first member an oblique case, the second member *must* be put in the Nominative, with the proper form of the verb ESSE, unless the oblique case be an Accusative: Haec verba sunt Varrōnis, hominis doctiōris quam *fuit* Claudius, *These words*

Digitized by Google

are (the words) *of Varro, a person of greater learning than Claudius* (was); Sī vīciīnus tuus equum meliōrem *habeat* quam tuus *est* (§); *Ego hominem callidiōrem vīdī nēminem quam Phormiōnem, TER., *I have not seen a shrewder man than Phormio* (= quam Phormio est).

REMARK.—On QUAM PRŌ, see § 113.' On the double comparative, § 114.

THE ABRIDGED SENTENCE.

THE INFINITIVE AND INFINITIVE FORMS.

§ 437. The practical uses of the Infinitive and its kindred forms have been already considered:

Tenses of the Infinitive: §§ 75 and after.
Use of the Gerund: §§ 216 and after.
Use of the Supine: §§ 223 and after.
Infinitive in Object Sentences: § 311 and after.
Infinitive in Sentences of Design: § 317.
Infinitive in Relative Sentences: § 428.

Historical Infinitive.

§ 438. The Infinitive of the Present is sometimes used by the historians to give a rapid outline of events, with the subject in the Nominative; generally, several infinitives in succession: [Verrēs] minitārī Diodōrō, vociferārī palam, lacrimās interdum vix tenēre, *Verres threatened Diodorus, bawled out before every body, sometimes could hardly restrain his tears.*

REMARK.—There is no ellipsis. The Infinitive is to be explained as in Ōrātio Oblīqua. It takes the place of the Imperfect, and gives the outline of the thought and not the details.

Ōrātio Oblīqua.

§ 439. The thoughts of the narrator, or the exact words of another, as reported by the narrator, are called Ōrātio Recta, or Direct Discourse.

Indirect Discourse, or Ōrātio Oblīqua, reports not the exact words spoken, but the general impression produced.

Digitized by Google

Under the general head of Ōrātio Oblīqua are embraced also those clauses which imply the thought or representation of another than the speaker. Compare especially §§ 327, 423.

REMARK.—INQUAM, *quoth I*, is used in citing the Ōrātio Recta; ÂJO, *I say*, generally in Ōrātio Oblīqua. INQUAM is always parenthetic; ÂJO may or may not be parenthetic. Ōrātio Recta may also be cited by a pārenthetic "ut ait," "ut aiunt," *as he says, as they say*, &c. When the subject of INQUIT is mentioned it is commonly postponed.

The Ōrātio Oblīqua differs from the Ōrātio Recta, partly in the use of the Moods and Tenses, partly in the use of the Pronouns.

Moods in Ōrātio Oblīqua.

RULE.

§ 440. In Ōrātio Oblīqua the principal clauses are put in the Infinitive, the subordinate clauses in the Subjunctive.

Ōrātio Recta:	Apud Hypanim fluvium, inquit Aristotelēs,
Ōrātio Oblīqua:	Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelēs ait,
Ō. R.:	bestioale quaedam *nâscuntur*,
Ō. O.:	bestiolās quâsdam *nâscī*,
Ō. R.:	quae ūnum diem *vīvunt*.
Ō. O.:	quae ūnum diem *vīvant*.

Ō. R.—*On the river Bog, says Aristotle,*
Ō. O.—*Aristotle says that on the river Bog* } *little creatures are born that live* (but) *one day.*

Sôcratēs dīcere solēbat:

Ō. R. Omnēs in eō quod *sciunt* satis *sunt* ēloquentēs.

Ō. O. Omnēs in eō quod *scīrent* satis *esse* ēloquentēs.

Ō. R. *Socrates used to say: "All men* ARE *eloquent enough in what they* UNDERSTAND."

Ō. O. *Socrates used to say that all men* WERE *eloquent enough in what they* UNDERSTOOD.

Digitized by Google

REMARKS.—1. Coördinate Relative clauses are put in the accusative and Infinitive (§ 428).

2. Relative clauses are put in the Indicative: 1. In mere circumlocutions. 2. In explanations of the narrator (§ 423, R. 1).

3. DUM, with the Indicative, is often retained as a mere circumlocution (so also sometimes QUUM): *Dīc, hospes, Spartae nōs tē hīc vīdisse jacentēs, Dum sanctīs patriae lēgibus obsequimur, *Tell Sparta, stranger, that thou hast seen us lying here obeying* (in obedience to) *our country's hallowed laws.*

§ 441. Interrogative sentences are put in the Subjunctive: Ariovistus respondit sē prius in Galliam vēnīsse quam populum Rōmānum, *quid* sibi *vellet? A. replied that he had come to Gaul before the Roman people, what did they* (= the Roman people) *want?* Thrasybūlus magnā vōce exclāmat: *cūr* sē *fugiant? Thrasybulus cried out with a loud voice* (asking): *why they ran from him?*

REMARK.—Rhetorical questions, *i. e.*, questions which are asked merely to be answered with "No," are transferred from the Indicative of the Ōrātio Recta to the Accusative and Infinitive of the Ō. O.; if originally in the Subjunctive, the Subjunctive is either retained or transferred to the Infinitive:

Ō. R.		Ō. O.	
Num possum? *Can I?* [No.]		Num posse?	*Could he?*
Quid est turpius? *What is baser?* [Nothing.]		Quid esse turpius?	*What was baser?*
Cūr amittam? *Why should I lose?*		Cūr amitteret?	*Why should he lose?*
		Cūr amittere?	*Why lose?*

§ 442. Imperative sentences are put in the Subjunctive: The Negative is, of course, NĒ: Redditur responsum: Nōndum tempus pugnae esse; castrīs *sē tenērent, There was returned for answer that it was not yet time to fight, that they must keep within the camp;* Vercingetorix cohortātus est: *nē perturbārentur* incommodō, *V. comforted them* (by saying) *that they must not allow themselves to be disconcerted by the disaster.*

Digitized by Google

Tenses in Ōrātio Obliqua.

§ 443. The Tenses of the Infinitive follow the laws already laid down:

The Present Infinitive expresses contemporaneous action;

The Perfect Infinitive expresses prior action;

The Future Infinitive expresses future action (§ 314).

§ 444. The Tenses of the Subjunctive follow the law of sequence (§ 295). The choice is regulated by the point of view of the narrator, or the point of view of the principal personage:

Point of View of the Narrator. Dictātor Maelium jūre caesum prōnûntiāvit *quī* vocātus ā magistrō equitum ad dictātorem nōn *vēnîsset*, *The dictator publicly declared that Maelius had been righteously put to death, for not having come to the dictator* (when) *commanded by the master of the horse.* (Point of view of the dictator: quī nōn vēnerit.)

Point of View of the Principal Personage. Lēgātīs Helvētiōrum Caesar respondit: consuêsse deōs immortālēs *quō* gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum *doleant*, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī *velint*, hīs secundiorēs interdum rēs concēdere, *Caesar answered the envoys of the Helvetians that the gods were* (are) *wont that men might* (may) *suffer the more severely from the change in their fortunes, to grant occasional increase of prosperity to those whom they wished* (wish) *to punish for their crime.*

Conditional Sentences in Ōrātio Oblīqua.

§ 445. General view of the principal changes produced:

In the Protasis. 1. The Indicative Mood is transferred to the Subjunctive.

2. The Present Tense becomes Imperfect, } or

3. The Perfect Tense becomes Pluperfect, }

Present and Perfect remain unchanged, according to § 444.

4. Imperfect and Pluperfect are unchanged.

In the Apodosis. 1. The Indicative is changed into the Infinitive.

Digitized by Google

2. The Imperative is changed into the Subjunctive.
3. The Subjunctive of the Imperfect is transferred to the Future Infinitive or the circumlocutions which represent that future (§ 44).
4. The Subjunctive of the Pluperfect is transferred to the Perfect Infinitive of the Active Periphrastic Conjugation (§), or futūrum fuīsse ut (§).

§ 446. In Ōrātio Oblīqua the Future of the logical condition is not to be distinguished from the Present form of the Ideal Conditional, nor is the difference material. After a Past Tense both coincide with the Imperfect form of the Unreal Conditional.

Ōrātio Recta.	Ōrātio Oblīqua.
Ideal: Sī id crēdās, errēs,	Dīxit tē sī id crēderēs errātūrum esse,
Unreal: Sī id crēderēs, errārēs,	*He said that if you believed that, you would go wrong.*
Logical: Sī id crēdēs, errābis,	

Remark.—Generally the difference between the different classes of the conditional vanishes from the point of view of the narrator. When the difference is to be emphasized the tense is not attracted: Ariovistus respondit: Sī quid ipsī a Caesare *opus esset* sēsē ad illum *ventūrum fuīsse:* sī quid ille sē *velit*, illum ad sē venīre oportēre, *A. answered, that if he had wanted any thing of Caesar he would have come to him; if he* (C.) *wanted any thing of him, he ought to come to him* (A.); O. R. *Si quid* mihi opus *esset*, ad tē vēnissem; *si quid* tū mē velis, tē *ad me* venire oportet.

§ 447. The Oblique forms of the Logical and Unreal Conditionals are clearly distinguished in the relation of completion, by the difference in the Apodosis:

Ōrātio Recta.	Ōrātio Oblīqua.
Logical: sī quid crēdidistī errās,	Dīxit tē sī quid credidissēs *errāre.*
sī quid crēdiderās errābās,	sī quid crēdidissēs *errāsse.*
sī id crēdideris errābis,	sī id crēdidissēs *errātūrum esse.*
Unreal: sī id crēdidissēs errāssēs,	sī id crēdidissēs *errātūrum fuīsse.*

Digitized by Google

REMARK.—It is important to mark the difference between the future and the past of the speaker.

Examples of Conditional Sentences in Ōrātio Oblīqua, and in Constructions Involving Oblique Relations.

§ 448. Titurius clāmitābat suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tūtam; *sī* nihil *esset* (O. R., sī nihil est) dūrius, nullō perīculō ad proximam legiōnem *perventūrōs* (O. R., perveniētis) *sī* Gallia omnis cum Germānīs *cônsentīret* (O. R., sī cônsentit) unam *esse* (O. R., est) in celeritāte *positam* salūtem, *Titurius kept crying out that his resolution was the best in either case; if there was no especial pressure, they would get to the next legion without danger; if all Gaul was in league with the Germans, their only safety lay in speed.*

§ 449. Eum omnium labōrem fīnem *fore* exîstimabant *sī* hostem ab Ibērō interclūdere *potuîssent*, *They thought that would be the end of all* (their) *toils, if they could cut off the enemy from the Ebro.* (O. R., is labōrum finis *erit*, sī hostem interclūdere *potuerimus*.)

§ 450. [Hī] Jugurthae nōn mediocrem animum pollicitandō accendēbant *sī* Micipsa rêx *occidîsset fore uti* sōlus imperiō Numidiae *potīrētur*, *These persons kindled no little courage in Jugurtha*('s heart) *by promising that if King Micipsa fell, he alone should possess the rule over Numidia.* (O. R., sī Micipsa *occiderit*, tū sōlus imperiō *potiēris*.)

§ 451. Nōn multō ante urbem captam exaudīta vôx est . . *futūrum esse*, nisi prōvīsum esset *ut* Rōma caperētur, *Not long before the taking of the city, a voice was heard* (saying), *that unless precautions were adopted, Rome would be taken.* (O. R., nisi prōvīsum erit, Rōma capiētur.)

§ 452. Sī vim faciat neque pāreat interficī jubet, *He orders him to be killed if he offers violence, and does not obey.* (O. R., sī faciet neque pārēbit interficite. The Subjunctive could stand in the O. R. § 446.)

Digitized by Google

§ 453. Fertur Jugurtha dīxīsse urbem vēnālem et mātūreī *perītūram sī* emptōrem *invēnerit* (Perfect Subjunctive), *Jugurtha is reported to have said that the city was for sale, and would soon perish if it found a buyer.* (O. R., urbs perībit sī emptōrem invēnerit: Future Perfect Indicative.)

§ 454. Titurius clāmitābat Eburōnēs, sī Caesar *adesset*, ad castra [Rōmānōrum] *ventūrōs* [nōn] *esse*, *Titurius kept crying out that if Caesar were there, the Eburones would not be coming to the camp of the Romans.* (O. R., sī Caesar adesset, Eburōnēs nōn venīrent.) The context shows that Caesar was not there.

§ 455. Omnibus appāruit *nisi* Āgēsilāus *fuīsset* (§ 375, R. 1) Spartam *futūram nōn fuīsse*, *It was evident to all that if it had not been for Agesilaus, Sparta would have been no more.* (O. R., nisi Āgēsilāus fuisset, Sparta nōn fuisset.)

§ 456. Nisi eō ipsō tempore quīdam nūntiī dē Caesaris victōriā essent allātī exīstimābant plērīque *futūrum fuīsse* ut oppidum *amitterētur*, *Had not messages been brought at that very time about Caesar's victory, most persons thought the city would have been taken.* (O. R., nisi nūntiī allātī essent, oppidum amissum esset.)

REMARKS.—1. Instead of this circumlocution the Perfect Participle Passive with FORE is sometimes used, *e. g.*, oppidum amissum fore.

2. As the Pluperfect Indicative is sometimes used (rhetorically) for the Subjunctive (§ 51), so the ordinary Perfect Infinitive is sometimes employed instead of the Periphrastic: Nēmo mihi persuādēbit multōs praestantēs virōs tanta esse *cōnatōs* (— cōnātūrōs fuīsse) nisi animō cernerent (§ 381, R. 2.) posteritatem ad sē pertinēre, *No one will persuade me that* (so) *many eminent men had made such mighty endeavors, had they not seen with their mind's* (eye) *that futurity belonged to them.* So, regularly, POSSE, POTUĪSSE, and the like, instead of FORE UT, FUTURUM FUĪSSE UT . . Plērīque exīstimant sī ācrius īnsequī valuīsset [Pompējum] bellum eō diē *potuīsse fīnīre*, *Most people think that if Pompey had* (but) *determined to follow up more energetically, he could have finished the war on that day.* (O. R., sī voluisset, potuit, § 384, R. 3.) Namque illā multitūdine *sī* sāna

Digitized by Google

mēns esset (§ 381, R. 2) Graeciae, supplicium Persās dare *potuisse, For with that number if Greece had had* (— been in her) *sound mind, the Persians might have paid the penalty* (due). (O. R. Sī sāna mēns *esset* Graeciae, supplicium Persae dare *potuerunt.*)

Pronouns in Orātio Oblīqua.

§ 457. 1. The Reflexive is used according to the principles laid down §§ 306, and after.

REMARKS.—1. For the sake of clearness, the subject of the leading sentence is not unfrequently referred to in the form of the demonstrative instead of the reflexive: Helvētiī Allobrogibus sēsē persuāsūrōs exīstimābant vel vī coactūrōs ut per suōs fīnēs *eōs* īre paterentur, *The Helvetians thought that they would persuade or force the Allobroges to let them* (the Helvetians) *go through their territory.*

2. The person addressed is ILLE or IS: [Ariovistus respondit] nisi dēcēdat [Caesar] sēsē *illum* prō hoste habitūrum; quodsī *eum* interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum factūrum, *Ariovistus replied, that unless Caesar withdrew he should regard him as an enemy, and in case he killed him, he would do a favor to many men of the highest position among the Roman people.*

3. HIC and ISTE are commonly changed into ILLE, as NUNC into TUM and TUNC.

Participial Sentences.

§ 458. Participles are used in Latin even more extensively than in English, to express a great variety of subordinate relations, such as *Time* and *Circumstance*, *Cause* and *Occasion*, *Condition* and *Concession*. The classification cannot be always exact, as one kind blends with another.

§ 459. TIME WHEN: Alexander *moriēns* ānnulum suum dederat Perdiccae, *Alexander* (when he was) *dying, had given his ring to Perdiccas;* Dionysius tyrannus Syrācūsīs *expulsus* Corinthī puerōs docēbat, *Dionysius the tyrant,* (after he had been) *exiled from Syracuse, taught* (a) *boys'* (school) *at Corinth;* Tiberius *trājectūrus* (§ 79) Rhēnum commeātum nōn trāns-

Digitized by Google

mīsit, *When Tiberius was about to cross the Rhine, he did not send over the provisions.* ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE: Solōn et Pīsistratus *Serviō Tulliō rēgnante* viguērunt, *Solon and Pisistratus flourished when Servius Tullius was king; Sōle ortō* Volscī sē circumvallātōs vidērunt, *After sunrise the Volscians saw that they were surrounded by lines of intrenchment.*

§ 460. CAUSE WHY: Servīlius Ahāla Spūrium Maelium regnum *appetentem* interēmit, *Servilius Ahala slew Spurius Maelius* (because he was) *aiming at the kingship;* Athēniēnsēs Alcibiadem *corruptum* ā rege Persārum capere nōluîsse Cȳmēn arguēbant, *The Athenians charged Alcibiades with having been unwilling to take Cyme* (because he had been) *bribed by the King of Persia.* ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE: Rōmānī veterēs regnārī omnēs volēbant lībertātis *dulcēdine* nōndum *expertā, The old Romans all wished to have a king over them* (because they had) *not yet tried the sweetness of liberty.*

REMARK.—An apparent cause is given by UT *as* VELUT, *as, for instance,* TAMQUAM (SO) *as,* QUASI, *as if:* Gallī laetī *ut explōrātā victōriā* ad castra Rōmānōrum pergunt, *The Gauls in their joy, as if* (their) *victory had been fully ascertained, proceeded to the camp of the Romans;* Antiochus sēcūrus erat dē bellō Rōmānō *tamquam* nōn *trānsitūris* in Asiam Rōmānīs, *Antiochus was as unconcerned about the war with Rome as if the Romans did not intend to cross over into Asia Minor.*

§ 461. CONDITION AND CONCESSION: Animus sē *nōn vidēns* alia cernit, *The mind, although it does not see itself, distinguishes other* (objects). ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE: Maximās virtūtēs jacēre omnēs necesse est *voluptāte dominante, All the great virtues must necessarily lie prostrate, if* (or *when*) *the pleasure* (of the senses) *is mistress.*

REMARK.—Later writers add ETSĪ, QUAMQUAM, or QUAMVĪS (§ 397): Caesarem mīlitēs *quamvīs recūsantem* ultrō in Africam sunt secūtī, *The soldiers followed Caesar into Africa of their own motion, although he declined it;* *Saepe bibī sūcōs quamvīs invītus amārōs, Ov., *I have often drunk bitter potions, although against my will.* (QUAMVĪS, *to what extent you wish,* may be used with adjectives.)

Digitized by Google

§ 462. RELATIVE: Athēniēnsēs virtūte rēgis prō salūte patriae mortī sē *offerentis* bellō līberantur, *The Athenians were freed from the war by the manliness of their king, who offered himself to death for the salvation of his country;* Pīsistratus Homēri librōs *cônfūsōs* anteā sīc disposuisse dīcitur ut nunc habēmus, *Pisistratus is said to have arranged the books of Homer, which were in confusion before, as we have them now.*

Digitized by Google

ERRATA.

1.—REFERENCES OMITTED.

page 121, 5 lines from bottom, § 383, R. 1.
" 226, 8 " " " § 245, R.
" 237, supply the references, § 145, § 214, R. 2, § 218, R. 1, §219, R. 2, § 224.
" 238, " " " § 123, R. 5.
" 239, " " " § 162, R. 1, § 113
" 245, " " " § 176.
" 246, " " " § 113.
" 274, " " " § 392.
" 275, " " " § 382.

2.—MISTAKES IN LATIN.

page 125, 13 lines from bottom, for "lacrimās," read "lacrimīs."
" 155, 2 " " top, read digitō.
" 213, 13 " " bottom, for "vītæ," read "senectūtis."
" 213, 15 " " top, for "*brō*tulerat," read "*prō*tulerat."
" 244, 8 " " top, for "fluviō," read "fluviōs."
" 262, 8 " " bottom, the first "ex quō" should be "ex eō;" the first "in quem" should be "in eum."
" 263, last line, for "tactæ," read "tacta." The reference should be § 81, not p. 81.
" 276, 15 lines from bottom, for "bestioale," read "bestiolæ."
" 281, 1 " " top, for "mātūrei," read "mātūrē."
" 281, 4 " " bottom, for "valuisset," read "voluisset."

3.—MISTAKES IN ENGLISH.

page 79, 19 lines from top, for "*I groan*," read "*I grow*."
" 213, 1 " " " for "Tense," read "Sentence."
" 256, 7 " " bottom, for "If you believed," read "*had* believed."
" 262, 14 " " " for "subjunctive," read "substantive."
" 267, 6 " " " read "there are *born*."

4.—MISTAKES IN THE NOTATION OF QUANTITY.

page 11, 4 lines from bottom, for "pīrus," read "pirus."
" 39, last line, read ūnī and ūnæ.
" 45, 2 lines from top, read quŭliscunque.
" 83, 11 " " bottom, read negligo, and so in other places.
" 107, 12 " " top, read faba.
" 208, 14 " " " " Cocles.
" 215, 9 " " " " facerent.
" 221, 9 " " bottom, read Mīlēsiōs.
" 224, 13 " " " " Āmīsisse.
" 232, 12 " " " " quotīdiē.
" 239, 10 " " " " Pȳthagorās.
" 243, 6 " " top, " quotiēs.
" 277, 8 " " bottom, " āmittam, āmitteret, āmittere.
" 279, 9 " " " " velīs.
" 281, 18 " " top, " āmitterētur, āmissum.
" 283, 10 " " " " rāge.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

This book should be returned to the Library on or before the last date stamped below.

A fine of five cents a day is incurred by retaining it beyond the specified time.

Please return promptly.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google